

4. Preventive Effects

4.1 Humans

4.1.1 Studies of cancer occurrence

4.1.1.1 Observational studies based on blood and other tissue measures of carotenoids

(a) Methodological comments

The concentrations of carotenoids in blood and tissue discussed in this section are markers of exposure to carotenoids in the diet. Several problems are involved in estimating exposure to carotenoids on the basis of circulating levels: The measure of the carotenoid, e.g. plasma concentration, may not be representative of the concentration in the appropriate tissue; and plasma or serum concentrations measured at one time may not be sufficiently characteristic of exposure to carotenoids over decades but rather indicators of more recent dietary intake (Olson, 1984; LeGardeur *et al.*, 1990). The reproducibility of measures in blood over periods of up to two years may, however, be better than that of dietary measures of intake (Kaaks *et al.*, 1997). The value of serum concentrations as a marker of true internal exposure is still uncertain. There are clearly individual differences in the metabolism and kinetics of β -carotene, and the relationship between serum concentrations and those in specific tissues is still not known. One source of error is the possible degradation of carotenoids in serum samples during storage, especially at temperatures above -70°C (Craft *et al.*, 1988; Comstock *et al.*, 1993; Ocké *et al.*, 1995); carotenoids in serum samples that are repeatedly thawed and refrozen are particularly sensitive to degradation.

In case-control studies, carotene intake or the concentrations of carotenoids in the tissues of the cancer patients may have been altered by the cancer, due either to treatment of the disease or to changes in dietary habits or metabolism caused by the disease. For this reason, cohort and nested case-control studies are more reliable, since information on carotenoid status is collected before diagnosis of cancer. In such studies, the disease process can still affect carotenoid status, but its effect can be minimized by excluding cancer cases that occur during the first years of follow-up. This source of bias is of particular concern with regard to cancers of the lung, stomach and liver.

The strength of the association between exposure to carotenoids and cancer risk may depend on the balance between the amount of carotenoids available and the extent of exposure to other risk factors, such as cigarette smoking. Thus, the association may differ according to the concentrations of other factors, making it difficult to assess associations between carotenoid status and cancer risk. The concentrations of carotenoids in blood and adipose tissue have been associated with several factors potentially related to the risk for cancer (Roe, 1987; Stryker *et al.*, 1988; Albanes *et al.*, 1992; Hebert *et al.*, 1994; Margetts & Jackson, 1996; Berg *et al.*, 1997). Various foods, nutrients and dietary patterns may also confound the relationships between carotenoid measures and disease. Intake of carotenoids, for example, is strongly associated with intake of several potentially protective nutrients, such as fibre, vitamin E, vitamin C and flavonoids, both because they are included in the same foods and because of clustering of dietary behaviour. Therefore, carotenes may simply be markers of fruit and vegetable intake.

The measure of carotenoids most widely used in studies on cancer is the β -carotene concentration in serum or plasma (Tables 6–8). Other predominant circulating carotenoids in humans, i.e. α -carotene, lycopene, lutein, cryptoxanthin and total carotenoids have also been determined. The carotenoid concentration in adipose tissue was used in one study (van't Veer *et al.*, 1996).

In cohort studies with nested case-control analyses (that is, studies based on a cohort in which biological specimens for all cases and for a sample of non-cases were analysed), the concentrations of total carotenoids, β -carotene and, in two populations, α -carotene, cryptoxanthin, lutein and lycopene were determined in serum or plasma samples collected at the time of a baseline survey, stored frozen (at -20 to -75 °C) and thawed for analysis at the end of the follow-up period (Table 7). The carotenoids were determined by HPLC, the laboratory personnel being unaware of the case or control status of the samples. The coefficients of variation for the determinations of β -carotene, reported in some of the studies, usually varied from 2 to 6%, and those for other carotenoids were 7–17%. The mean serum or plasma β -carotene concentrations, available for eight populations, ranged from 5 to 38 $\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$ (0.09–0.71 $\mu\text{mol}/\text{L}$) in the control samples. The range for the samples stored at -70 °C or lower was 17–38 $\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$ (0.32–0.54 $\mu\text{mol}/\text{L}$), and that for samples stored at above -70 °C was 5–22 $\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$ (0.09–0.41 $\mu\text{mol}/\text{L}$). The corresponding range in cohort studies in which blood samples from all participants were analysed shortly after collection was 17–36 $\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$ (0.32–0.67 $\mu\text{mol}/\text{L}$).

Most of the case-control studies reviewed were based on concentrations of circulating β -carotene; other carotenoids were also determined in some studies (Table 8). The commonest method for determining circulating carotenoids was HPLC with UV-visible detection. Measurements of total carotenoids in tissue extracts by spectrophotometry were used in a small number of studies. The concentrations of β -carotene in controls varied from 17 to 141 $\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$ (0.32–2.63 $\mu\text{mol}/\text{L}$); the coefficients of variation, with few exceptions, were not reported. The comparability of cases and controls is an additional concern.

(b) Results

The main results from analytical observational epidemiological studies on the association between tissue concentrations of carotenoids and the occurrence of cancer that were published not earlier than 1980 are presented

Table 6. Description of cohort studies of the association between serum or plasma concentrations of carotenoids and cancer

Study, country	Study cohort	Cohort size	Age (years)	Starting year	Length of follow-up (years)	Cancer end-point	Site of cancer	No. of cancer cases
ATBC Study (Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta Carotene Cancer Prevention Study Group, 1994a), Finland	Smokers in southwestern Finland	7287 M	50–69	1985–88	5–8	Incidence	Lung	208
Basel Study (Eichholzer <i>et al.</i> , 1996), Switzerland	Employees of three pharmaceutical companies	2974 M	20–79	1971–73	17	Mortality	All Lung Stomach Prostate Colon Pancreas	290 87 28 30 22 15
Skin Cancer Prevention Study (Greenberg <i>et al.</i> , 1996), USA	Basal-cell or squamous-cell carcinoma patients from 4 clinical centres	1188 M, 532 F	< 85	1983–86	7–10	Mortality	All	82
CARET (Omenn <i>et al.</i> , 1996a), USA	Smokers or asbestos-exposed workers	12 025 M, 6289 F	45–74	1985–94	1–9	Incidence	Lung	275
Nutrition Status Survey (Sahyoun <i>et al.</i> , 1996), USA	Non-institutionalized residents of Massachusetts	254 M, 471 F	≥ 60	1981–84	9–12	Mortality	All	45
Hokkaido (Ito <i>et al.</i> , 1997), Japan	Rural Japanese residents	929 M, 1424 F	≥ 40	1986–89	2–8	Mortality	All Stomach	44 10

ATBC, Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene; CARET, Beta-Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial; M, male; F, female

Table 7. Description of nested case-control studies of the association between serum or plasma concentrations of carotenoids and cancer

Study, country	Reference	Cohort size	Sex	Age (years)	Starting year	Length of follow-up (years)	Site of cancer	Numbers of cancer cases/controls	Matching variables
Guernsey, UK	Wald <i>et al.</i> (1984)	5004	Female	28-75	1968-75	7-14	Breast	39/78	Age, menopausal status, parity, family history of breast cancer, history of benign breast disease
Hypertension Detection and Follow-up Program, USA	Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984)	4480	Both	30-69	1973-74	5	All, lung, breast, prostate, leukaemia and lymphoma, gastrointestinal	111/210	Age, sex, race, smoking, time of blood collection, blood pressure, use of anti-hypertensive medication, random assignment, parity and menopausal status
Honolulu Heart Program, USA	Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1985)	6860	Male	52-75	1971-75	10	Lung, stomach, colon, rectum, urinary bladder	284/302	Randomly selected controls in age strata
	20					Oral and pharyngeal, laryngeal, oesophageal	69/138	Age, time of blood collection, smoking, alcohol intake	
Washington County, USA	Menkes <i>et al.</i> (1986)	25 802	Both	≥ 18	1974	9	Lung	99/196	Age, sex, race, smoking, time of blood collection, length of fasting, time since last menstrual period, menopausal status ^a
	Schober <i>et al.</i> (1987)		Both			9	Colon	72/143	
	Burney <i>et al.</i> (1989)		Both			12	Pancreas	22/44	
	Helzlsouer <i>et al.</i> (1989)		Both			12	Urinary bladder	35/70	
	Hsing <i>et al.</i> (1990)		Male			12	Prostate	103/103	
	Comstock <i>et al.</i> (1991)		Both			9	Rectum	34/68	
			Female			9	Breast	30/59	
	Batieha <i>et al.</i> (1993)		(15 161)			Female	16	Cervix	
	Zheng <i>et al.</i> (1993)	Both	16	Oral and pharyngeal	28/112				
	Breslow <i>et al.</i> (1995)		Both	-	Basal skin, squamous skin, melanoma	99/198			
			15	Ovary					
	Helzlsouer <i>et al.</i> (1996)	(20 305)	Female					35/67	

Table 7 (contd)

Study, country	Reference	Cohort size	Sex	Age (years)	Starting year	Length of follow-up (years)	Site of cancer	Numbers of cancer cases/controls	Matching variables
British United Provident Association, UK	Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988)	22 000	Male	35–64	1975–82	2–9	All, lung, colorectal, stomach, urinary bladder, skin, central nervous system	271/533	Age, smoking, duration of storage
Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial, USA	Connett <i>et al.</i> (1989)	12 866	Male	35–57	1973–75	8–10	All, lung, colon, oesophagus, urinary bladder, kidney	156/311	Age, smoking, clinical centre, treatment group, date of randomization
Mobile Clinic Health Survey, Finland	Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990)	36 265	Both	15–99	1968–72	6–10	All, stomach, colon, rectum, pancreas, lung, prostate, basal skin, lymphoma and leukaemia, breast, cervix, endometrium, ovary	766/1419	Age, sex, place of residence
	Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991)						Oral cavity and pharynx, larynx, oesophagus, liver, kidney, urinary bladder, melanoma, brain		
Kaiser Permanente Medical Care Program, USA	Orentreich <i>et al.</i> (1991)	–	Both	26–78	1969–73	5–9	Lung	123/246	Age, sex, skin colour, smoking, date of health check-up, storage duration
Skin Cancer Prevention Study, USA	Karagas <i>et al.</i> (1997)	1805	Both	35–84	1983–86	3–5	Squamous skin	129/250	Age, sex, study centre

^a The matching variables varied from one study to another.

Table 8. Description of case-control studies of the association between tissue concentrations of carotenoids and cancer

Reference, country	Population base	Time period	Sex	Age (years)	Site of cancer	No. of cases/controls	Controls	
							Type	Matching variables
Pastorino <i>et al.</i> (1987), Italy	Instituto Nazionale di Tumori and Consorio Provinciale Antitubercolare, Milan	NR	Female	62 (10) ^a	Lung	47/159	Hospital	NR
Gerber <i>et al.</i> (1988), Italy, France	Instituto Nazionale Tumori, Milan and Paul Lamarque Cancer Center, Montpellier	1982-85	Female	25-65	Breast	306/314	Hospital	NR
Hayes <i>et al.</i> (1988), Netherlands	Hospitals in the Rotterdam region	1982-85	Male	50-79	Prostate	134/130	Hospital	NR
Palan <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA	Bronx Municipal Hospital Center, New York	NR	Female	NR	Cervix	32/37	Volunteer	NR
Palan <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Bronx Municipal Hospital Center, New York	1988	Female	28 (8) ^a	Cervix	10/36	Volunteer	NR
Palan <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA	Bronx Municipal Hospital Center, New York	NR	Female	16-69	Cervix	10/26	Volunteer	NR
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1989), Australia	Repatriation General Hospital, Melbourne	1984-85	Male	NR	Lung	64/63	Hospital	NR
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1992), Australia	Repatriation General Hospital, Melbourne	1984-85	Male	70 (8) ^a	Skin, basal-cell, squamous-cell	88/88	Hospital	Sex
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1993), Australia	Repatriation General Hospital, Melbourne	1982	Male	64 (8) ^a	Oral and pharynx	41/88	Hospital	Sex
Potischman <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Roswell Park Memorial Institute and two surgeons in Buffalo, New York	1985-86	Female	30-80	Breast	83/113	Hospital	NR
Stryker <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Massachusetts General Hospital	1982-85	Both	≥ 18	Melanoma	204/248	Hospital	NR

Table 8 (contd)

Reference, country	Population base	Time period	Sex	Age (years)	Site of cancer	No. of cases/ controls	Selection of controls	
							Type	Matching variables
Ramaswamy <i>et al.</i> (1990), India	Bangalore	NR	Both	NR	Oral cavity, head and neck, gastrointestinal tract, lung, breast, cervix	285/50	Hospital, volunteer	Age, sex, socioeconomic status
Ramaswamy & Krishnamoorthy (1996), India	Bangalore	NR	Female	30–65	Cervix, breast	200/100	Volunteer	Age
Harris <i>et al.</i> (1991), UK	Churchill and John Radcliffe Hospitals, Oxford	1979–81	Male	62 (8) ^a	Lung	171/97	Hospital	NR
Potischman <i>et al.</i> (1991a), USA	Four Latin American countries	NR	Female	NR	Cervix	387/670	Hospital, population	NR
Potischman <i>et al.</i> (1994), USA	Four Latin American countries	1986–87	Female	< 70	Cervix	696/1217	Hospital, population	Age
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand	Wellington Hospital	1981–84	Both	20–80	All, oesophagus, stomach, small intestine, colon, rectum, larynx, lung, basal skin, squamous skin, melanoma, breast, uterus, ovary, cervix, urinary bladder, kidney, prostate, haematopoietic, thyroid, brain	389/391	Hospital	Age, sex, date of admission

Table 8 (contd)

Reference, country	Population base	Time period	Sex	Age (years)	Site of cancer	No. of cases/ controls	Selection of controls	
							Type	Matching variables
London <i>et al.</i> (1992) USA	Five teaching hospitals in the Boston, Massachusetts, area	1986–88	Female	58–69	Breast	377/403	Hospital	None
Malvy <i>et al.</i> (1993), France	Paris, Lyon, Lille, Bordeaux, Tours, Nancy	1986–89	Both	0–16	Leukaemia, lymphoma, central nervous system, sympathetic nervous system, renal, bone, soft tissue	418/632	Population	Age, sex, residence
Pan <i>et al.</i> (1993), China	Chang-Gung Memorial Hospital	1988–89	Male	NR	Hepatocellular carcinoma	59/101	Hospital	Age
Jinno <i>et al.</i> (1994), Japan	NR	NR	Both	NR	Hepatocellular carcinoma	60/40	Hospital	Age
Torun <i>et al.</i> (1995), Turkey	NR	NR	Both	NR	All, breast, head and neck, genitourinary, lung, gastrointestinal	208/156	NR	NR
van't Veer <i>et al.</i> (1996), Germany, France, The Netherlands, Spain, Switzerland	Berlin, Coleraine, Zeist, Malaga, Zürich	NR	Female	50–74	Breast	347/374	Population	Age

NR, not reported

^a Mean (SD)

in Tables 9–11, by study design. The small numbers of cases may be one reason for failure to detect associations in some studies, and the results of studies based on ≥ 40 cases were given particular emphasis. The relative risk (RR) between high and low concentrations of carotenoids and the mean differences between the concentrations of carotenoids in cases and controls are also tabulated.

(c) *Cohort studies*

The Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention (ATBC) study involved 29 133 men aged 50–69 (median, 57), out of 54 171 potentially eligible participants, in southwestern Finland who currently smoked five or more cigarettes per day (median, 20). The median duration of smoking was 36 years. Subjects were excluded if they were taking more than a predefined dose of supplements of vitamins E or A or β -carotene, had a history of cancer other than non-melanoma skin cancer or serious debilitating disease or were being treated with anticoagulants. The lung cancer incidence among untreated men was 47 per 10 000 person-years. Eighty-nine percent of the subjects drank alcohol, mostly beer and spirits, with a median ethanol intake was about 11 g/d. The baseline plasma concentrations of retinol, α -tocopherol, β -carotene, vitamin C and high-density lipoprotein were determined in most participants and were consistent with those reported in other western populations (e.g. median serum β -carotene, 0.32 $\mu\text{mol/L}$). The cancer cases that occurred during a median follow-up of 6.1 years were identified by the Finnish Cancer Registry. Advice on stopping smoking was provided to all participants at entry, and 22%, equally distributed in the study groups, quit during the follow-up. The incidence of lung cancer was lower among subjects in the highest quartile of serum β -carotene concentrations than among those in the lowest; the relative risk between the extreme quartiles, adjusted for age and amount of smoking, was calculated by the Working Group to be 0.81 (Table 9). Similar associations were observed in the entire trial population and when they were grouped into those receiving β -carotene as part of the intervention and those not receiving the

supplement (Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study Group 1994a,b; Albanes *et al.*, 1996).

In the study in Basel, Switzerland, 2974 healthy male employees at three pharmaceutical companies were followed up from 1971, initially for 12 years (Stähelin *et al.*, 1991) and later for 17 years (Eichholzer *et al.*, 1996; Table 6). According to the death certificates from the Swiss Federal Office of Statistics, 290 of the men died of cancer during the 17-year follow-up period. All of those who developed cancer and those with lung or stomach cancer had had significantly lower plasma carotene concentrations before diagnosis (20% α -carotene, 80% β -carotene) than the non-cases, with mean case-control differences of 18, 30 and 30%, respectively (Table 9), as calculated by the Working Group. A strong gradient was observed for stomach cancer, with an estimated relative risk of 0.30 (95% confidence interval [CI], 0.13–0.70) between the highest and lowest quartiles of the distribution of β -carotene concentrations, after exclusion of the first two years of follow-up [calculated by the Working Group]. Individuals with low plasma concentrations of both carotene and retinol had strongly increased rates of death from all cancers and from lung cancer. This association persisted after exclusion of men who developed cancer during the first two years of follow-up and after adjustment for age, smoking and serum lipids. The relative risks for individuals in the higher quartiles of carotene and retinol concentrations in comparison with those in the lowest quartiles were 0.28 (95% CI, 0.11–0.70) for lung cancer and 0.47 (95% CI, 0.32–0.68) for all cancers combined [calculated by the Working Group]. Further adjustment for plasma concentrations of vitamins C and E did not materially alter the results.

The Skin Cancer Prevention Study was a multicentre, double-blind clinical trial in the United States, comprising 1720 men and women under 85 years of age who had had at least one basal-cell or squamous-cell skin carcinoma diagnosed from a biopsy specimen (Greenberg *et al.*, 1996; Table 6). The participants had no known genetic predisposition to skin cancer. During the 7–10-year follow-up, 82 persons were ascertained

Table 9. Results of cohort studies on the association between serum or plasma concentrations of carotenoids and cancer

Reference, country	No. of cancer cases	Site of cancer	Exposure		Highest versus lowest category		p value for trend	Controlled variables	Mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and non-cases (%) ^a
			Type	Category	RR	95% CI				
Alpha-Tocopherol Beta Carotene Cancer Prevention Study Group (1994b), Finland	208	Lung	SBC	Quartile	0.81		NR	Age, smoking	17 ^b	NR
Eichholzer <i>et al.</i> (1996), Switzerland	290	All	PTC				NR	Age, smoking, lipids	24	-18 **
	87	Lung	PTC				NR		-30 **	
	28	Stomach	PTC	Quartile ^c	0.47	0.20–2.94	NR		-30 **	
	30	Prostate	PTC	Quartile ^c	1.23	0.52–2.94	NR		-20	
	22	Colon	PTC	Quartile ^c	1.92	0.61–5.88	NR		+5	
	15	Pancreas	PTC	NR	NR		NR	-18		
Greenberg <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA	82	All	PBC	Quartile	0.78	0.42–1.46	0.26	Age, sex, smoking, body mass index, study centre	18	NR
Omenn <i>et al.</i> (1996a), USA	275	Lung	SBC	Median	0.69	0.54–0.88	0.003	NR	15	NR
Sahyoun <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA	45	All	PTC	Quintile	0.72	0.25–2.02	0.34	Age, sex, lipids, disease status, disabilities	135	NR
Ito <i>et al.</i> (1997), Japan	44	All	SBC	Tertile	0.33	0.14–0.75	NR	Age, smoking, alcohol consumption	36	-35 ***
			SAC	Tertile	0.75	0.35–1.62	NR		7	-30 **
			SLY	Tertile	0.67	0.32–1.44	NR		20	-24 **
	10	Stomach	SBC	Tertile	0.45	0.73–2.78	MR	Age, sex, smoking, alcohol consumption, vegetable intake	NR	NR

NR not reported; SBC, serum β-carotene; SAC, serum α-carotene; SLY, serum lycopene; PTC, plasma total carotenoids; PBC, plasma β-carotene

^a Unadjusted; test for difference from zero: ** $p < 0.01$, *** $p < 0.001$; estimated as [(case mean – control mean)/control mean] x 100

^b Median

^c Higher versus lowest quartile, first two years of follow-up excluded

from death certificates to have died of cancer. Plasma β -carotene concentration at the beginning of the study was inversely related to cancer mortality, the relative risk between the highest and lowest quartiles being 0.53 (95% CI, 0.30–0.94). The relative risk for cancer was not statistically significant after adjustment for age, sex, smoking, body mass index and study centre: 0.78 (95% CI, 0.42–1.5; p for trend = 0.26; Table 9).

The Beta-Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial (CARET) involved 14 254 current or former smokers (7965 men and 6289 women) and 4060 asbestos-exposed workers, aged 50–69, resident in six areas of the United States, who were recruited from answers to more than 1 400 000 letters sent to establish eligibility and to obtain informed consent. Of these workers, 1153 had already participated in pilot studies in which treatment with lower doses of β -carotene was initiated (Goodman *et al.*, 1993; Omenn *et al.*, 1993b). The mean age of the asbestos-exposed workers was 57 years, and that of smokers was 58 years. No women had been exposed to asbestos, while they represented about one-half of the smokers. The incidence of lung cancer in the untreated group was 46 per 10 000 person-years. Subjects with a history of cancer other than non-melanoma skin cancer during the previous five years, aspartate aminotransferase and alkaline phosphatase activities above the 99% upper limits, a history of cirrhosis or hepatitis during the previous 12 months, unwillingness to limit supplementation with vitamin A or β -carotene, a Karnowski index of < 70 and women who had undergone menopause less than one year previously were excluded. Only 3% of the asbestos-exposed workers were nonsmokers, while 58% were former smokers. Among the smokers, about two-thirds were current smokers of a mean number of 24 cigarettes per day. The ex-smokers had stopped smoking an average of three years before recruitment; before quitting, they had smoked a mean of 28 cigarettes per day. Among the asbestos-exposed workers in the pilot study, the ex-smokers had quit an average of 19 years before recruitment; their mean duration of exposure to asbestos had been 35 years, and they had spent an average of 25 years in high-

risk trades in insulating, shipyards, use of plaster-board, plumbing, shipscaling, shipfitting and sheetmetal work (Omenn *et al.*, 1993b). Sixty-six percent of the asbestos-exposed workers, 67% of the male smokers and 62% of the female smokers drank alcoholic beverages, the median alcohol intake being 12, 12 and 9 g/d, respectively. The baseline plasma concentrations of retinol, α -tocopherol, β -carotene and retinyl palmitate were determined in a subset of 1182 participants and were consistent with those reported for other western populations (e.g. mean serum β -carotene, 0.27 μ mol/L). Advice on stopping smoking was provided to the whole study group, resulting in a 5% rate of quitting per year, equally distributed among the subgroups (Grizzle *et al.*, 1991; Omenn *et al.*, 1991; Goodman *et al.*, 1992; Omenn *et al.*, 1994, 1996a). During a mean follow-up of four years, 275 confirmed cases of lung cancer occurred, and a statistically significant inverse association between baseline serum β -carotene concentration and lung cancer incidence was observed (Table 9). The relative risk for lung cancer among people with a serum β -carotene concentration above the median was 0.69 (95% CI, 0.54–0.88; p for trend = 0.003) among all participants and 0.62 (95% CI, 0.46–0.82; p for trend = 0.0008) among heavy smokers, when compared with people with a concentration below the median. The association was similar in the subgroup of individuals who received β -carotene and retinol supplements and in the placebo group, as well as in current and former smokers. No association was seen in the population that had been exposed to asbestos.

The Nutrition Status Survey conducted in Boston, Massachusetts, USA, during 1981–84 comprised 725 non-institutionalized people aged 60–101 who were free of terminal wasting disease or severe metabolic disorders; they were healthier and better educated than the general population. During the 9–12-year follow-up, 45 of them died of cancer. The relative risk for death from cancer between the highest and lowest quintiles of plasma carotenoid status, adjusted for age, sex, serum cholesterol, disease status and disabilities, was 0.72 (not significant) (Sahyoun *et al.*, 1996).

The population involved in the study carried out in Hokkaido, Japan, comprised 2353 healthy men and women over 39 years of age living in rural areas. During the two- to eight-year follow-up, 44 deaths from malignant neoplasms were confirmed from death certificates. After adjustment for age, smoking and alcohol consumption, an inverse association was observed with serum β -carotene concentration (Table 9), but no differences were observed in the concentrations of α -carotene and lycopene. The relative risk between the highest and lowest tertiles of serum β -carotene concentration was 0.33 (95% CI, 0.14–0.75). The corresponding relative risk for stomach cancer after further adjustment for intake of green and yellow vegetables was 0.45 (95% CI, 0.73–2.8) (Ito *et al.*, 1997).

(d) *Cohort studies with nested case-control analyses*

The association between blood carotenoid status and cancer risk has been studied in nested case-control studies in nine populations (Table 7). The cohorts ranged in size from 1805 to 36 265 persons, and the number of cancer cases occurring during the 2–20-year follow-up periods ranged from 39 to 766.

On Guernsey, United Kingdom, during 1968–75, 5004 women aged 28–75 volunteered a plasma sample, which was stored at -20°C (Wald *et al.*, 1984) and analysed for β -carotene. During a 7–14-year follow-up, 39 new cases of breast cancer were found by general practitioners. On the basis of the plasma concentrations of β -carotene in the cancer cases and in two matched controls per case, the relative risk between the highest and lowest quintiles of plasma β -carotene was 0.36 but was not significant (Table 10); the association was stronger for premenopausal women. The women in this group had a 28% lower ($p < 0.05$) age-adjusted mean concentration of β -carotene than the corresponding controls. Exclusion of those cancer cases occurring during the first two years of follow-up did not notably alter the results. The β -carotene concentrations were very low (mean, 5 $\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$, 0.09 $\mu\text{mol}/\text{L}$), probably due to degradation during storage, as the serum samples were thawed several times (Wald *et al.*, 1988). [The Working Group noted that the method for

determining serum β -carotene and the reliability of the method were not reported.]

In the Hypertension Detection and Follow-up Program, a trial of treatment for hypertension at 14 centres in the United States, serum samples were collected during 1973–74 from 4480 men and women aged 30–69 with a diastolic blood pressure of at least 90 mm Hg (Table 7). The serum samples were stored at -70°C . During a five-year follow-up, 111 cases of cancer (excluding non-melanoma skin cancer) occurred among participants with no history of cancer. The cases were confirmed by a review of hospital records, pathology reports and death certificates, and each case was matched with two controls. The coefficient of variation for the determinations of carotenoid was 8.7%. No significant association was found between serum carotenoid concentration and the occurrence of cancers at all sites combined (Table 10). When the mean carotenoid concentrations adjusted for lipids were compared for cases of cancer at various sites and for the corresponding controls, a significant, 36% higher mean concentration was found in cases of leukaemia and lymphoma combined than among controls ($p = 0.05$). No association was seen for cancers of the lung, breast or prostate or for all cancers of the gastrointestinal tract (Willett *et al.*, 1984).

A total of 6860 men of Japanese ancestry, 52–75 years of age, participated in the Honolulu Heart Program in Hawaii, United States, during 1971–75 (Table 7), in which serum samples were taken and were stored at -75°C . During the 10-year follow-up, 81 cases of cancer of the colon, 74 of the lung, 70 of the stomach, 32 of the rectum and 27 of the urinary bladder were recorded in the Hawaii Tumor Registry. Each cancer case was confirmed by histological examination of tissue obtained at surgery or biopsy. An age-stratified random sample of controls was selected from among those men who did not develop cancer during the follow-up. A significant inverse gradient was found between serum β -carotene concentration and the occurrence of lung cancer, and the relative risk between the highest and lowest quintiles was 0.45 (95% CI, 0.17–1.2 [calculated by the Working Group]; Table 10) after adjustment for age and smoking,

with a p value of 0.04 for trend. Further adjustment for alcohol intake and serum cholesterol, retinol and vitamin E concentrations did not alter the results. The association was found for men with various intensities of smoking but was strongest in heavy smokers. It persisted throughout the 10-year follow-up period. The median concentration of β -carotene was significantly lower in men with squamous- and small-cell carcinomas (but not those with adenocarcinomas) than in controls. The coefficient of variation of the β -carotene determinations was very high (33%), perhaps due to the low mean concentration in the controls. An inverse association with stomach cancer was also reported between the highest and lowest tertiles of serum β -carotene concentration, with an age-adjusted relative risk of 0.3 (95% CI, 0.2–0.7). This association was seen mainly in patients whose cancer was diagnosed within the first five years of follow-up ($p = 0.001$). No association was observed for cancers of the colon (Nomura *et al.*, 1985).

At a later stage of the study, 28 cases of cancer of the oesophagus, 23 of the larynx and 18 of oral-pharyngeal cancer occurred during a follow-up of 20 years. These 69 cases were matched to 138 controls. The mean concentrations of α - and β -carotene were lower in the cases than in the controls after adjustment for age, smoking and alcohol consumption. When data for the three sites of cancer were combined, a strong association was found. The relative risk between the highest and lowest tertiles was 0.19 (95% CI, 0.05–0.75) for α -carotene, 0.10 (95% CI, 0.02–0.46) for β -carotene, 0.25 (95% CI, 0.06–1.0) for β -cryptoxanthin and 0.22 (95% CI, 0.05–0.88) for total carotenoids. A significant gradient was observed for all four variables, and the associations were still present after the 10-year follow-up (Nomura *et al.*, 1997).

Serum samples were collected in 1974 from 25 802 men and women, representing about 30% of the population of Washington County, Maryland, United States, who were 18 years of age or over. The serum samples were stored at -73°C (Menkes *et al.*, 1986; Table 7). During the follow-up, ending in 1983–90, the incidences of cancers of the lung (Menkes *et al.*,

1986), colon (Schober *et al.*, 1987), pancreas (Burney *et al.*, 1989), urinary bladder (Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1989), prostate (Hsing *et al.*, 1990), rectum and breast (Comstock *et al.*, 1991), cervix (Batieha *et al.*, 1993), oral cavity (Zheng *et al.*, 1993), skin (Breslow *et al.*, 1995) and ovary (Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1996) among originally cancer-free persons were obtained from the Washington County Cancer Register. One, two or four controls were drawn from among people who were alive and had no history of cancer, except skin cancer, and were matched to persons in the subgroups with cancers at specific sites for age, sex and race. Matching was also performed in some studies for time of blood collection (Menkes *et al.*, 1986; Schober *et al.*, 1987; Comstock *et al.*, 1991; Batieha *et al.*, 1993; Zheng *et al.*, 1993; Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1996), time since the previous meal (Burney *et al.*, 1989; Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1989; Comstock *et al.*, 1991; Batieha *et al.*, 1993; Zheng *et al.*, 1993; Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1996), smoking (Menkes *et al.*, 1986) and menopausal status (Batieha *et al.*, 1993; Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1996).

An inverse association was found between serum β -carotene concentration and lung cancer occurrence (Menkes *et al.*, 1986; Table 10), the relative risk for lung cancer (99 cases) between the highest and lowest quartiles of concentrations of the micronutrient being 0.45 ($p = 0.04$) [calculated by the Working Group]. Adjustment for potential confounding factors—education, marital status, occupation, time since last meal, treatment of hypertension, intake of vitamin supplements, smoking history, hormone use (in women) and socioeconomic indicators—did not alter the relationship. A strong inverse association was observed for squamous-cell carcinoma, with a relative risk of 0.23 [calculated by the Working Group] (95% CI, 0.07–0.72) between persons with serum β -carotene concentrations over and below the median. No significant association was observed for small-cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma or large-cell carcinoma or for unspecified carcinomas of the lung combined.

In a complementary study based on a larger study population, 157 male and 101 female cases of lung cancer were found during a maxi-

mum follow-up of 19 years. In comparison with 515 controls matched for race, sex, age, date of blood collection and subpopulation, a significant inverse association was seen between lung cancer occurrence and the concentration of carotenoids, with the exception of lycopene. The relative risks between the highest and lowest quintiles were 0.48 (p for trend = 0.01) for serum α -carotene, 0.44 (p = 0.002) for β -carotene, 0.29 (p < 0.001) for cryptoxanthin, 0.41 (p < 0.001) for lutein/zeaxanthin and 1.0 (p = 0.99) for lycopene. The results were similar for men and women. The associations, with the exception of that with cryptoxanthin concentration, disappeared after adjustment for smoking (Comstock *et al.*, 1997). The serum β -carotene concentration was not significantly associated with the risk for colon cancer (n = 72) (Schober *et al.*, 1987; Table 10). The serum lycopene concentration was inversely associated with the risk for pancreatic cancer (n = 22), the relative risk between the highest and lowest tertiles of concentrations of the micronutrient being 0.19 [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend < 0.05; Burney *et al.*, 1989; Table 10). Adjustment for total carotenoids, β -carotene, selenium and vitamin E in serum and for education and smoking history did not noticeably alter the results. The association was independent of length of follow-up, suggesting that latent cancers had not contributed to the finding, and was strongest for nonsmokers. The total serum concentration of carotenoids or of β -carotene was not significantly associated with the risk for pancreatic cancer. A nonsignificant inverse association was found between serum lycopene concentration and the risk for cancer of the urinary bladder (n = 35; Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1989; Table 10), the relative risk between the highest and lowest tertiles, adjusted for history of cigarette smoking and intake of vitamin supplements, being 0.50 (95% CI, 0.15–1.6) [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.06).

No evidence was found for associations between the serum concentrations of β -carotene, lycopene or total carotenoids and the risk for prostatic cancer (n = 103; Hsing *et al.*, 1990; Table 10). The mean difference between cases and controls varied between -6 and +4%.

Adjustment for time since the last meal, smoking and education did not alter the results. No interaction was observed between β -carotene concentration and age, and the concentrations were similar for latent (n = 18) and clinically apparent (n = 85) cancer cases. No association was present between the serum β -carotene concentration and the occurrence of rectal (n = 34) or postmenopausal breast (n = 30) cancer (Comstock *et al.*, 1991; Table 10), the relative risks between persons in the highest and lowest tertiles of concentrations of the micronutrient being 1.2 and 1.1, respectively [calculated by the Working Group]. A nonsignificant inverse association was, however, seen between the serum lycopene concentration and risk for rectal cancer, the relative risk being 0.36 [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.10).

The concentrations of several carotenoids were inversely associated with the risk for cervical cancer (n = 50; Batiha *et al.*, 1993; Table 10). The relative risks between the highest and lowest tertiles [calculated by the Working Group] were 0.37 (p for trend = 0.02) for total carotenoids, 0.32 (p = 0.01) for α -carotene, 0.33 (p = 0.02) for β -carotene, 0.43 (p = 0.07) for cryptoxanthin and 0.40 (p = 0.08) for lycopene. The associations were not altered by exclusion of cancer cases that occurred during the first years of follow-up. Education, marital status, oral contraceptive use, smoking and serum concentrations of retinol, lutein, α -tocopherol, γ -tocopherol or selenium did not confound the results. Similar patterns of risk were observed for the 32 cases of carcinoma *in situ* and for the 18 cases of invasive cancer, although the associations were generally weaker for invasive cancer. Serum lutein concentration was not associated with cervical cancer risk. [The Working Group noted that no information was available on known strong risk factors such as human papillomavirus infection and sexual behaviour.]

Low serum concentrations of various carotenoids were nonsignificantly associated with the occurrence of oral or pharyngeal cancer (n = 28) (Zheng *et al.*, 1993; Table 10). The association was significant for total carotenoids, the unadjusted relative risk

between the highest and lowest tertiles of concentrations being 0.33 (p for trend = 0.05). The relative risks for β -carotene, α -carotene, cryptoxanthin, lutein and lycopene ranged from 0.33 to 0.65. No association was found between serum β -carotene or lycopene concentration and the incidence of melanoma ($n = 30$) or basal-cell ($n = 32$) or squamous-cell ($n = 37$) carcinoma of the skin (Breslow *et al.*, 1995; Table 10). The relative risks between the highest and lowest tertiles of the distribution of concentrations varied from 0.8 to 1.4. No significant inverse association was found between total serum carotenoids, α -carotene, β -carotene, cryptoxanthin, lutein or lycopene and the occurrence of ovarian cancer ($n = 35$; Helzlsouer *et al.*, 1996; Table 10). The unadjusted relative risks between the tertiles of distribution varied from 0.66 to 2.0.

The British United Provident Association Medical Centre in London undertook medical examinations of 22 000 men aged 35–64 years during 1975–82 (Wald *et al.*, 1988; Table 7). The serum samples were stored at -40°C . The diagnoses of cancer or death were received from the Office of Population Censuses and Surveys. During the two- to nine-year follow-up, 271 cancer cases occurred. The relative risk for cancers at all sites combined between the highest and lowest quintiles of serum β -carotene concentration was 0.60 [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.01). The incidence of lung cancer ($n = 50$) showed a significant inverse trend ($p = 0.008$) and a relative risk of 0.41 [calculated by the Working Group]. The association was not dependent on the length of follow-up and was still present after follow-up for five years or more. No significant association was observed for cancers of the colorectum ($n = 30$), stomach ($n = 13$), urinary bladder ($n = 15$), skin ($n = 56$) or central nervous system ($n = 17$).

The Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial comprised 12 866 men, 35–57 years of age, who were at high risk for coronary heart disease and who were selected from several clinical centres in the USA covering a population of 361 662 (Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial Research Group, 1982; Table 7). About 63% of the participants were cigarette smokers (Connett *et al.*, 1989). A nested case-control

study was conducted on the basis of serum samples collected during 1973–75 from randomized participants and stored at -50 to -70°C . During the 10-year follow-up, 156 individuals died of cancer; all of the deaths were reviewed by a committee. The relative risk for lung cancer ($n = 66$) between the highest and lowest quintiles of total serum carotenoid concentrations was 0.54 [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.03; Table 10). A nonsignificant association with serum β -carotene concentration was observed (p for trend = 0.08), with a relative risk of 0.43 [calculated by the Working Group]. The associations were not due to age, smoking status, alcohol consumption, obesity or plasma lipids and were strongest during the first five years of follow-up. No significant association was observed for cancers at all sites combined.

The Finnish Mobile Clinic conducted health examinations on 36 265 men and women, 15 years of age or over, in 25 cohorts in various parts of Finland during 1968–72 (Knekt *et al.*, 1990; Table 7). Serum samples were taken and were stored at -20°C . During the 6–10-year follow-up, 766 cancer cases occurred among persons who had originally been cancer-free. Cancers at 19 sites were studied: stomach, colon, rectum, pancreas, lung, prostate, breast, cervix, endometrium and ovaries combined, basal-cell carcinoma of the skin, lymphomas and leukaemias combined (Knekt *et al.*, 1990), larynx, oesophagus, kidney, urinary bladder, brain, oral and pharyngeal cancers combined, liver and gall-bladder combined and melanoma (Knekt *et al.*, 1991). The relative risks for cancers at all sites, adjusted for smoking, between the highest and lowest quintiles of serum β -carotene concentrations were 0.77 (95% CI, 0.48–1.1) [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.01) for men and 1.0 (95% CI, 0.59–2.0) [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.26) for women (Table 10). The relationship for men persisted after exclusion of cancer cases that occurred during the first two years of follow-up and after adjustment for potential confounding factors. No interaction with smoking or serum concentrations of cholesterol, α -tocopherol or selenium was observed. Significantly lower mean concentrations of β -

Table 10. Results of nested case-control studies including more than 10 cases of cancer on the association between serum or plasma concentrations of carotenoids and cancer

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA	Lung	17 M/F	28 M	STC	NR	NR	NR	112	+8
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1985), USA	Lung	74 M	302 M	SBC	Quintile	0.45 (0.17–1.25)	0.04	29	-31 **
Menkes <i>et al.</i> (1986), USA	Lung	99 M/F	196 M/F	SBC	Quintile	0.45	0.04	29	-14 ***
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), UK	Lung	50 M	99 M	SBC	Quintile	0.41	0.008	20	-22
Connett <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Lung	66 M	131 M	STC	Quintile	0.54	0.03	99	-12 *
				SBC	Quintile	0.43	0.08	12	-23
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Lung	144 M	270 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	1.00 (0.52–2.00)	NR	8	-21 **
Orentreich <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Lung	123 M/F	246 M/F	SBC	Quintile	0.33	0.01	6	-15
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Larynx	11 M/F	17 M/F	SBC	Standard units ^c	0.88	0.82	8	-7
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1997), USA	Larynx	23 M	138 M	STC	-	-	-	92	-12
				SBC	-	-	-	15	-15*
				SAC	-	-	-	5	-23
				SCR	-	-	-	11	+12
				SLU	-	-	-	16	-12
				SLY	-	-	-	22	-16
				SZE	-	-	-	3	-12
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Oral and pharynx	20 M/F	37 M/F	SBC	Standard units ^c	0.42	0.16	10	-18

Table 10 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Zheng <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Oral and pharynx	28 M/F	112 M/F	STC	Tertile	0.33	0.05	94	-17 *
				SBC	Tertile	0.50	0.17	15	-24 *
				SAC	Tertile	0.37	0.06	3	-17
				SCR	Tertile	0.33	0.07	10	-16
				SLU	Tertile	0.61	0.37	23	-19
				SLY	Tertile	0.65	0.46	6	-7
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1997) USA	Oral and pharynx	18 M	138 M	STC	-	-	-	92	-3
				SBC	-	-	-	16	-5
				SAC	-	-	-	4	-16*
				SCR	-	-	-	14	-24
				SLU	-	-	-	17	-1
				SLY	-	-	-	21	+4
				SZE	-	-	-	3	+6
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1997) USA	Oesophagus	28 M	138 M	STC	-	-	NR	104	-23*
				SBC	-	-	-	19	-44*
				SAC	-	-	-	5	-42*
				SCR	-	-	-	17	-36*
				SLU	-	-	-	16	-6
				SLY	-	-	-	21	-7
				SZE	-	-	-	3	-21
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1995), USA	Stomach	70 M	302 M	SBC	Tertile	0.3 (0.2-0.7)	0.08	29	-21
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), UK	Stomach	13 M	26 M	SBC	-	-	NR	25	-27
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Stomach	48 M	90 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	1.25 (0.36-	NR	8	-10
		28 F	48 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	5.00) 1.11 (0.26- 5.00)		10	+27

Table 10 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA	Gastro-intestinal	11 M/F	22 MF	STC	–	–	NR	112	+9
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1985), USA	Colon Rectum	81 M	302 M	SBC	–	–	NR	29	-19
		32 M	302 M	SBC	–	–	–	29	-4
Schober <i>et al.</i> (1987), USA	Colon	72 M/F	143 M/F	SBC	Quintile	0.83 (0.31–2.00)	NR	34	-4
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA	Colorectum	30 M	59 M	SBC	–	–	NR	23	-11
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Colon Rectum	13 F	24 F	SBC	–	–	NR	8	+13
		15 M	29 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	3.33 (0.62–10.0)	–	7	+24
		22 F	42 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	2.00 (0.29–10.0)	–	16	-23
Connett <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Colon	14 M	28 M	STC	–	–	NR	110	-2
				SBC	–	–	–	12	-8
Comstock <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Rectum	34 M/F	68 M/F	SBC	Tertile	1.25	0.26	20	+16
				SBC	Tertile	0.36	0.10	37	-18
Burney <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Pancreas	22 M/F	44 MF	STC	Tertile	0.72	NS	121	+3
				SBC	Tertile	0.82	NS	38	+4
				SBC	Tertile	0.19	< 0.05	50	-32 *
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Pancreas	17 M	28 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	1.67 (0.24–10.0)	NR	7	+6
		11 F	19 F	SBC	–	–	–	15	-9
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Liver and gall-bladder	12 M/F	22 M/F	SBC	Standard unit ^c	0.68	0.45	9	-17

Table 10 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control mean ($\mu\text{g}/\text{dl}$)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), UK	Skin	56 M	107 M	SBC		–	NR	23	–3
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Basal cell	49 M	93 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	0.32 (0.09–1.11)	NR	10	–13
		38 F	69 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	2.50 (0.59–10.0)	–	11	+13
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Melanoma	10 M/F	18 M/F	SBC	Standard units ^c	0.03	< 0.01	12	–52 **
Breslow <i>et al.</i> (1995), USA	Basal-cell	32 M/F	64 M/F	SBC	Tertile	1.3 (0.4–4.0)	0.72	21	0
				SLY	Tertile	1.4 (0.4–4.0)	–	29	+7
	Squamous-cell	37 M/F	74 M/F	SBC	Tertile	1.4 (0.5–4.0)	–	25	+7
				SLY	Tertile	1.0 (0.3–3.1)	–	27	+4
	Melanoma	30 M/F	60 M/F	SBC	Tertile	0.8 (0.2–2.3)	–	21	–11
				SLY	Tertile	1.1 (0.4–3.2)	–	39	+6
Karagas <i>et al.</i> (1997), USA	Squamous-cell	129 M/F	250 M/F	PBC	Quartile	0.73 (0.38–1.41)	0.37	17	–9
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1984), UK	Breast	39 F	78 F	PBC	Quintile	0.36	NS	5	–28
Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA	Breast	14 F	31 F	STC	–	–	NR	112	+8
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Breast	67 F	123 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	3.33 (1.00–10.0)	NR	14	–13
Comstock <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Breast	30 F	59 F	SBC	Tertile	1.11	0.43	22	–10
				SLY	Tertile	0.71	0.29	30	–16
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Ovary	16 F	29 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	0.77 (0.14–5.00)	NR	11	–12

Table 10 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Helzlsouer <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA	Ovary	35 F	67 F	STC	Tertile	0.88 (0.3–2.3)	NR	108	–8
				SAC	Tertile	1.95 (0.6–6.0)	0.24	2	+21
				SBC	Tertile	0.93 (0.4–2.4)	-	18	–9
				SCRLSS	Tertile	0.66 (0.3–1.8)	0.40	9	–7
				LU	Tertile	1.97 (0.7–5.9)	-	19	+15
				SLY	Tertile	1.36 (0.4–4.3)	0.59	31	–17
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Endometrium	12 F	21 F	SBC	–	–	NR	9	+15
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Cervix	23 F	44 F	SBC	–	–	NR	18	–10
Batieha <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Cervix	50 F	99 F	STC	Tertile	0.37 (0.16–0.89)	0.02	93	–15 *
				SAC	Tertile	0.32 (0.13–0.79)	0.01	3	–42 *
				SBC	Tertile	0.33 (0.12–0.86)	0.02	14	–23
				SCR	Tertile	0.43 (0.17–1.08)	0.07	9	–27 *
				SLU	Tertile	0.85 (0.38–1.92)	0.71	19	–6
				SLY	Tertile	0.40 (0.15–1.04)	0.08	35	–12
Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA	Prostate	11 M	21 M	STC	–	–	NR	112	+4
Hsing <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Prostate	103 M	103 M	STC	Median	1.06 (0.54–2.10)	NR	104	+4
				SAC	Median	0.80 (0.21–2.98)	–	4	–3
				SBC	Quartile	1.08 (0.45–2.62)	0.94	24	0
				SLY	Quartile	0.50 (0.20–1.29)	0.26	32	–6
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Prostate	37 M	68 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	5.00 (1.11–10.0)	–	7	–1
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1985), USA	Bladder	27 M	302 M	SBC	–	–	–	29	0
Helzlsouer <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Bladder	35 M/F	70 M/F	SBC	Tertile	0.63 (0.19–2.00)	0.35	33	+11
				SLY	Tertile	0.50 (0.15–1.59)	0.06	45	–7

Table 10 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest categories	p value for trend	Control mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), UK	Bladder	15 M	29 M	SBC	–	–	–	23	–9
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Bladder	15 M/F	29 M/F	SBC	Standard unit ^c	1.72	0.22	8	+31
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Kidney	20 M/F	38 M/F	SBC	Standard unit ^c	0.32	0.06	12	–38
Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984)	Leukaemia and lymphoma	11 M/F	23 M/F	STC	–	–	NR	112	+36 *
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	Leukaemia and lymphoma	19 M	36 M	SBC	–	–	NR	8	–2
		13 F	25 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	5.00 (0.36 -)	–	12	–12
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), UK	Central nervous system	17 M	34 M	SBC	–	–	NR	21	–10
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Brain	18 M/F	34 M/F	SBC	Standard unit ^c	1.44	0.34	10	+15
Willett <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA	All	111 M/F	210 M/F	STC	Quintile ^b	1.5	0.49	112	+7
Wald <i>et al.</i> (1988), UK	All	271 M	533 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	0.60	0.01	22	–10 **
Connett <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	All	156 M	311 M	STC	–	–	NR	96	–4
				SBC	–	–	–	10	–6
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1990), Finland	All	453 M	841 M	SBC	Quintile ^b	0.77 (0.48–	0.01	8	–14 ***
		313 F	578 F	SBC	Quintile ^b	1.11)	0.26	13	–6
						1.00 (0.59–			
						2.00)			

M, male; F, female; NR, not reported; STC, serum total carotenoids; SBC, serum β-carotene; SAC, serum α-carotene; SCR, serum cryptoxanthin; SLY, serum lycopene; SLU, serum lutein; PBC, plasma β-carotene; SZE, serum zeaxanthine; NS, not significant

^a Estimated as [(case mean-control)/control mean] x 100; test for difference from zero: * $p < 0.05$, ** $p < 0.01$, *** $p < 0.001$

^b Higher versus lowest quintile, first two years of follow-up excluded

^c Difference from mean divided by standard deviation

carotene were found only for men with lung cancer ($n = 144$; 21%) [calculated by the Working Group] ($p = 0.005$) and men and women with melanoma ($n = 10$; 58%) [calculated by the Working Group] ($p < 0.01$). A non-significant interaction was found between smoking and β -carotene concentration with respect to lung cancer: the relative risks between the highest and lowest tertiles of β -carotene concentration [calculated by the Working Group] were 0.37 (95% CI, 0.09–1.4) for non-smoking men and 1.1 (95% CI, 0.45–2.5) for men who smoked. The association disappeared after adjustment for smoking. The smoking-adjusted relative risk [calculated by the Working Group] for prostatic cancer ($n = 32$) between the highest and lowest quintiles of β -carotene concentrations was 5.0 (95% CI, 1.1–10), and the corresponding risk for breast cancer ($n = 52$) was 3.3 (95% CI, 1.0–10). [The Working Group noted that the serum samples were stored for a long time at $-20\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$, and that the β -carotene concentrations may therefore have decreased.]

During 1969–73, serum samples were obtained from 453 men and women in a cohort of 143 574 persons, 26–78 years of age, who were participating in multiphasic health check-ups at the Kaiser Permanente Medical Care Program in San Francisco, USA (Friedman *et al.*, 1986); the serum samples were stored at $-40\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$. The relative risk between the highest and lowest quintiles of serum β -carotene concentrations in the 123 patients with lung cancer in whom such concentrations were determined was 0.33 [calculated by the Working Group] ($p = 0.01$; Table 10; Orentreich *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted the low concentrations of β -carotene and the fact that it was found in only 17% of the sera assayed, suggesting loss during storage.]

A nested case-control study was included in the Skin Cancer Prevention Study, a multicentre, randomized trial in the USA (Karagas *et al.*, 1997; Table 7). The study population consisted of 1805 men and women, 35–84 years of age, each of whom had at least one basal-cell or squamous-cell skin carcinoma before entry into the study. Serum samples were collected at the beginning of the study and stored at $-75\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$. During the three- to five-year follow-up, 129 new cases of squamous-cell skin cancer

occurred. The smoking-adjusted relative risk for squamous-cell carcinoma of the skin between the highest and lowest quintiles of serum β -carotene concentrations was 0.73 (95% CI = 0.38–1.4), with a p value for trend of 0.37.

(e) Case-control studies

Case-control studies of blood carotenoid status published since 1980 are summarized in Table 8. About 30 such studies have been published, covering populations in 15 countries and about 20 cancer sites. The most frequently studied sites are the lung, cervix, breast and skin. The numbers of cases in the studies varied from 10 to 696. In most of the studies, the controls were hospital patients; in about 50% of them, the controls were selected by matching for age and sometimes for some other factors. The results are shown in Table 11.

(i) Several sites of cancer

A total of 285 clinically and histopathologically confirmed carcinomas of the oral cavity ($n = 50$), [other] head and neck ($n = 50$), gastrointestinal tract ($n = 50$), lung ($n = 35$), breast ($n = 50$) and uterine cervix ($n = 50$) were studied at the Kidwai Memorial Institute of Oncology in Bangalore, India (Table 8). Fifty persons free from disease were selected from among the hospital staff and attenders of patients by matching for sex, age and socioeconomic status. The cancer patients had significantly lower total carotenoid concentrations than the controls ($p < 0.01$), whatever site of cancer was involved (Table 11; Ramaswamy *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted that only total carotenoids could be measured with the spectrophotometric methods used and that the comparability of the case and control groups was unclear.]

In a later study, the total serum carotenoid concentrations of 100 patients with cancer of the breast and 100 with cancer of the uterine cervix were compared with those of 50 healthy controls and 25 patients with benign diseases of the breast and cervix (Table 8). The cancer patients had lower concentrations than the patients with benign disease, while the healthy controls had the highest values. In the cancer patients, a significant trend was observed towards lower serum carotenoid concentrations

Table 11. Results of case-control studies (including > 10 cases) of the association between tissue concentrations of carotenoids and cancer

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control Mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Pastorino <i>et al.</i> (1987), Italy	Lung	47 F	159 F	PBC	Tertile	0.20 (0.04–0.87)	< 0.05	39	-29 **
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1989), Australia		64 M	63 M	SBC	–	–	NR	84	-33 ***
Ramaswamy <i>et al.</i> (1990), India		25 M, 10 F	25 M, 25 F	SBC	–	–	NR	142	-43 ***
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand		39 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	Quartile	0.15 (0.04–0.53)	NR	75	-30 **
Torun <i>et al.</i> (1995) Turkey		12 M/F	50 M, 106 F	SBC	–	–	–	75	-42**
Ramaswamy <i>et al.</i> (1990), India	Oral cavity	50 M/F	50 M/F	STC	–	–	NR	142	-42 ***
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1993), Australia	Oral cavity and pharynx	41 M	88 M	SBC	–	–	NR	89	-29 ***
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand	Stomach	10 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	-47 **
	Colon	32 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	+5
	Rectum	20 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	–	75	-14*
Pan <i>et al.</i> (1993), China	Hepatocellular carcinoma	59 M	101 M	SBC	Quartile	0.20 (0.08–0.52)	0.02	25	36 ***
Jinno <i>et al.</i> (1994), Japan		41 M, 19 F	20 M, 20 F	SBC	–	–	NR	36	-55 **
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand	Basal-cell carcinoma	72 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	+10
	Squamous-cell carcinoma	32 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	+17
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1992), Australia	Basal-cell and squamous-cell carcinoma	88 M	88 M	SBC	–	–	NR	89	-24 ***
Stryker <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Melanoma	96 M, 108 F	96 M, 152 F	PAC	Quintile	1.1 (0.6–1.9)	0.7	5	+11
				PBC	Quintile	0.9 (0.5–1.5)	0.6	19	9
				PLY	Quintile	1.0 (0.5–1.7)	0.9	34	-1

Table 11 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control Mean (µg/dl)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand		15 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	-	-	-	75	+18
Gerber <i>et al.</i> (1988), Italy, France	Breast	306 F	314 F	SBC	-	-	-	44	+5
Potischman <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA		83 F	113 F	PBC	Quartile	0.32 (0.09-1.11)	0.02	14	-19 **
				PAC	Quartile	1.59 (0.34-7.69)	0.19	3	-11
				PLY	Quartile	0.63 (0.19-2.00)	0.43	26	-15 *
Ramaswamy <i>et al.</i> (1990), India		50 F	25 F	SBC	-	-	-	141	-25 ***
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand		48 F	391 M/F	PBC	-	-	-	75	-5
London <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA		377 F	403 F	SBC	Quintile	1.2 (0.7-1.9)	0.97	24	-1
				SAC	Quintile	1.2 (0.7-1.9)	0.71	4	0
				SLY	Quintile	1.0 (0.7-1.7)	0.82	32	-5
Torun <i>et al.</i> (1995), Turkey		59 F	59 F	SBC	-	-	-	77	-20 *
van't Veer <i>et al.</i> (1996), The Netherlands		347 F	374 F	ABC	Tertile	0.74 (0.45-1.23)	0.31	0.94 (mg/g)	-3
Orr <i>et al.</i> (1985), USA	Cervix	78 F	240 F	PBC	-	-	NR	79	-38*** ^b
Harris <i>et al.</i> (1986), UK		32 F	226 F	SBC	Quintile	0.90 (0.20-5.00)	NR	29	+1
Palan <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA		32 F	37 F	PBC	-	-	NR	23	-68 **
Palan <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA		10 F	36 F	PBC	-	-	NR	29	-59 ***
Palan <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA		10 F	26 F	PBC	-	-	-	31	-58 ***
Ramaswamy <i>et al.</i> (1990), India		50 F	25 F	STC	-	-	NR	141	-25 ***
Potischman <i>et al.</i> (1991a), USA		387 F	670 F	SBC	Quartile	0.72 (0.5-1.2)	0.05	26	-13
				SAC	Quartile	0.92 (0.6-1.5)	0.29	9	-11
				SCR	Quartile	0.77 (0.4-1.3)	0.14	19	+2
				SLY	Quartile	1.14 (0.8-2.1)	0.69	15	
				SLU	Quartile	0.89 (0.5-1.5)	0.93	20	

Table 11 (contd)

Reference, Country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		RR (95% CI) for highest versus lowest category	p value for trend	Control mean (µg/d/l)	Difference between cases and controls (%) ^a
				Type	Category				
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand		15 F	391 F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	–25 *
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand	Prostate	20 M	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	–4
Hayes <i>et al.</i> (1988), The Netherlands	Prostate: clinical focal	94 M 40 M	130 M	PBC	Quintile Quintile	0.77 0.77	0.47 0.36	17	–16 * –6
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand	Bladder	14 M/F	391 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	+13
Malvy <i>et al.</i> (1993), France	Renal	13 M/F	632 M/F	SBC	Quintile	0.06 (0.02–0.91)	NR	58	–69
Malvy <i>et al.</i> (1993), France	Leukaemia	158 M/F	632 M/F	SBC	Quintile	0.36 (0.20–0.64)	NR	58	–28 ***
	Lymphoma	66 M/F	632 M/F			0.23 (0.10–0.56)	NR	58	–32 ***
	Central nervous system	57 M/F	632 M/F			0.12 (0.03–0.40)	NR	58	–30 ***
	Sympathetic nervous system	23 M/F	632 M/F		–	–	NR	58	+4
	Bone	42 M/F	632 M/F		Quintile	0.06 (0.01–0.29)	NR	58	–45 ***
	Soft-tissue sarcoma	30 M/F	632 M/F		–	–	NR	58	–27
	All	418 M/F	632 M/F		Quintile	0.26 (0.17–0.39)	NR	58	–33 ***
Smith & Waller (1991), New Zealand	All	389 M/F	39 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	–2
Torun <i>et al.</i> (1995), Turkey		50 M 106 F	156 M/F	SBC	–	–	NR	75	–34 *

M, male; F, female; STC, serum total carotenoids; SBC, serum β-carotene; SAC, serum α-carotene; SCR, serum cryptoxanthin; SLU, serum lutein; SLY, serum lycopene; PTC, plasma total carotenoids; PBC, plasma β-carotene; PAC, plasma α-carotene; PLY, plasma lycopene; ABC, adipose tissue β-carotene; NR, not reported

^a Estimated as [(case mean–control mean)/control mean] x 100; test for difference from zero: * $p < 0.005$, ** $p < 0.01$, *** $p < 0.001$.

^b Percentage of cancer patients with β-carotene level below normal

with increasing stage of the disease (Ramaswamy & Krishnamoorthy, 1996). [The Working Group noted that the results were not adjusted for use of tobacco.]

The concentrations of β -carotene in 389 patients in Wellington Hospital, New Zealand, with recently diagnosed cancer were compared with those in 618 family members of the patients and 675 control patients. Cancers at 20 sites—oesophagus, stomach, small intestine, colon, rectum, larynx, lung, skin (basal-cell, squamous-cell, melanoma), breast, uterus, cervix, ovary, urinary bladder, kidney, prostate, haematopietic, thyroid, brain—were studied. Low concentrations of β -carotene were observed for individuals with cancers of the lung ($n = 39$), stomach ($n = 10$), oesophagus ($n = 6$), rectum ($n = 20$) and cervix ($n = 15$) (Table 11), the mean differences between cases and controls, adjusted for age, sex and length of sample storage, being 25–47%. Similar results were obtained for relatives of the patients with lung, stomach or cervical cancer, with differences of 10–20%. The relative risk between the highest and lowest quartiles of β -carotene concentrations for lung cancer, excluding the adenocarcinomas, was 0.15 (95% CI, 0.04–0.53) [calculated by the Working Group]. Patients with cancers of the colon, skin, breast, urinary bladder or prostate and relatives of these patients did not have lower β -carotene concentrations than the controls (Smith & Waller, 1991).

The serum β -carotene concentrations of 418 children with newly diagnosed, histologically confirmed malignancies were compared with those of 632 cancer-free controls in six cities in France (Table 8). The controls were healthy children, recruited by the school health-care service or undergoing routine health examinations in general paediatrics wards, and were matched for sex, age and residence. The age- and sex-adjusted serum concentrations showed a significant inverse association with the incidence of all cancers combined (Table 11); the relative risk between the highest and lowest quintiles of concentrations was 0.26 (95% CI, 0.17–0.39) [calculated by the Working Group]. Corresponding, significant, inverse associations [odds ratios calculated by the Working Group] were observed for leukaemia

($n = 158$; odds ratio, 0.36), lymphoma ($n = 66$; odds ratio, 0.23), central nervous system cancer ($n = 57$; odds ratio, 0.12), renal tumours ($n = 13$; odds ratio, 0.06) and bone tumours ($n = 42$; odds ratio, 0.06). No significant differences were observed for cancer of the sympathetic nervous system or soft-tissue sarcoma (Malvy *et al.*, 1993).

In a comparison of 208 cancer patients in Turkey with 156 healthy subjects, a 34% [calculated by the Working Group] lower serum β -carotene concentration was seen in the cancer cases than in the controls ($p < 0.05$; Tables 8 and 11). When the mean concentrations were studied by site, significantly lower concentrations were found for cancers of the breast ($n = 59$), lung ($n = 12$), head and neck ($n = 38$), genitourinary organs ($n = 46$) and gastrointestinal tract ($n = 20$; $p < 0.05$) (Torun *et al.*, 1995). [The Working Group noted that the control group was not described, and no adjustments for confounding were performed.]

(ii) Lung cancer

Forty-seven female patients in Italy with pathologically proven lung cancer were compared with 159 female hospital patients over 40 years of age who had been admitted for causes unrelated to cancer or any chronic disease (80% suffered from musculoskeletal disease) (Table 8). The lung cancer patients had significantly lower mean plasma β -carotene concentrations than the controls (Table 11). The relative risk for lung cancer between the highest and lowest tertiles of plasma β -carotene concentrations was 0.20 (95% CI, 0.04–0.87) [calculated by the Working Group], after adjustment for age, smoking, plasma cholesterol and plasma triglycerides. The relative risk, calculated by the Working Group, was 0.11 for nonsmokers and 0.42 for smokers (Pastorino *et al.*, 1987).

The mean serum β -carotene concentration was 33% lower [calculated by the Working Group] in 64 men in Australia with histologically confirmed lung cancer than in 63 randomly selected controls admitted to the same hospital for small surgical operations (Table 8). The difference was statistically significant after adjustment for age and smoking ($p < 0.001$; Table 11; Kune *et al.*, 1989).

[The Working Group was aware of, but did not further consider, a number of studies in which smoking was not adjusted for.]

(iii) *Hepatocellular carcinoma*

The serum β -carotene concentrations of 59 male patients in China with cytologically or pathologically confirmed hepatocellular carcinoma were compared with those of 101 age-matched controls (Table 8). The controls were selected from among patients who, according to ultrasonography, did not have liver cirrhosis or any other observable lesion; both cases and controls were hepatitis B virus carriers. An inverse association was noted between serum β -carotene concentration and the occurrence of hepatocellular carcinoma (Table 11), the relative risk between the highest and lowest quartiles of β -carotene concentrations being 0.20 [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.02). The association persisted after adjustment for age, education, ethnicity, occupation, alcohol intake, smoking status and dietary intake of β -carotene (Pan *et al.*, 1993).

The serum β -carotene concentrations of 60 Japanese patients with hepatocellular carcinoma and 85 patients with liver cirrhosis tended to be lower than those of 40 age-matched patients with chronic hepatitis (Tables 8 and 11; Jinno *et al.*, 1994). [The Working Group noted that only age was controlled for.]

(iv) *Skin cancer*

Comparison of the highest and lowest quintiles of concentrations of β -carotene, α -carotene and lycopene resulted in relative risks of 0.9, 1.1 and 1.0, respectively, in a comparison of 204 cases of histologically confirmed malignant melanoma and 248 melanoma-free controls, after adjustment for age, sex, plasma lipids, hair colour and ability to tan (Stryker *et al.*, 1990).

In a study of the association between serum β -carotene concentration and basal-cell and squamous-cell carcinoma of the skin among men in Australia, 88 surgical patients without previous skin cancer were selected as unmatched controls. The mean concentrations of serum β -carotene were 24% lower [calculated by the Working Group] in the carcinoma

patients than in controls ($p < 0.001$). An inverse trend was also seen between serum β -carotene concentration and skin cancer risk ($p < 0.0001$) (Kune *et al.*, 1992).

(v) *Breast cancer*

A hospital-based case-control study was conducted in Milan, Italy, and Montpellier, France, involving 314 cases of breast cancer and 306 controls of similar ages (Table 8). No significant difference in the lipid-adjusted plasma β -carotene concentrations was found between breast cancer patients and controls (Table 11; Gerber *et al.*, 1988).

Women in Buffalo, New York, USA, were evaluated for the presence of a breast mass but had no previous history of cancer. Consequently, 83 were classified histologically as breast cancer patients and 113 as controls free from breast cancer (Table 8). An inverse association was seen between β -carotene concentration and breast cancer occurrence (Table 11). The relative risk between quartiles of concentrations was 0.32 (95% CI, 0.09–1.1) [calculated by the Working Group] (p for trend = 0.02) after adjustment for age, age at first birth, family history, age at menarche, body mass index, parity, age at menopause, income, marital status and plasma lipids. This association was restricted to postmenopausal women (p for trend < 0.001). The associations for α -carotene and lycopene were not significant (Potischman *et al.*, 1990, 1991b).

The relationship between serum concentrations of β -carotene, α -carotene and lycopene and the risks for breast cancer and proliferative benign breast disease were addressed in a case-control study of postmenopausal women in Boston, Massachusetts, USA (Table 8). A total of 377 women with newly diagnosed stage I or II breast cancer, 173 women with proliferative benign breast disease and 403 controls were available. No inverse association was observed between the serum concentrations of any of the carotenoids and the occurrence of breast cancer (Table 11). The relative risks for breast cancer between the highest and lowest quintiles were, after adjustment for age, alcohol intake, age at first birth, parity, family history of breast cancer, age at menarche, body weight and prior history of benign breast disease, 1.2 (95% CI,

0.7–1.9) for α -carotene, 1.2 (95% CI, 0.7–1.9) for β -carotene and 1.0 (95% CI, 0.7–1.7) for lycopene (London *et al.*, 1992).

In a study of the β -carotene concentrations in adipose tissue and breast cancers in postmenopausal women in five European countries, 347 patients were recruited from the surgical units of the participating hospitals, and 374 population controls with no history of breast cancer were selected by matching for age (Table 8). The mean β -carotene concentration was similar in the two groups; the relative risk for the highest versus the lowest tertile of β -carotene concentration, adjusted for age, study centre, reproductive factors, alcohol, body mass index and smoking, was 0.74 (95% CI, 0.45–1.2; Table 11; van't Veer *et al.*, 1996).

(vi) Cervical carcinoma

The plasma β -carotene concentrations of 78 patients with untreated uterine cervical cancer were compared with the values for 240 healthy controls (Table 8). Of the cervical cancer patients, 38% had concentrations lower than normal ($p < 0.0005$; Table 11; Orr *et al.*, 1985). [The Working Group noted that confounding factors were not adjusted for in the analysis.]

The serum β -carotene concentrations of 43 patients with dysplasia, 38 with carcinoma *in situ* and 32 with invasive cervical carcinoma were compared with those of 226 hospital controls in the United Kingdom (Table 8). The concentrations in women with invasive disease were similar to that of controls after adjustment for age, smoking, use of oral contraceptives, number of sexual partners and social class, but a reduced concentration was observed in women with preinvasive disease, and the reduction was significant for those with carcinoma *in situ* (Table 11; Harris *et al.*, 1986).

In a series of studies, the plasma β -carotene concentrations in patients with cervical cancer or cervical dysplasia were found to be significantly lower than in healthy controls in the USA (Palan *et al.*, 1988, 1991, 1992; Table 8). [The Working Group noted that confounding factors were not adjusted for.]

Two studies of patients in four Latin American countries addressed the association between the serum concentrations of various

carotenoids and invasive cervical cancer (Table 8). In the first study, which concentrated on early stages of the disease in 387 cases and 670 controls, the age-adjusted associations with β -carotene, α -carotene and cryptoxanthin concentrations were significant, the relative risks between the highest and lowest quartile of serum concentrations (p value for trend) being 0.61 (0.0005), 0.79 (0.04) and 0.82 (0.05), respectively. No association was seen for lycopene (RR, 1.1) or lutein (RR, 1.1). After further adjustment for age at first sexual intercourse, number of sexual partners, number of pregnancies, presence of human papillomavirus 16/18, interval since last cervical Papanicolaou smear, number of household facilities and serum lipids, a significant inverse trend for β -carotene (RR, 0.72) remained, but all of the other associations became nonsignificant (Potischman *et al.*, 1991a; Table 11). The second study added cases of more advanced disease ($n = 309$) and showed results similar to those of the study of early-stage cancers, except that patients with more advanced disease had slightly lower lycopene and lutein concentrations. The concentrations of β -carotene, α -carotene and cryptoxanthin showed no trend with advancing disease. Adjustment for smoking, alcohol intake or oral contraceptive use did not alter the observed relationships (Potischman *et al.*, 1994).

(viii) Prostatic cancer

The concentrations of β -carotene were determined in 94 patients with clinically diagnosed prostatic cancer, 40 with focal prostatic cancer, 130 with benign prostatic hyperplasia and 130 hospitalized for minor surgical interventions and with no history of cancer (controls) in The Netherlands (Hayes *et al.*, 1988; Table 8). The age-adjusted mean β -carotene concentrations were significantly [(16% calculated by the Working Group] lower in clinically diagnosed prostatic cancer patients than in controls (Table 11). No significant trends were found, however, either for clinically diagnosed prostatic cancer or for all prostatic cancers combined. The relative risks for the highest versus the lowest quintile of plasma β -carotene concentration were 0.77 for both cancer groups [calculated by

the Working Group]. The lowest serum β -carotene concentrations were observed in patients whose blood had been drawn before treatment or who had advanced stages of the disease. After exclusion of those patients whose blood had been obtained after treatment, the values for subjects with advanced clinical disease were significantly lower than those for controls.

(f) *Summary of findings*

The findings presented in Tables 6–11 are summarized by cancer site and study design in Table 12. The consistency, strength and any dose–response relationship of the associations are described.

The results for lung cancer were remarkably consistent, almost all studies showing an inverse association between blood β -carotene or total carotene status and lung cancer risk. All seven studies in which the possible presence of a gradient between carotene concentration and lung cancer occurrence was examined gave significant results. Although some studies showed that the strongest association was for squamous-cell carcinoma, this was not a consistent finding. In general, no associations were found for adenocarcinomas.

The positive results in cohort studies in which cases diagnosed early were excluded indicate that the explanation cannot be metabolic effects of undiagnosed cancer. Although the methods used to measure carotenoids were of variable precision, imprecision would tend to obscure rather than to account for the observed association between carotenoid concentrations and lung cancer occurrence. All of the studies considered included control for tobacco and other factors; incomplete adjustment due to mis-measurement or omission of factors remains a concern, however. There has been some suggestion of effect modification due to smoking, but relatively little information is available. The combination of carotene with other micronutrients may have a greater effect than a specific carotene alone.

The results of the few studies on cervical and oral and pharyngeal cancer are also consistent. For other sites, the aggregate results are less compelling, and the evidence for an inverse association is less strong.

4.1.1.2 *Observational studies based on dietary questionnaires*

(a) *Methodological comments*

The quality of the dietary information used in epidemiological analyses is determined by the dietary assessment instrument, the method of administration, the choice of study subjects and the database used to convert information on food intake into nutrient estimates. In most epidemiological studies, food frequency questionnaires are used to glean information about the usual intake of a number of food items over a defined period of time. The more comprehensive the list of vegetables, fruits and mixed or prepared dishes containing vegetables and fruits (e.g. juices, stews, pizza and salads), the better the estimate of carotenoid intake becomes. In particular, identification of the major sources of carotenoids from national nutrition surveys appropriate for a country or ethnic population and their inclusion in a dietary interview improves its quality. Since many vegetables and fruits are consumed seasonally, inclusion of seasonal intake in an interview is important. Information on portion size, obtained for each food from specific examples or photographs, may also contribute to the quality of an interview, especially for mixed or prepared dishes. Several epidemiological studies have been based on dietary histories rather than food frequency questionnaires. Since dietary histories include foods in the order and combinations in which they are generally eaten, they can improve the quality of the dietary information.

Structured dietary assessment instruments can be administered by trained interviewers in person or by phone. Because of the length of dietary interviews and the large number of participants in many cohort and case-control studies, however, interviews are frequently mailed, to be completed by the participant at home. In these situations, the clarity of the interview and the literacy and commitment of the study participant become critical in determining the quality of the information obtained.

In nearly all epidemiological studies of carotenoid intake and cancer published before

Table 12. Summary of results from studies (of more than 10 cases) of the association between serum or plasma concentrations of β -carotene and cancer

Site of cancer	Design	No. of studies	No. with inverse association ^a	No. with strong inverse association ^b	No. with dose-response association ^c
All	Cohort	4	2	2	–
	Nested case-control	4	2	0	2/2
	Case-control	3	2	2	1/1
Lung	Cohort	3	3	2	1/1
	Nested case-control	7	6	5	5/5
	Case-control	5	5	5	1/1
Larynx	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	2	1	–	–
	Case-control	0	0	–	–
Oral and pharynx	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	3	2	1	1/2
	Case-control	2	2	2	–
Oesophagus	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	1	1	–	–
	Case-control	0	–	–	–
Stomach	Cohort	2	1	1	–
	Nested case-control	3	1	1	1/1
	Case-control	1	1	1	–
Colorectum	Cohort	1	0	–	–
	Nested case-control	8	0	–	–
	Case-control	2	1	0	–

Table 12 (contd)

Site of cancer	Design	No. of studies	No. with inverse association ^a	No. with strong inverse association ^b	No. with dose-response association ^c
Pancreas	Cohort	1	0	–	–
	Nested case-control	2	0	1	1/1
	Case-control	0	–	–	–
Liver	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	1	0	–	–
	Case-control	2	2	2	1/1
Skin	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	7	1	1	1/1
	Case-control	5	1	0	–
Breast	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	4	0	–	–
	Case-control	7	3	1	1/1
Endometrium	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	1	0	–	–
	Case-control	0	0	–	–
Ovary	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	2	0	–	–
	Case-control	0	0	–	–
Cervix	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	2	1	1	1/1
	Case-control	6	5	3	1/1

Table 12 (contd)

Site of cancer	Design	No. of studies	No. with inverse association ^a	No. with strong inverse association ^b	No. with dose-response association ^c
Prostate	Cohort	1	0	–	–
	Nested case-control	3	0	–	–
	Case-control	2	1	0	–
Bladder	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	4	0	–	–
	Case-control	1	0	–	–
Kidney	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	1	1	1	1/1
	Case-control	0	–	–	–
Leukaemia and lymphoma	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	2	0	0	–
	Case-control	2	2	1	–
Brain, central nervous system and sympathetic nervous system	Cohort	0	–	–	–
	Nested case-control	2	0	–	–
	Case-control	2	1	1	–

^a > 30% reduction in cancer risk or significantly reduced mean carotene level

^b At least a 50% reduction in cancer risk or a 30% reduction in mean carotene among the studies reporting an inverse association

^c Significant gradient; x/x, number of studies reporting a gradient per number of studies investigating a gradient among the studies reporting an inverse association

1990, the databases used to estimate the carotenoid content of specific foods were based on the food composition tables of the US Department of Agriculture (1976–94) or those of McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976). Both of these sources focus on the provitamin A carotenoid content of foods, since vitamin A activity was the subject of their estimations. The laboratory techniques used, however, were for measurement of β -carotene, α -carotene, lycopene and other minor hydrocarbon carotenoids (Simpson, 1990). The estimates of most vegetables and fruits in food composition tables are reasonable estimates of β -carotene, since it is the hydrocarbon carotenoid that occurs at the highest concentration. In epidemiological studies in which these databases were used, the carotenoids estimated are referred to variously as 'carotenoids', 'provitamin A carotenoids', 'carotene' and ' β -carotene'.

Databases on the major individual carotenoids in common foods have now been published in Finland (Heinonen, 1990) and the United States (Chug-Ahuja *et al.*, 1993; Mangels *et al.*, 1993), specifically for lutein/zeaxanthin, β -cryptoxanthin, lycopene, α -carotene and β -carotene. In other countries, such as Spain (Olmedilla *et al.*, 1990), this information is being incorporated and expanded for national food composition tables. The carotenoid databases rely on laboratory analyses and a selection of values from the published literature; however, the estimates of individual carotenoid concentrations are still limited by lack of information on certain vegetables and fruits and by variations in carotenoid content due to genetic manipulation of crops, agricultural practices and food processing and preparation techniques.

The validity of measurements of carotenoid intake made with food frequency questionnaires is difficult to evaluate. Correlation with blood β -carotene concentrations ranges from 0.2 to 0.3 (Roidt *et al.*, 1988), but blood β -carotene concentrations are affected by absorption and metabolism and may be imperfect measures of biological activity at the sites of carcinogenesis. Clearly, measures of dietary intake at one time may not reflect the usual patterns of intake during

the decades that may elapse between initiation of carcinogenesis and clinical detection. Most important, intake of β -carotene and other carotenoids correlates with total vegetable and fruit intake, making it difficult to know whether any reduction in cancer risk associated with increased carotenoid intake is attributable to specific carotenoids, other phytochemicals found in vegetables and fruit or dietary patterns associated with increased vegetable and fruit intake.

Carotene intake and risks for cancers at various sites have been evaluated in a large number of studies in which intake was inferred from questionnaires on fruit and vegetable intake, without quantification of carotene intake. Those studies are not included. Others give estimates of the total carotenoid composition of the diet on the basis of a nutrient database, but fail to distinguish the intake of individual carotenoids. These studies are summarized in the Tables 13–23.

Studies based on a dietary assessment or a dietary database that provide a quantitative estimate of intake of one or more carotenoid are also summarized in the text for illustrative purposes, if they included sufficient subjects to ensure reasonable power, i.e. cohort studies with at least 50 cases per site and case-control studies with at least 100 cases.

These criteria do not necessarily enable distinction of a specific effect of a dietary carotenoid from the effect of other components of fruits and vegetables; however, the findings of investigators who attempted to resolve this issue are summarized.

(b) Cohort studies

Table 13 summarizes the major cohort studies in which intake of carotenoids was measured.

In a study of 35 215 women aged 55–69 years in Iowa, USA, 212 new cases of cancer of the colon were documented between 1986 and 1990. The risk for colon cancer was evaluated in relation to the intake of certain nutrients, as assessed from a questionnaire on food frequency that was completed on entry and from a nutrient database [type unspecified]. No effect of total β -carotene derived from supplements and the diet was found (Bostick *et al.*, 1993).

A self-administered semi-quantitative food frequency questionnaire was completed by 57 837 women in the Canada, and the cohort was subsequently followed from 1982 to 1987. During that period, 519 new cases of breast cancer were diagnosed. These patients were compared in a nested case-control design with 1182 women who did not have breast cancer at the time the case was diagnosed. The intake of nutrients was estimated from a database developed for other studies (Risch *et al.*, 1988; Jain *et al.*, 1990). Estimated β -carotene consumption was not found to have a protective effect (Rohan *et al.*, 1993).

Responses to a semi-quantitative food frequency questionnaire were used to examine the relationship between intake of various carotenoids, vegetables and fruits and the risk for prostatic cancer in a cohort of 47 894 US male health professionals, aged 40–75 years. In this cohort, 773 cases of prostatic cancer other than stage A1 were identified, 87% of which were confirmed by medical records. The carotenoid contents of specific foods were estimated from the database of the US Department of Agriculture (Mangels *et al.*, 1993). The intakes of β -carotene, α -carotene, lutein and β -cryptoxanthin were not associated with an increased risk. Only lycopene intake was related to a lower risk, with an age- and energy-adjusted relative risk of 0.79 (95% CI, 0.64–0.99) for high versus low quintile of intake (p for trend, 0.04). Similar patterns of risk with these five carotenoids were seen for advanced stages C and D of the disease (Giovannucci *et al.*, 1995).

In the Finnish Mobile Clinic Health Survey, 9235 men and women were interviewed about their diet at the time of enrolment during the preceding year; 117 cases of lung cancer were found among men and 88 cases of breast cancer among women during a maximal 25-year follow-up. The composition of nutrients at baseline was estimated by reference to Finnish food composition tables. The results suggest that carotenoid intake is associated with the incidence of lung cancer in nonsmokers but not in smokers, with relative risks between the lowest and highest tertiles of 2.5 (p for trend = 0.04) and 1.1 (p for trend

= 0.91), respectively. The β -carotene, α -carotene, lycopene and lutein intakes were not significantly lower in men with lung cancer than in those without (Knekt *et al.*, 1991). No significant associations were observed between β -carotene, lycopene or lutein intake and the incidence of breast cancer (Järvinen *et al.*, 1997).

In a cohort study in The Netherlands of 62 573 women who had completed a self-administered dietary questionnaire on entry, 650 breast cancer cases were identified after 4.3 years of follow-up. Nutrient intake was estimated by reference to Dutch food composition tables. No association was found with the estimated intake of β -carotene (Verhoeven *et al.*, 1997).

(c) Case-control studies

(i) Lung cancer

The main case-control studies of lung cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 14. In nearly all of them, the risk for lung cancer was lower among people with a high dietary intake of carotenoids. A clear majority of the studies, however, found stronger inverse trends with vegetable and fruit intake than with estimated carotenoid intake. Even among the Finnish men participating in the ATBC trial, who used tobacco and alcohol heavily, the dietary intake of β -carotene at baseline was inversely related to the incidence of lung cancer in both those receiving β -carotene and those receiving placebo (Albanes *et al.*, 1996).

In the two population-based case-control studies of lung cancer in which newly documented data from the US Department of Agriculture on the content of the five major carotenoids in foods was used, statistically significant or marginally significant inverse trends in risk were seen in association with intake of lutein, α -carotene and β -carotene (Le Marchand *et al.*, 1993; Ziegler *et al.*, 1996). Although intake of these carotenoids was highly correlated in both populations, the analyses suggested that individual carotenoids may have independent effects.

Inverse associations with intake of carotene were observed in both ex-smokers and current smokers in all of the studies that included people

Table 13. Cohort studies (including case-control studies nested within cohorts) of the association between dietary carotenoids and cancer

Reference, country	Site of cancer	Size of cohort	No. of cases	Exposure		Category	RR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database*				
Shekelle <i>et al.</i> (1981), USA	Lung	2 107	33	Carotene index	USDA	Quartiles	[0.59]		0.003
Kromhout (1987), Netherlands	Lung	872 men	63 (deaths)	β-Carotene	Dutch	Quartile	0.68	0.35–1.34	
Knekt <i>et al.</i> (1991), Finland	Lung Smokers Nonsmokers	4 538 men	93 24	Carotenoids	Finnish	Tertiles	[0.93] [0.40]		0.91 0.04
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1992a), USA	Lung Male Female	11 580	94 70	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	1.07 0.59	0.66–1.74 0.32–1.07	
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1992b), USA	Lung	5 080 men	125	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.98	0.59–1.63	
Steinmetz <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Lung	41 837 women	179	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.81	0.48–1.38	0.39
Bandera <i>et al.</i> (1997), USA	Lung Males Females	27 544 20 456	395 130	Carotenoids	USDA	Tertiles	0.73 0.82	0.58–0.94 0.52–1.29	0.03 0.35
Ocké <i>et al.</i> (1997), Netherlands	Lung	561 men	54	β-Carotene	Dutch	Dichotomy	[0.96]	0.55–1.67]	
Yong <i>et al.</i> (1997), USA	Lung	10 068	248	Carotenoids	USDA	Quartile	0.74	0.52–1.06	0.14
Zheng <i>et al.</i> (1995), USA	Upper digestive tract Stomach	34 691 women	33 26	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.7	0.3–1.8	0.44
Heilbrun <i>et al.</i> (1989), Hawaii	Colon Rectum	8 006	102 60	β-Carotene Other carotenes β-Carotene Other carotenes	USDAM	Quintiles	[0.72] [0.74] [0.83] [0.93]		<0.05 0.11 0.15 0.42 0.40
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1992a), USA	Colon Male Female	11 580	97 105	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	1.40 1.10	0.86–2.27 0.68–1.77	

Table 13 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	Size of cohort	No. of cases	Exposure		Categories	RR**	(95% CI)	P for trend
				Carotenoid	Database*				
Bostick <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Colon	35 215	212	β-Carotene	NR	Quintiles	0.80	0.52–1.22	0.27
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1994), USA	Pancreas	13 979	65	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.78	0.44–1.37	
Graham <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA	Breast	18 586	344	Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	0.89	0.63–1.26	
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1992a), USA	Breast	[~7300]	219	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.79	0.57–1.10	
Hunter <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Breast	89 494	1439	Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	0.89	0.76–1.05	0.08
Rohan <i>et al.</i> (1993), Canada	Breast	56 837	519	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quintiles	0.77	0.53–1.10	0.12
Kushi <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA	Breast	34 387	879	Carotenoids	NR	Quintiles	0.88	0.70–1.12	0.98
Järvinen <i>et al.</i> (1997), Finland	Breast	4 697	88	β-Carotene Lycopene Lutein	Finnish	Tertiles	[1.01] [0.99] [1.19]		
Verhoeven <i>et al.</i> (1997) Netherlands	Breast	62 573	650	β-Carotene	Dutch	Quintiles	1.01	0.72–1.42	0.96
Hsing <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Prostate	17 633	(deaths)	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles			
	age < 75		78				1.9	1.0–3.7	< 0.05
	age > 75		71				0.2	0.1–0.6	< 0.01
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1992a), USA	Prostate	[~4300]	208	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	1.09	0.78–1.51	
Giovannucci <i>et al.</i> (1995), USA	Prostate	47894	773	α-Carotene β-Carotene β-Cryptoxanthin Lycopene Lutein	New	Quintiles	1.09 1.05 0.94 0.79 1.10	0.87–1.36 0.83–1.32 0.75–1.17 0.64–0.99 0.88–1.37	0.77 0.70 0.76 0.04 0.34
Shibata <i>et al.</i> (1992a) USA	Bladder Male	[~4 300]	71	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	1.32	0.73–2.40	

McW, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976); McWM, McCance and Widdowson, modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture, modified by reference to country data; Dutch, derived from Dutch food composition tables; Finnish, derived from analyses of Finnish foods (Heinonen, 1990); New = recently released data on carotenoids (Mangels *et al.*, 1993); NR, not reported

* Relative risk for highest relative to lowest consumption

who had never smoked, with effects similar in magnitude to that generally observed among smokers. Diet has not been sufficiently investigated in occupationally exposed populations with increased risks for lung cancer. Inverse associations between carotenoid intake and risk have been seen consistently in men and women and in many countries but less consistently across racial subgroups, with less evidence for an effect in blacks and Hispanics than in whites and Asians. Most studies of histological specificity found inverse associations of comparable magnitude with squamous-cell, small-cell and adenocarcinoma.

Several case-control studies have been conducted on the dietary intake of individual carotenoids and lung cancer.

In a study of 106 cases of epidermoid lung cancer and 212 hospital controls, a food frequency questionnaire was administered by nutritionists, and estimates of β -carotene consumption were derived by reference to standard French food tables. The odds ratio for low versus high consumption of β -carotene was 4.1 (95% CI, 2.1–7.4). Introduction of tobacco consumption into a logistic regression analysis did not modify these associations (Dartigues *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used may have included other carotenoids.]

In a study of 839 cases and 772 controls, an attempt was made to recruit equal numbers of women and men by matching each female case identified with a male selected at random from among men in the Toronto, Canada, metropolitan area. A detailed, quantitative dietary history was elicited, and nutrient intake was derived by reference to a database comprising information from the US Department of Agriculture supplemented by data from Canadian sources. The estimated β -carotene consumption had no protective effect, either in models adjusted for cigarette smoking or in strata of nonsmokers or smokers (Jain *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used may have included other carotenoids.]

A newly available database on individual carotenoids was used to reanalyse the dietary data from a case-control study reported earlier (Le Marchand *et al.*, 1989), which involved 230 men and 102 women with lung cancer and 597

male and 268 female controls. After adjustment for smoking, inverse associations of comparable magnitude and statistically significant trends (all $p < 0.04$) were seen for dietary β -carotene, α -carotene and lutein for both men and women, while no consistent associations were found for dietary lycopene or β -cryptoxanthin. The smoking-adjusted relative risks for men and women in the lowest quartile of intake relative to those in the highest were 2.1 and 3.8, respectively, for β -carotene, 2.3 and 2.2 for α -carotene and 1.8 and 3.6 for lutein. Intake of the individual carotenoids was highly correlated, so that identification of independent effects was difficult; however, high intake (above the median) of two of these carotenoids was generally more protective to men and women combined than high intake of one, whereas high intake of all three did not confer additional protection (Le Marchand *et al.*, 1991, 1993).

Three of the case-control studies of lung cancer focused on nonsmokers, including ex-smokers and people who had never smoked. Cohort studies of lung cancer generally have too few people in the latter category to evaluate the effects of diet.

A total of 124 cases of lung cancer in non-smoking women and 263 community-based controls were identified by random-digit dialling, and dietary histories were collected by telephone with a reduced version of the US National Cancer Institute food frequency questionnaire; nutrient intake was estimated from the National Cancer Institute data bank derived from US Department of Agriculture sources. In univariate analyses, estimated intake of β -carotene, α -carotene, cryptoxanthin and lycopene had protective effects. In an analysis with adjustment for age, education, total calories and fruit consumption, the odds ratio for vegetable consumption was 0.3 (95% CI, 0.1–0.5); the association with β -carotene intake was weaker (after adjustment for vitamin C consumption instead of fruit consumption), with an odds ratio of 0.5 (95% CI, 0.3–0.9) (Candelora *et al.*, 1992).

A population-based case-control study of lung cancer among nonsmoking white women in Missouri, USA, involved both women who had never smoked and former smokers who

Table 14. Case-control studies of the association between lung cancer and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Site (subgroup if any)	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Hinds <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA		364	627	Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	[0.6	0.4–0.9	
Wu <i>et al.</i> (1985), USA	Adenocarcinoma	149 F	149 F	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	[0.4	0.2–0.9]	
	Squamous cell	71 F	71 F			Dichotomy	[0.7	0.3–1.7]	
Bond <i>et al.</i> (1987), USA		308 M	308 ^b	Carotenoid index	NR	Tertiles	[0.85	0.52–1.37]	
		308 M	308 ^c				[0.42	0.23–0.74]	
Byers <i>et al.</i> (1987), USA		296 M	587	Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	[0.56]		0.001
		154 F	315				[0.77]		0.32
Pastorino <i>et al.</i> (1987), Italy		47F	159	Carotene	McWM	Tertiles	[0.34]		
Humble <i>et al.</i> (1987) USA	Non-Hispanic	335	548	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	[0.6	0.4–1.0]	
	Hispanic	132	234				[1.1	0.6–2.0]	
Pierce <i>et al.</i> (1989), Australia		71 M	71	β-Carotene	McWM	Dichotomy	[0.85	0.38–1.89]	
Fontham <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA		1253	1274	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.88	0.70–1.11	0.29
Ho <i>et al.</i> (1988), Singapore		50 M	50 M	β-Carotene	NR	Quartiles	[0.3	0.1–1.0]	0.06
Koo (1988), Hong Kong	Nonsmokers	88	137	β-Carotene	NR	Tertiles	[0.73]		0.27
Mettlin (1989), USA		569	569	β-Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	0.5		
Dartigues <i>et al.</i> (1990), France		106	212	β-Carotene	McWM	Dichotomy	[0.24	0.14–0.48]	
Jain <i>et al.</i> (1990), Canada		839	772	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.89		0.95
Kalandidi <i>et al.</i> (1990), Greece	Nonsmokers	91	120	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	1.01	0.64–1.5	
Candelora <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA	Never smokers	124	263	Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.3	0.1–0.6	0.0004
				β-Carotene			0.4	0.2–0.8	0.06

Table 14 (contd)

Reference, country	Site (subgroup if any)	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Categories	OR ^a	(95% CI)	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Candelora <i>et al.</i> (1992) (contd)				α -Carotene			0.2	0.1-0.4	0.0005
				Lutein			0.9	0.5-1.7	0.52
				Cryptoxanthin			0.4	0.2-0.4	0.02
				Lycopene			0.6	0.3-1.2	0.13
Alavanja <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Nonsmokers	429	1021	Total	Prelim	Quintiles	0.80		0.85
				β -Carotene		Quintiles	1.00		0.83
Dorgan <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA		1951	1238	Carotenoids	USDA	Tertiles	[0.79	0.64-0.97]	<0.05
Le Marchand <i>et al.</i> (1993), Hawaii, USA		230 M	597	β -Carotene	New	Quartiles	[0.48]		0.001
				α -Carotene			[0.43]		0.001
				Lutein			[0.56]		0.04
				Lycopene			[0.67]		0.07
				β -Cryptoxanthin			[0.91]		0.81
				β -Carotene			[0.26]		0.003
				α -Carotene			[0.45]		0.02
				Lutein			[0.28]		0.002
				Lycopene			[0.77]		0.83
				β -Cryptoxanthin			[0.91]		0.99
Mayne <i>et al.</i> (1994), USA	Nonsmokers	413	413	β -Carotene	USDA	Quartile	0.70	0.50-0.99	
Ziegler <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA		763	564	α -Carotene	New	Quartiles	[0.45	0.27-0.75]	0.004
				β -Carotene			[0.63	0.38-1.02]	0.04
				β -cryptoxanthin			[1.22	0.76-1.92]	0.13
				Lutein/zeaxanthin			[0.62	0.39-0.97]	0.07
				Lycopene			[0.93	0.58-1.49]	0.87
Hu <i>et al.</i> (1997), China		227	227	β -Carotene	Chinese	Quartiles	0.8	0.4-1.3	0.40

Chinese, derived from Chinese food composition tables; McW, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables; McWM; McCance and Widdowson tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976-94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data; Prelim, preliminary new USDA data on carotenoids (Smucker *et al.*, 1989); New, recently released USDA data on carotenoids (Mangels *et al.*, 1993).

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

^b Dead controls

^c Living controls

had quit 15 years earlier. A total of 429 cases, including 211 (49%) of adenocarcinoma, and 1021 controls were identified. A 60-item, self-administered food frequency questionnaire with semi-quantitative questions on portion size was used to characterize usual diet four years earlier, and a preliminary US Department of Agriculture database was used to estimate carotenoid intake. Interviews were conducted by proxy for the 58% of patients who had died or were too ill to be interviewed. No trends in risk by quintile of intake of β -carotene or of total carotenoids were observed, either before or after adjustment for calories (Alavanja *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted that the large proportion of proxy interviews might have jeopardized the reliability of the dietary measures.]

In a population-based study of nonsmokers, 413 individually matched pairs of lung cancer cases and controls were selected from a motor vehicle license file. A food frequency questionnaire was administered by interview with about two-thirds of the lung cancer patients and by proxy for the remaining one-third; consumption of nutrients were estimated from the US National Cancer Institute database. The odds ratio for estimated consumption of β -carotene was 0.70 (95% CI, 0.50–0.99); however, the estimated consumption of raw fruits and vegetables showed a stronger effect (Mayne *et al.*, 1994).

A recently published database on individual carotenoids in US foods was used in a reanalysis of the results of a population-based case-control study of lung cancer in men in New Jersey, USA, which involved 763 patients and 564 controls, 43% of whom had to be interviewed by proxy. The usual frequency of consumption of 44 food items, including the major sources of carotenoids, about four years previously had been assessed from an interviewer-administered questionnaire. An increased risk for lung cancer was associated with low vegetable and fruit intake but was restricted to current and recent cigarette smokers and pipe and/or cigar users. The smoking-adjusted risk of current and recent smokers in the lowest quartile of α -carotene intake was more than twice that of smokers in the highest quartile of intake, whereas the corresponding risks associated with intakes of β -carotene and of lutein/zeax-

anthin were increased by 60% (Ziegler *et al.*, 1996). [The Working Group noted that the large proportion of proxy interviews might have jeopardized the reliability of the dietary measures.]

(ii) Upper aerodigestive tract cancer

The major case-control studies of upper aerodigestive tract cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 15. Inverse associations with carotene intake were generally not seen for oral cancer but were often significant for laryngeal and oesophageal cancer.

A study was carried out in six regions of Europe which included 1147 men with laryngeal cancer and 3057 population controls. A dietary questionnaire was administered, and the consumption of nutrients was estimated by reference to European food composition tables. Although there was a suggestion of an inverse association between cancer of the epilarynx or endolarynx and β -carotene intake in multivariate analyses, the effect disappeared after adjustment for vitamin C, although there was an inverse association with consumption of fruits, vegetables and vegetable oil (Estève *et al.*, 1996). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

A population-based study was conducted in a high-incidence population in the north of France which comprised 743 cases (704 male and 39 female) and 1975 controls (922 male and 1053 female). Diet was defined from a questionnaire, and β -carotene intake was estimated from British food composition tables (Paul & Southgate, 1976). A significant reduction in risk was seen in association with high carotene intake (odds ratio, 0.53; $p = 0.03$) (Tuyns *et al.*, 1987a). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

(iii) Gastric cancer

The major case-control studies of gastric cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 16. In general, a consistent reduction in risk with increasing consumption of foods containing carotenes was seen; however, the effect of carotene tended to be attenuated when vitamin C intake was included in the statistical model.

Table 15. Case-control studies of the association between upper aerodigestive tract cancer and dietary carotenoid

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Categories	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database**				
McLaughlin <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA	Oral and pharyngeal	571 M	642 M	Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.8		0.11
		300 F	337 F				0.8		
Rossing <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Pharyngeal	166	547	Carotenoids	USDA	Quartiles	[0.8	0.4–1.4]	0.3
Gridley <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Oral and pharyngeal (blacks)	142 M	139 M	Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.2		0.001
		48 F	62 F				1.5		
Zheng <i>et al.</i> (1992a), China	Oral and pharyngeal	115 M 89 F	269 M 145 F	Carotene	Chinese	Tertiles	1.31 1.37		0.34 0.29
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1993), Australia	Oral and pharyngeal	41 M	398 M	β -Carotene	McWM	Tertiles	0.36	0.1–0.9	0.03
Mackerras <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA	Larynx	151	178	Carotene	USD	Tertiles	[0.5	0.2–0.9]	
Freudenheim <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA	Larynx	250	250	Carotenoids	USDAM	Quartiles	0.40	0.20–0.83	0.06
Zheng <i>et al.</i> (1992b), China	Larynx	201	414	Carotene	Chinese	Tertiles	0.8	0.5–1.3	0.28
Estève <i>et al.</i> (1996), SW Europe	Larynx Endolarynx Hypolarynx/ epilarynx	1147	3057	Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	[0.60	0.41–0.88]	
		727					[0.76		
Ziegler <i>et al.</i> (1981), USA	Oesophagus	120 (deaths)	250 (deaths)	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	[0.8]		

Table 15 (contd)

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Categories	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database**				
Decarli <i>et al.</i> (1987), Italy	Oesophagus	105	348	Carotene	USDAM	Tertiles	0.23	0.12–0.46	< 0.001
Tuyns <i>et al.</i> (1987a), France	Oesophagus	743	1975	Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	0.53		0.026
Brown <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA	Oesophagus	207	422	Carotene	USDAM	Tertiles	0.8	0.5–1.6	
Graham <i>et al.</i> (1990a), USA	Oesophagus	178	174	Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.66	0.36–1.23	0.10
Valsecchi (1992), Italy	Oesophagus	211	712	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	[0.4	0.3–0.6]	
Gao <i>et al.</i> (1994), China	Oesophagus	624 M 278 F	851 M 701 F	Carotene	Chinese	Quartiles	0.5 0.6		< 0.001 0.09
Hu <i>et al.</i> (1994), China	Oesophagus	196	392	β-Carotene	Chinese	Quartiles	0.7	0.4–1.4	0.10
Tavani <i>et al.</i> (1994), Italy	Oesophagus (non-smokers)	46	230	β-Carotene	Italian	Tertiles	0.4	0.2–0.9	< 0.05
Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1997), USA	Oesophagus and gastric cardia	95	132	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.8	0.6–1.2	0.26

Chinese, derived from Chinese food composition tables; Italian, derived from Italian food composition tables; McW, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables; McWM, McCance and Widdowson tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from USDA data modified by reference to country data

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

A case-control study of diet and gastric cancer carried out in four regions of Spain comprised 354 cases and 354 matched controls. Information on diet was derived from dietary history questionnaires and nutrient values from British and Spanish food composition tables. High carotene intake was associated with a modest, nonsignificant reduction in risk (odds ratio, 0.66; $p = 0.31$) (Gonzalez *et al.*, 1994). [The Working Group noted that the method used to measure β -carotene might have included other carotenoids.]

A quantitative dietary history was administered to 246 patients with gastric cancer and 246 population controls in Canada, and intake of nutrients was estimated from a database comprising US Department of Agriculture data modified from Canadian sources. The odds ratio was 0.33 (95% CI, 0.15–0.71) for high consumption of β -carotene and 0.39 (95% CI, 0.03–4.52) for consumption of other carotenes. The effect of β -carotene disappeared when vitamin C and/or dietary fibre intake was included in the statistical model (Risch *et al.*, 1985). [The Working Group noted that the method used to measure β -carotene might have included other carotenoids.]

In a case-control study of 1016 patients with gastric cancer and 1159 population controls, the concentrations of nutrients were determined from a food frequency questionnaire based on Italian food tables, supplemented by English data. Although there was a suggestion of an inverse association with β -carotene intake in a univariate analysis, this disappeared in a multivariate analysis that also included intake of protein, nitrites, ascorbic acid and α -tocopherol, with an odds ratio of 0.9 (95% CI, 0.7–1.1) for the highest consumption quintile in comparison with the lowest (Buiatti *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted that the method used to measure β -carotene might have included other carotenoids.]

In a population-based case-control study of gastric cancer, 338 patients and 679 controls were interviewed with a food frequency questionnaire; nutrient intake was estimated from Swedish food composition tables. Although there was an inverse association between estimated β -carotene intake 20 years previously and during adolescence, this large-

ly disappeared in a multivariate analysis that incorporated estimated intake of ascorbic acid, α -tocopherol and nitrates, with an odds ratio for the highest consumption quartile of β -carotene in comparison with the lowest of 0.73 (95% CI, 0.45–1.18; p for trend, 0.1) (Hansson *et al.*, 1994).

(iv) Colorectal cancer

The major case-control studies of colorectal cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 17. The findings were not consistent: only about one-half of the studies that reported intake of carotenes showed an inverse association; many of the other studies that failed to find an effect of carotenes, however, found inverse associations with fruit and vegetable intake.

A self-administered dietary questionnaire was used in a study in which 419 patients with colorectal cancer and 732 controls were selected from an electoral register and nutrient composition was estimated from a database largely derived from British sources. The effect of β -carotene was evaluated in strata of cases of colon and rectal cancer, subdivided by sex. The only association found was an increased risk for colon cancer among women (Potter & McMichael, 1986). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a case-control study of 715 patients with colorectal cancer and 727 community controls, a quantitative dietary history was elicited and nutrient consumption was estimated by reference to Australian food tables. The frequency of β -carotene consumption, presented by quintiles, did not affect the risk in a multivariate model (Kune *et al.*, 1987). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a hospital-based study in Singapore, 203 patients with colorectal cancer and 425 controls were asked about their diet one year previously on the basis of a quantitative food frequency questionnaire. Intake of nutrients was estimated from food composition tables compiled from tables for East Asian foods designed by the United Nations Food and Agricultural Organi-

Table 16. Case-control studies of the association between gastric cancer and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Subgroup	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Correa <i>et al.</i> (1985), USA	Whites	71	90	Total carotenoids	USDA	Dichotomy	0.68	0.43–1.08	
	Blacks	101	110				1.08	0.67–1.73	
Risch <i>et al.</i> (1985), Canada		246	246	β -Carotene	USDAM	Unit (10 000 IU/day)	0.33	0.15–0.71	0.004
			Other carotenes	0.39			0.03–4.52		
You <i>et al.</i> (1988), China		564	1131	Carotene	Chinese	Quartiles	0.5	0.3–0.6	
Buiatti <i>et al.</i> (1990), Italy		1016	1159	β -Carotene	McWN	Quintiles	0.9	0.7–1.1	
Graham <i>et al.</i> (1990b), USA		186 M	181 M	Carotene	USDA	1 standard deviation	0.59	0.45–0.77	
		107 F	104 F				0.71	0.51–0.99	
Boeing <i>et al.</i> (1991), Germany		143	579	Carotene	German	Quintiles	1.42	0.88–2.93	
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1987a, 1994), Italy		723	2024	β -Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	0.27	0.19–0.38	< 0.001
Gonzalez <i>et al.</i> (1994), Spain		354	354	Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	0.66		0.31
Hansson <i>et al.</i> (1994), Sweden		338	679	β -Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	0.73	0.45–1.18	0.10
Munoz <i>et al.</i> (1997), Italy	Positive family history	88	103	β -Carotene	McWM	Tertiles	0.27	0.11–0.65	< 0.05

Chinese, derived from Chinese food composition tables; German, derived from German food composition tables; McWM, McCance and Widdowson (1976) tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture data (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

zation and the US Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. No consistent protective effect of β -carotene was found. Although the odds ratio for the medium tertile compared to the lowest estimated consumption of β -carotene for rectal cancer was significantly reduced, the odds ratio for the highest tertile was not and the p for trend was not significant (Lee *et al.*, 1989). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

The semi-quantitative food frequency questionnaire developed for cohort studies by Willett *et al.* (1985) was administered by interview in a study of 746 cases of colon cancer and an equal number of neighbourhood controls. No association was found with estimated intake of β -carotene (Peters *et al.*, 1992). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a study of 231 cases of colon cancer and 391 controls identified by random digit dialling, a dietary history questionnaire was administered at home. Consumption of nutrients was estimated from a database derived from US Department of Agriculture sources. An inverse association was found with the estimated consumption of β -carotene, the adjusted odds ratios being 0.4 (95% CI, 0.2–0.8) for the highest quartile compared with the lowest in men and 0.5 (0.2–1.0) in women (West *et al.*, 1989). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a population-based case-control study of colon cancer among French Canadians living in Montreal, patients aged 35–79 and diagnosed during 1989–93 were identified at five major teaching hospitals in Montreal covering > 90% of the French-speaking colon cancer patients in the city. Controls were selected by a modified random digit dialling method. Finally, 200 male and 202 female cases ([55%] of those eligible) and 239 male and 429 female controls matched by age, telephone exchange and language (50% of those eligible) were interviewed at home, assisted by relatives if necessary, about their annual diet two years previously. Frequency and amount were

derived from models for more than 200 food items (Jain *et al.*, 1980a), and the intake of nutrients was estimated from a database developed for other studies (Jain *et al.*, 1990). When men and women in the highest quartile of intake were compared with those in the lowest, the relative risks associated with both β -carotene (0.72; 95% CI, 0.49–1.06) and other carotenoid intake (0.76; 95% CI, 0.52–1.11) were suggestively but not significantly reduced. Neither test for trend reached statistical significance (Ghadirian *et al.*, 1997). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

(v) Pancreatic cancer

The major case-control studies of pancreatic cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 18. In the most of these studies, interviews to estimate usual dietary intake before diagnosis had to be conducted by proxy. Several reported an inverse association between estimated β -carotene intake and the risk for pancreatic cancer.

As part of the IARC SEARCH programme, five case-control studies of diet and pancreatic cancer were conducted in Australia, Canada, the Netherlands and Poland. The data from the five studies were combined in an overview analysis, resulting in a total of 802 patients and 1669 controls, 60 and 25% of whom, respectively, were interviewed by proxy. A significant inverse association was found for estimated consumption of β -carotene, adjusted for energy intake, the odds ratio for the highest quintile in comparison with the lowest being 0.37 (p for trend, < 0.0001) (Howe *et al.*, 1992). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids. In addition, it noted the difficulty in obtaining reliable data on diet from proxy interviews.]

Family members of 212 white men who had died of cancer of the pancreas and 220 controls identified by random digit dialling were interviewed about the subjects' dietary intake two years before death or the interview. Nutrient intake was estimated by reference to the database of the University of Minnesota (USA). An inverse association was found with β -carotene

Table 17. Case-control studies of the association between colorectal cancer and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Site	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Potter & McMichael (1986), Australia	Colon	121 M 99 F	241 M 197 F	β-Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	0.8 2.2	0.4-1.6 1.0-4.7	
	Rectum	124 M 75 F	248 M 148 F				0.9 1.5	0.4-1.7 0.6-3.6	
Kune <i>et al.</i> (1987), Australia	Colorectal	388 M 327 F	398 M 329 F	β-Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	[0.50] [0.38]		0.001 0.001
Tuyns <i>et al.</i> (1987b), Belgium	Colon	453	2851	β-Carotene	Dutch	Quartiles	0.98		0.68
	Rectum	365	2851				0.82		0.40
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1988a), Italy	Colon	339	778	Carotenoids	USDAM	Tertiles	0.61		< 0.01
	Rectum	236	778				0.59		< 0.01
Lee <i>et al.</i> (1989), Singapore	Colorectal	203	425	β-Carotene	FAOM	Tertiles	0.85	0.55-1.29	
West <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Colon	112 M 119 F	185 M 206 F	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.4 0.5	0.2-0.8 0.2-1.0	
	Colon	293	~880	β-Carotene	USDAM	'Unit'	0.89	0.82-0.95	
Freudenheim <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Colon	205 M 223 F	205 M 223 F	Carotenoids	USDA	Quartiles	0.83	0.46-1.48	
	Rectum	293 M 151 F	277 M 146 F			Quartiles	0.65	0.37-1.16	< 0.001
						Quartiles	0.34	0.20-0.59	
						Tertiles	0.48	0.24-0.93	
Howe <i>et al.</i> (1992),	Colorectal	4564	9408	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quintiles	0.89	0.75-1.05	0.07

Table 17 (contd)

Reference, country	Site	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Data base				
Peters <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA	Colon	746	746	β-Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	0.99 (per unit)	0.93–1.05	
Meyer & White (1993), USA	Colon	238 M	224 M	β-Carotene	FAO	Quartiles	1.20		
		186 F	190 F	Other carotenes			1.23		
Zaridze <i>et al.</i> (1993), Russia	Colorectum	217	217	β-Carotene	Russian	Quartiles	0.21	0.09–0.48	0.002
Fernandez <i>et al.</i> (1997), Italy	Colorectum (with family history)	112	108	β-Carotene	Italian	Tertiles	0.5	0.2–1.0	< 0.05
Ghadirian <i>et al.</i> (1997), Canada	Colon	402	668	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.72	0.49–1.06	0.20
				Other carotenes			0.76		
Slattery <i>et al.</i> (1997), USA	Colon	1099 M	1290 M	β-Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	1.1	0.8–1.5	0.40
		894 F	1120 F				1.3		

Dutch, derived from Dutch nutrient data bank; German, derived from German food composition tables; Italian, derived from Italian food composition tables; Russia, derived from Russian food composition tables; FAO, WuLeung *et al.* (1972); FAOM, WuLeung *et al.* (1972), modified by reference to Britishe, 1978) and local sources; McW, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables; McWM, McCance and Widdowson tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

Table 18. Case-control studies of the association between pancreatic cancer and dietary carotenoid

Reference, country	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
			Carotenoid	Database				
Falk <i>et al.</i> (1988), USA	203 M 160 F	890 M 344 F	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.8 1.65		
Howe <i>et al.</i> (1990), Canada	249	505	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.93	0.57–1.51	0.77
Baghurst <i>et al.</i> (1991), Australia	104	253	β-Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	0.45	0.22–0.92	0.025
Bueno de Mesquita <i>et al.</i> (1991), Netherlands	164	480	β-Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	0.61	0.38–0.97	
Ghadirian <i>et al.</i> (1991), Canada	179	239	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.69	0.32–1.48	
Olsen <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	212	220	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.6	0.3–1.0	< 0.03
Howe <i>et al.</i> (1992), various	802	1669	β-Carotene	Various	Quintiles	0.37		< 0.0001

McWM, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

intake in a model with adjustment for energy intake, but the association was not significant when the analysis was restricted to information derived from spouses only (Olsen *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids and the difficulty in obtaining reliable data on diet from proxy interviews.]

(vi) *Breast cancer*

The main case-control studies of breast cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 19. Most reported no association with carotene intake.

In a study in which the serum concentrations of micronutrients were assessed, 214 women with breast cancer and 215 hospital controls were administered a dietary frequency questionnaire, and consumption of nutrients was estimated by reference to Italian and British sources. No protective effect of β -carotene was found (Marubini *et al.*, 1988). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a population-based study, 451 case-control pairs completed a self-administered dietary questionnaire. The intake of nutrients was estimated from a database derived from British and Australian sources. Risk decreased with increasing estimated consumption of β -carotene, the relative risk at the highest concentration relative to the lowest being 0.76 (95% CI, 0.50–1.18; p for trend, 0.03) (Rohan *et al.*, 1988). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

A dietary history questionnaire was administered to 250 women with breast cancer and 499 controls sampled from the general population. Nutrient intake was derived from a database based on French and British sources, supplemented by local data. No protective effect from estimated consumption of β -carotene was found (Toniolo *et al.*, 1989). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a study of 150 women with breast cancer and equal numbers of hospital and neighbourhood controls, a food frequency questionnaire

was administered and nutrient intake was estimated by reference to Argentine food composition tables. A weak inverse association was found with estimated β -carotene intake, adjusted for daily caloric intake, which was a major risk factor in this study. The odds ratio in comparison with neighbourhood controls was 0.90 (95% CI, 0.80–1.0), and that in comparison with hospital controls was 0.92 (0.84–1.0) (Iscovich *et al.*, 1989). [The Working Group noted that the measures of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a combined analysis of the original data from 12 case-control studies of diet and breast cancer comprising 4427 cases and 4341 population and 1754 hospital controls, intake of nutrients was estimated from the databases used in the original studies. An inverse association was found for the estimated consumption of β -carotene (odds ratio, 0.87; $p < 0.007$), but this was weaker than that seen with vitamin C (odds ratio, 0.69; $p < 0.0001$) (Howe *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted that the measures of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

Dieticians interviewed 133 women with newly diagnosed breast cancer and 238 population controls using a structured diet history. Nutrient intake was estimated from the Dutch nutrient data bank. No significant trend with estimated consumption of β -carotene was seen (van't Veer *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

A quantitative food frequency questionnaire was used to assess diet one year previously for 200 women with breast cancer and 420 hospital controls. Intake of nutrients was estimated from food composition tables compiled from tables for East Asian foods, as in the study of diet and colorectal cancer (Lee *et al.*, 1989). Premenopausal women appeared to be protected by their estimated consumption of β -carotene, with an odds ratio of 0.39 (95% CI, 0.16–0.69) for the higher tertile of consumption compared with the lower (p for trend, 0.02), in a model that included consumption of red meat, polyunsaturated fatty acids, soya or total protein and β -carotene. In postmenopausal women, there was no significant effect of any dietary variable (Lee *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group

noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a case-control study based on a mammography screening programme, 265 women with breast cancer and 432 controls completed a self-administered food frequency questionnaire; intake of nutrients was derived by reference to Swedish food composition tables. Estimated β -carotene intake had a protective effect in a logistic regression model after adjustment for age, county of residence, month of mammography and total energy intake, the odds ratio for the highest quartile of consumption relative to the lowest being 0.6 (95% CI, 0.4–0.9; p for trend, 0.03) (Holmberg *et al.*, 1994). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a population-based case-control study of premenopausal, white women aged ≥ 40 in western New York State, USA, cases of breast cancer diagnosed during 1986–91 were identified from pathology records at hospitals in two counties; controls matched on age and county of residence were selected from motor vehicle registers. Personal interviews were conducted with 297 patients (66% of those eligible) and 311 controls (62%). Diet was assessed by asking about the usual intake of 172 food items two years previously, and the intake of individual carotenoids was estimated from the US Department of Agriculture database for vegetables, fruits and multi-ingredient foods (Chug-Ahuja *et al.*, 1993; Mangels *et al.*, 1993). The relative risks, adjusted for known risk factors for breast cancer, for the highest quartile of intake relative to the lowest were 0.67 (95% CI, 0.42–1.08) for α -carotene, 0.46 (95% CI, 0.28–0.74) for β -carotene and 0.47 (95% CI, 0.28–0.77) for lutein/zeaxanthin; statistically significant inverse trends (all p values for trend, < 0.002) were seen for all three carotenoids. Little evidence of an association was seen with β -cryptoxanthin or lycopene. Comparable reductions in risk and statistically significant trends were noted for total vegetable intake (similarly adjusted RR, 0.46; 95% CI, 0.28–0.74) (Freudenheim *et al.*, 1996). [The Working Group noted the relatively low rates in both cases and controls.]

In another report from the same study, the

role of family history was evaluated in relation to that of antioxidant intake. β -Carotene appeared to have no effect in women with a family history of breast cancer but had an inverse association in women with no such history (odds ratio for highest quartile compared with lowest, 0.5; 95% CI, 0.3–0.7; p for trend, < 0.01) (Ambrosone *et al.*, 1995). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

(vii) Prostatic cancer

The main case-control studies of prostatic cancer and carotene intake are summarized in Table 20. Inverse associations with estimated carotene intake were reported in a few studies, but these were generally not consistent. The role of lycopene was addressed in a few studies, with mixed results.

In a study of 100 men with prostatic cancer, 100 cases of benign prostatic hypertrophy and 100 hospital controls, a quantitative food frequency questionnaire was administered, and nutrient consumption was estimated by reference to Japanese food tables. An association with estimated β -carotene consumption was found in comparisons with both patients with benign prostatic hypertrophy and hospital controls, the odds ratios for the lowest quartile of consumption relative to the highest (corrected for kcal consumption) being 2.9 (95% CI, 1.3–6.4) and 3.5 (1.52–8.06), respectively. The associations were stronger in men aged 70–79 than in those aged 50–69 (Ohno *et al.*, 1988). Similar findings from this study were presented by Oishi *et al.* (1988). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a study of 358 cases of prostatic cancer and 679 controls selected by random digit dialling, the subjects were interviewed at home with a dietary history; nutrients were estimated by reference to a database derived from US Department of Agriculture sources. No associations were found with β -carotene intake when the data were stratified by age and aggressiveness of tumours (West *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

Table 19. Case-control studies of the association between breast cancer and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Subgroup	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Katsouyanni <i>et al.</i> (1988), Greece		120	120	Carotene	USDAM	Centiles	0.56	0.32–0.98	< 0.1
Marubini <i>et al.</i> (1988), Italy		214	215	β-Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	1.2	0.6–2.5	0.72
Rohan <i>et al.</i> (1988), Australia		451	451	β-Carotene	McWM	Quintiles	0.76	0.50–1.18	0.03
Iscoyich <i>et al.</i> (1989), Argentina		150	150 ^b	Carotene	USDAM	Dichotomy	0.90	0.80–1.00	
			150 ^c					0.92	0.84–1.02
Toniolo <i>et al.</i> (1989), Italy		250	499	β-Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	1.0		
Ewertz & Gill (1990), Denmark		1486	1336	β-Carotene	Danish	Quartiles	1.17	0.93–1.47	0.16
Howe <i>et al.</i> (1990), several countries		4427	4341	β-Carotene	USDAM & McWM	Quintile	0.85		0.007
van't Veer <i>et al.</i> (1990), Netherlands		133	238	β-Carotene	Dutch	Quartiles	0.63		0.23
Graham <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA		439	494	Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.56	0.38–0.82	0.08
Ingram <i>et al.</i> (1991), Australia		99	209	Carotene	McWM	Dichotomy	0.8	0.5–1.4	
Lee <i>et al.</i> (1991), Singapore		200	420	β-Carotene	FAOM	Tertiles	0.33	0.16–0.69	0.003
Richardson <i>et al.</i> (1991), France		409	515	β-carotene	McWM	Tertiles	1.0	0.7–1.5	
London <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA		313	349	Carotene	USDA	Quintile	0.6	0.3–1.1	0.17
Levi <i>et al.</i> (1993a), Switzerland		107	318	β-Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.4		< 0.01
Zaridze <i>et al.</i> (1991), Russia	After menopause	81	85	β-Carotene	USSR	Quartiles	0.09	0.02–0.49	< 0.001
Holmberg <i>et al.</i> (1994), Sweden		265	432	β-Carotene	McWM	Quartile	0.6	0.4–0.9	0.03

Table 19 (contd)

Reference, country	Subgroup (if any)	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Categories	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Ambrosone <i>et al.</i> (1995), USA	Family history	38	22	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	1.0	0.4–3.0	0.3
	Family history	263	294				0.5	0.3–0.7	< 0.01
Yuan <i>et al.</i> (1995), China		834	834	Carotene	Chinese	Unit (90%)	0.6	0.4–0.9	
Freudenheim <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA		297	311	α-Carotene	New	Quartiles	0.67	0.42–1.08	0.002
				β-Carotene			0.46	0.28–0.74	< 0.001
				β-Cryptoxanthin			1.05	0.65–1.67	0.89
				Lycopene			0.87	0.55–1.39	0.24
				Lutein + zeaxanthin			0.47	0.28–0.77	< 0.001
Negri <i>et al.</i> (1996), Italy		2569	2588	β-Carotene	Italian	Quintiles	0.84	0.7–1.0	< 0.05
Braga <i>et al.</i> (1997), Italy	Age: < 45	470	472	β-Carotene	Italian	Quartiles	0.72	0.6–0.9	< 0.01
	45–54	772	694				0.77	0.7–0.9	< 0.01
	55–64	799	802				0.82	0.7–1.0	
	> 65	528	620				0.85	0.7–1.0	

Chinese, derived from Chinese food composition tables; Danish, derived from Danish food composition tables; Dutch, derived from Dutch nutrient data bank; Italian, derived from Italian food composition tables; USSR, derived from USSR food composition tables; FAOM, WuLeung *et al.* (1972), modified by reference to British and local sources; McWM, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data; New, recently released US Department of Agriculture on carotenoids (Mangels *et al.*, 1993)

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

^b Neighbourhood controls

^c Hospital controls

Table 20. Case-control studies of the association between prostatic cancer and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Subgroup (if any)	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Ross <i>et al.</i> (1987), USA	Blacks	142	142	β-Carotene	SDA	Tertiles	0.6		
	Whites	142	142				1.0		
Kolonel <i>et al.</i> (1987, 1988), Hawaii	Age < 70	189	391	β-Carotene	FAO	Quartiles	1.0	0.6–1.6	0.55
				Other Carotenes			0.9	0.5–1.5	0.32
	Age > 70	263	508	β-Carotene	FAO	Quartiles	1.5	0.9–2.3	0.09
				Other Carotenes			1.6	1.0–2.5	0.08
Ohno <i>et al.</i> (1988), Japan		100	100 ^b	β-Carotene	FAO	Quartiles	[0.34	0.15–0.76]	0.002
Mettlin <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Age < 68	169	180	β-Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	0.30	0.13–0.66	
	Age > 68	202	191				0.96	0.50–1.85	
Le Marchand <i>et al.</i> (1991), Hawaii	Age < 70	189	391	Lycopene	FAO	Quartiles	0.9		0.35
				Lutein			0.7		0.21
	Age > 70	263	508	Lycopene	FAO	Quartiles	1.1		0.57
				Lutein			1.3		0.39
West <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Age 45–67	179	385	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.8	0.5–1.2	
	Age 68–74	179	29				1.4	0.9–2.4	
Rohan <i>et al.</i> (1995), Canada		207	207	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.94	0.53–1.65	0.5
				Other Carotenes			0.68	0.38–1.20	0.2
Key <i>et al.</i> (1997), United Kingdom		328	328	Carotene	McWN	Tertiles	0.83	0.57–1.21	0.35
				Lycopene			0.99	0.68–1.45	0.88

FAO, WuLeung *et al.* (1972); McWN, 1991 edition of McCance and Widdowson tables (Holland *et al.*, 1991a); USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

^b Benign prostatic hypertrophy controls

^c Hospital controls

The results of dietary analyses in a population-based case-control study of prostatic cancer in Hawaii, USA, have been published in three articles (Kolonel *et al.*, 1987, 1988; Le Marchand *et al.*, 1991). The cases were identified through the Hawaii Tumor Registry during the period 1977–83. Among men < 70 years of age, no clear relationship between risk for prostatic cancer and intake of β -carotene or of other carotenoids was observed, but among the men aged > 70 years, the risk tended to increase with increasing intake of both β -carotene and other carotenoids. Further analysis by Le Marchand *et al.* (1991) indicated that consumption of papaya, which contributed 16% of the β -carotene intake in this population, accounted entirely for this finding. [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene might have included other carotenoids.]

In a population-based case-control study in England, men aged < 75 with prostatic cancer and age-matched controls were interviewed, for a total of 328 cases (77% of those eligible) and 328 controls (81% were the first potential control identified). The usual intake of 83 food items during the previous five years was assessed from an adapted food frequency questionnaire (Bingham *et al.*, 1994). Intake of provitamin A carotenoids (referred to as 'carotene') and of lycopene was also estimated (Holland *et al.*, 1991a,b). In matched analyses, the risk for prostatic cancer was lower in men with higher provitamin A carotenoid intake, the odds ratios, adjusted for social class, being 0.69 (95% CI, 0.47–1.1) and 0.83 (95% CI, 0.57–1.2) for the middle and upper thirds of intake, respectively (p for trend, 0.35). Lycopene intake did not appear to be associated with an increased risk (Key *et al.*, 1997). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used may have included other provitamin A carotenoids and that the estimate of lycopene was crude.]

(viii) *Cancers of the urinary tract*

The main case-control studies of cancers of the urinary bladder and kidney and carotene intake are summarized in Table 21.

In a large population-based case-control study in Canada, the role of β -carotene and other provitamin A carotenoids was evaluated for all men and women, 35–79 years of age, living in Alberta, south-central Ontario or Toronto in whom urinary bladder cancer had been diagnosed during 1979–82. Controls were matched to cases on age, sex and area of residence. Interviews conducted at home were used to assess diet (Howe *et al.*, 1986). The intake of neither β -carotene nor other carotenoids was associated with risk (Risch *et al.*, 1988). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene might have included other carotenoids.]

In a study of 432 men with urinary bladder cancer and 792 population and hospital controls, the questionnaire used in the study of Estève *et al.* (1996) was administered, and nutrient intake was estimated from a database derived for this study, modified by data from Spanish sources. There was no association with estimated intake of carotene (Riboli *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene might have included other carotenoids.]

(ix) *Cancers of the female genital tract*

The major case-control studies of invasive cervical cancer, endometrial cancer and ovarian and vulvar cancers and carotene intake are summarized in Table 22. Several showed inverse associations. In only a few, however, was it possible to analyse the effect of other dietary factors or, in the studies of cervical cancer, the major potential confounder, human papillomavirus infection.

In a large case-control study of invasive cervical cancer among mestizos (65%), whites (30%) and other races in four Latin American countries, 748 female patients (99% of those eligible) and 1411 hospital and community controls (96%) were interviewed about their frequency of consumption as adults of 58 food items, excluding any recent dietary changes. The hospital controls were randomly selected from lists of admissions to general hospitals serving the populations from which cases were derived; the community controls were randomly selected from current census listings for the county of residence of the corresponding case.

The intakes of β -carotene and other carotenoids were estimated on the basis of typical portion sizes and Latin American food composition tables (Flores *et al.*, 1969). Risk was increased among women in the highest quartile of intake of β -carotene and other carotenoids relative to women in the lowest. The relative risks, adjusted for age, study site, presence of human papillomavirus 16/18, sexual and reproductive behaviour, screening practices and socioeconomic status, were 0.68 (95% CI, 0.5–1.0) for β -carotene and 0.61 (95% CI, 0.4–0.9) for other carotenoids, with significant *p* values for trend of 0.02 and 0.003 (Herrero *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

In a study in which the serum concentrations of various carotenoids were also measured, 102 women with cervical intraepithelial neoplasia and controls with normal Papanicolaou smears completed a food frequency questionnaire. Their intake of various carotenoids was estimated from a programme of the US National Cancer Institute (Block *et al.*, 1994). The risk increased with decreasing consumption of nearly all of the carotenoids examined, but the adjusted odds ratio showed a significant trend (*p* = 0.02) only for lycopene consumption, with an odds ratio for the lowest to the highest quartile of consumption of 5.4 (95% CI, 1.3–23.3) (van Eewyk *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that the measure of β -carotene used might have included other carotenoids.]

The diets of 201 women with vulvar cancer diagnosed between 1985 and 1987 and 342 community controls frequency-matched on age, race and residence were assessed by interview about the usual frequency of intake of 61 food items, selected to include the major food sources of carotenoids in the diets of whites, blacks and Hispanics in the USA, on the basis of preliminary determinations of the major carotenoids in common fruits and vegetables from the US Department of Agriculture and published reports (Smucker *et al.*, 1989). The risk for vulvar cancer, adjusted for number of sexual partners, cigarette smoking and age, was inversely related to α -carotene intake, the relative risk for women in the lowest quartile of

intake relative to the highest being 1.7 (95% CI, 1.0–3.0; *p* for trend, 0.09). The intakes of β -carotene, lutein, lycopene, cryptoxanthin and all carotenoids were not related to risk. Further adjustment for duration and intensity of cigarette smoking, a history of genital infections, a previous abnormal Papanicolaou smear, socioeconomic status, race and study area did not change these results substantially (Sturgeon *et al.*, 1991).

(x) *Cancers at other sites*

The main case-control studies of carotene intake and cancers at other sites, including the liver and lymphoma and malignant melanoma, are summarized in Table 23.

The relationship between dietary intake of β -carotene and other carotenoids and the risk for malignant melanoma was examined in a population-based case-control study in three counties in western Washington State, USA. The study comprised 234 cases diagnosed during 1984–87 among white men and women aged 25–65 years and 248 controls, frequency-matched on age, sex and county. The subjects completed a mailed food frequency questionnaire covering the intake of 71 foods or food groups seven years earlier (Roidt *et al.*, 1988). Portion sizes of vegetables were estimated from pictures, and the intakes of β -carotene and other carotenoids were estimated on the basis of the assumptions of a WHO Expert Committee about (WHO, 1966) the distribution of vitamin A activity in various foods. The risk for malignant melanoma among men and women in the three highest quartiles of β -carotene intake, relative to those in the lowest quartile, was increased by 40–50%; however, neither the risk for the fourth quartile nor the test for trend was statistically significant. The positive relationship was strongest for men. Intake of other provitamin carotenoids was not associated with risk (Kirkpatrick *et al.*, 1994).

4.1.1.3 *Intervention trials*

Only β -carotene has been tested for cancer-preventive activity in intervention trials. The results of five studies involving β -carotene supplementation alone or in association with other agents have been published: the two

Table 21. Case-control studies of the association between urinary tract cancer and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Risch <i>et al.</i> (1988), Canada	Bladder	826	792	β-Carotene	USDAM	Quartiles	0.97	0.85–1.11	
				Other carotenoids			0.97		
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1989), Italy	Bladder	163	181	Carotenoids	USDAM	Tertiles	0.31		< 0.10
Steineck <i>et al.</i> (1990), Sweden	Urothelial tract	323	392	Carotene	Swedish	Tertiles	0.9	0.6–1.5	
Nomura <i>et al.</i> (1991), Hawaii	Lower urinary tract			Carotenoids	FAO	Quartiles			
	Men	195	390				0.7	0.4–1.2	0.45
	Women	66	132				0.5	0.2–1.3	0.31
Riboli <i>et al.</i> (1991), Spain	Bladder	432	792	Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	1.31	0.89–1.94	0.18
Vena <i>et al.</i> (1992), USA	Bladder (males)			Carotene	USDA	Quartiles			
	Age < 65	171	449				0.45	0.26–0.78	< 0.01
	Age > 65	180	406				0.72	0.41–1.27	0.14
Bruemmer <i>et al.</i> (1996), USA	Bladder	262	405	β-Carotene	FAO	Quartiles	1.08	0.64–1.82	0.86
McLaughlin <i>et al.</i> (1984), USA	Kidney			Carotene	NR	Quartiles			
	Males	313	428				0.8		
	Females	182	269				1.3		
Maclure & Willett (1990), USA	Kidney	605		β-Carotene	USDA	Quintiles			
	Incident	203					0.81	0.48–1.4	0.39
	Prevalent	207					1.08	0.65–1.8	0.94

Swedish, derived from Swedish food composition tables; FAO, WuLeung *et al.* (1972); McWM, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data; NR, not reported

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

Table 22. Case-control studies of the association between cancers of the female genital tract and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
Marshall <i>et al.</i> (1983), USA	Cervix	513	490	β-Carotene	USDA	1 standard deviation	0.86		
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1988b), Italy	Cervix	392	392	β-Carotene	Italian	Tertiles	[0.18	0.12–0.27]	< 0.001
Verreault <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Cervix	189	227	Carotene	McWM	Quartiles	0.6	0.3–1.2	0.11
Slattery <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Cervix	266	408	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.99	0.56–1.76	
Ziegler <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Cervix	218	498	Carotenoids	USDA	Quartiles	[0.98]		0.72
Herrero <i>et al.</i> (1991), Latin America	Cervix	748	1411	β-Carotene Other carotenoids	McWM	Quartiles	0.68	0.5–1.0	0.02
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1986), Italy	Endometrium	206	206	Carotene	USDAM	Tertiles	0.61	0.4–0.9	0.003
Barbone <i>et al.</i> (1993), USA	Endometrium	103	236	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	0.27	0.12–0.60	0.001
Levi <i>et al.</i> (1993b), Switzerland & Italy	Endometrium	274	572	β-Carotene	McWM	Tertiles	0.4	0.2–0.8	0.007
Shu <i>et al.</i> (1993), China	Endometrium	268	268	Carotene	Chinese	Quartiles	0.49		< 0.01
Byers <i>et al.</i> (1983), USA	Ovary	274	1034	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	1.3		0.72
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1987b), Italy	Ovary	455	1385	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	[0.77]		
Shu <i>et al.</i> (1989), China	Ovary	172	172	Carotene	Chinese	Quartiles	0.94	0.55–1.61	0.17
Slattery <i>et al.</i> (1989), USA	Ovary	85	492	Carotene	USDA	Tertiles	1.1		0.97
Engle <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Ovary	71	141	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartiles	0.5	0.3–1.0	
Risch <i>et al.</i> (1994), Canada	Ovary	450	564	β-Carotene Other carotenes	USDAM	4000 IU 1000 IU	0.3	0.1–0.8	< 0.07
Sturgeon <i>et al.</i> (1991), USA	Vulva	201	342	α-Carotene	Prelim	Quartiles	0.87	0.77–0.99	0.017
				β-Carotene			0.90	0.85–0.96	0.001
				Lutein			[0.57	0.3–1.0]	0.09
				Lycopene			[0.79	0.5–1.4]	0.23
				Cryptoxanthin			[1.02	0.6–1.7]	0.81
							[1.27	0.8–2.0]	0.76
							[1.03	0.6–1.7]	0.36

Chinese, derived from Chinese food composition tables; Italian, derived from Italian food composition tables; McWM, McCance and Widdowson (Paul & Southgate, 1976) tables modified by reference to country data; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976–94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data; Prelim, preliminary new USDA data on carotenoids (Smucker *et al.*, 1989)

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

Table 23. Case-control studies of the association between cancers at other sites and dietary carotenoids

Reference, country	Site of cancer	No. of cases	No. of controls	Exposure		Category	OR ^a	95% CI	p for trend
				Carotenoid	Database				
La Vecchia <i>et al.</i> (1988c), Italy	Liver	151	1051	Carotenoids	USDAM	Tertiles	0.5		
Pan <i>et al.</i> (1993), Taiwan	Liver	59	101	β-Carotene	Taiwan	Quartiles	0.6	[0.2-1.4]	
Stryker <i>et al.</i> (1990), USA	Melanoma	204	248	Carotene	USDA	Quintiles	0.7	0.4-1.2	0.2
Kirkpatrick <i>et al.</i> (1994), USA	Melanoma	234	248	β-Carotene	USDA	Quartile	1.43	0.80-2.54	0.32
				Other carotenes			1.25	0.72-2.16	0.54
Tavani <i>et al.</i> (1997), Italy			1157	β-Carotene	Italian	Tertiles			
	Hodgkin's disease	158					0.7		
	Non-Hodgkins lymphoma	429					0.6	< 0.01	
	Multiple myeloma	141					0.6	< 0.05	
	Soft-tissue sarcoma	101		0.5	< 0.05				

Italian, derived from Italian food composition tables; Taiwan, derived from Taiwanese food composition tables; USDA, derived from US Department of Agriculture (1976-94); USDAM, derived from US Department of Agriculture data modified by reference to country data

^a Odds ratio for highest relative to lowest consumption

Linxian trials (Linxian1, Linxian2), the ATBC cancer prevention study, the CARET, the Physicians' Health Study (PHS) and the Skin Cancer Prevention Study (SCPS). The designs and results of the five trials are summarized here. The treatment strategies, dimensions and end-points of the first four studies are somewhat similar and are compared in the tables; the last study is considered separately.

(a) *Populations (Table 24)*

Linxian trials: The first study (Linxian1) involved 29 584 male and female residents of the Chinese county of Linxian aged 40–69, out of 50 000 potentially eligible participants. Subjects with debilitating diseases and prior oesophageal or gastric cancer were excluded (Blot *et al.*, 1993). The second (Linxian2) involved 3318 subjects from the same population who were found by mass balloon cytology to have oesophageal dysplasia before the start of the trial (Blot *et al.*, 1995). About one-half of the participants in each trial were men, most aged less than 60. Very high mortality rates from oesophageal (oesophagus and cardia) and gastric cancer had previously been reported in the area (Blot *et al.*, 1993); however, the rate for lung cancer in the untreated subjects was extremely low (Blot *et al.*, 1994; 2.7 per 10 000 person-years [calculated by the Working Group]). Most of the subjects were nonsmokers (70%) and nondrinkers (77%). The baseline plasma concentrations of retinol, riboflavin, ascorbic acid and β -carotene, assessed in a limited number of subjects at recruitment, were lower than those reported in western populations, as in previous surveys (Blot *et al.*, 1993).

ATBC trial: The ATBC cancer prevention study involved 29 133 residents of southwestern Finland, all men aged 50–69, all currently smoking five or more cigarettes per day, out of 54 171 potentially eligible participants. Subjects taking more than a predefined dose of supplements of vitamins E or A or β -carotene, those with a history of cancer (other than non-melanoma skin cancer) or serious debilitating disease and those treated with anticoagulants were excluded. The median age was 57 years, the median number of cigarettes smoked was 20 per day, and the median duration of smoking

was 36 years. In untreated subjects, the incidence of lung cancer was 47 per 10 000 person-years. Eighty-nine percent of the subjects drank alcoholic drinks, mostly beer and spirits, with a median ethanol intake of about 11 g/d. The baseline plasma concentrations of retinol, α -tocopherol, β -carotene, vitamin C and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol were determined for most participants and were consistent with those reported for other western populations (e.g. median serum β -carotene, 0.32 μ mol/L). Advice on how to stop smoking was provided to all participants at entry, and 22% of men in each group stopped smoking during the follow-up (Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study Group, 1994a,b).

CARET: The Beta-Carotene and Retinol Efficacy Trial involved 14 254 current or former smokers and 4060 asbestos-exposed workers resident in six United States areas, aged 50–69, recruited by sending more than 1 400 000 letters to determine eligibility and asking for informed consent. Of these persons, 1153 had already participated in previous pilot studies, during which treatment was initiated (Goodman *et al.*, 1993; Omenn *et al.*, 1993b). The mean age was 57 years for asbestos-exposed workers and 58 years for the smokers. None of the asbestos-exposed workers were women, while they represented about one-half of the smokers. The incidence rate of lung cancer in the untreated group was 46 per 10 000 person-years. Subjects who had had cancer during the previous five years (other than non-melanoma skin cancer), aspartate aminotransferase and alkaline phosphatase activity greater than the 99% upper limits, a history of cirrhosis or hepatitis within the past 12 months, were unwilling to limit supplementation of vitamin A or β -carotene or had a Karnowski index of less than 70 and women who had undergone menopause less than one year previously were excluded. Only 3% of asbestos-exposed workers were nonsmokers, while 58% were former smokers. Of the smokers, about two-thirds were current smokers, of a mean of 24 cigarettes per day. The ex-smokers had stopped smoking on average three years before recruitment and, before quitting, had smoked a mean of 28 cigarettes per day. Of the asbestos-exposed workers

Table 24. Populations involved in four intervention trials: demographic characteristics, smoking and alcohol consumption baseline incidence or mortality for lung cancer, baseline levels of micronutrients

Variable	Linxian1	ATBC	CARET		PHS
			Asbestos-exposed	Smokers	
Number	29 584	29 133	4060	14 254	22 071
Men	13 313 (45%)	29 133	4060	7982 (56%)	22 071
Women	16 271 (55%)	–	–	6272 (44%)	–
Age	40–69	50–69	50–69	50–69	40–84
Smoking					
No	70%	–	3%	–	50%
Ex			58%	34%	39%
Current	30%	100%	39%	66%	11%
Cig./day	≥ 6/month	20 (median)	~25 (mean)	~25 (mean)	
Lung cancer incidence (per 10 000 person-years)	[2.1] (mortality)	48	43	47	6
Alcohol					
No	77%	11%	34%	33–38%	
Yes	23%	89%	66%	62–67%	
g/day (median)		11	12	9–12	
Serum micronutrients					
β-Carotene (μmol/L)	[0.11, 0.13] ^a	[0.39 ^b 0.32] ^c	[0.21] ^b	[0.28] ^b	0.56 ^b
α-Tocopherol (μmol/L)		[26.2 ^b 26.7]	[31.1] ^b	[31.8] ^b	
Retinol (mg/dL)	35.7, 35.5 ^a	58.7 ^b	[62.7] ^b	[62.5] ^b	
Stopped smoking during the trial		22%	5% / year	5% year	

ATBC, Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study; CARET, β-Carotene and Retinol Efficiency Trial; PHS, Physicians' Health Study

^a Mean, baseline in treatment and placebo group

^b Mean, overall at baseline

^c Median

in the pilot study, the ex-smokers had stopped smoking an average of 19 years before recruitment; they had been exposed to asbestos for a mean of 35 years and had spent an average of 25 years in high-risk trades such as insulating, shipyard work, plasterboard use, plumbing, shipscaling, shipfitting and sheetmetal work (Omenn *et al.*, 1993a). Sixty-six percent of the asbestos-exposed workers, 67% of the male smokers and 62% of the female smokers drank alcoholic beverages, the median alcohol intakes being, respectively, 12, 12 and 9 g/d. The baseline plasma concentrations of retinol, α-tocopherol, β-carotene and retinyl palmitate were

determined in a subset of 1182 participants and were consistent with those reported for other western populations (e.g. mean serum β-carotene, 0.27 μmol/L). Advice on stopping smoking was provided to the whole study group, resulting in a 5% quitting smoking per year, equally distributed among the study groups (Grizzle *et al.*, 1991; Omenn *et al.*, 1991; Goodman *et al.*, 1992; Omenn *et al.*, 1994, 1996a).

PHS: The Physicians' Health Study involved 22 071 US male physicians aged 40–84, out of 261 248 potentially eligible participants and 33 211 participating in a six-month running-in phase. People with a history of cancer (excluding

non-melanoma skin cancer), myocardial infarct, stroke or transient cerebral ischaemia, current hepatic or renal disease, peptic ulcer, gout, other contraindications to aspirin consumption, current use of aspirin or platelet-active drugs or nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents and current use of vitamin A supplement were excluded. At baseline, 11% were current smokers and 39% former smokers. The incidence of lung cancer in untreated subjects was very low: 6 per 10 000 person-years. The baseline plasma concentrations of β -carotene were quite high—0.56 $\mu\text{mol/L}$ on average—almost twice as high as those in the ATBC and CARET studies (Hennekens & Eberlein, 1985; Hennekens *et al.*, 1996).

(b) *Study designs (Table 25)*

Linxian: In the Linxian1 trial, a fractional factorial design was used, with treatments of: (a) retinol palmitate plus zinc oxide, (b) riboflavin plus niacin, (c) ascorbic acid plus molybdenum–yeast complex or (d) β -carotene (15 mg/d) plus selenium–yeast plus α -tocopherol. Seven treatment groups, ab, ac, ad, bc, bd, cd and abcd, and one placebo group resulted from the design. Each factor was thus administered to one-half of the population (Li, B. *et al.*, 1993). In the Linxian2 study, one group was assigned to receive a multiple vitamin supplement and the other the placebo. The daily supplementation included one multivitamin, multimineral tablet and one β -carotene capsule (15 mg/d) (Li, J.-Y. *et al.*, 1993). Treatment was for about five years in both trials. The predefined end-points were the incidence of and mortality from oesophageal and gastric cancer.

ATBC: The study had a 2 x 2 factorial design, with three treatment groups and one placebo: DL- α -tocopheryl acetate, 50 mg/d; β -carotene, 20 mg/d; β -carotene plus α -tocopherol and placebo. Treatment lasted five to eight years (median, six years). The predefined primary end-point was the incidence of and mortality from lung cancer, and the secondary end-points were the incidences of other major cancers (Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study Group 1994a,b; Albanes *et al.*, 1996).

CARET: This randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled investigation followed two pilot studies, one on asbestos-exposed workers, the other on smokers, based on treatment with 15 mg/d β -carotene plus 25 000 IU retinol or placebo and a factorial design: 30 mg β -carotene, 25 000 IU retinol, both or placebo. Treatment in the pilot studies lasted 1.5–3.3 years. The eligible subjects in these two studies were then recruited into the full-scale study, in which the intervention was daily administration of a combination of 30 mg β -carotene and 25 000 IU vitamin A as retinyl palmitate, planned for a period of six years but interrupted 21 months earlier (mean, four years). The predefined primary end-point was the incidence of lung cancer; the secondary end-points were the incidences of other cancers, including mesothelioma and prostatic cancer (Omenn *et al.*, 1991, 1994, 1996b).

PHS: This study was a 2 x 2 factorial trial of β -carotene, aspirin and placebo. The 22 071 subjects were randomly assigned to aspirin, 325 mg on alternate days; β -carotene, 50 mg on alternate days; β -carotene plus aspirin or placebo. The first component was terminated after six years because of early signs of prevention of myocardial infarct (Steering Committee of the Physicians' Health Study Research Group, 1988). The β -carotene component was continued, reaching an average of 12 years of intervention. The predefined end-points were cardiovascular disease for aspirin and cancer incidence for β -carotene (Hennekens & Eberlein, 1985; Hennekens *et al.*, 1996). All contacts with the participants were based on postal questionnaires.

(c) *Compliance, dropouts and plasma concentrations of micronutrients (Table 26)*

Linxian: Compliance was assessed by monthly counts of pills and by biochemical measurements, the latter on a random subsample, at baseline and every three months (Blot *et al.*, 1993, 1995). In Linxian1, the overall rate of pill disappearance was 93% (range, 92–93% among study groups). Only 5% of the subjects were poor compliers (< 50% pill disappearance), equally distributed among the subgroups. At baseline, the plasma concentrations of micronu-

Table 25. Study design, treatment (type, dose and duration) and predefined end-points in four intervention trials

	Linxian1	Linxian2	ATBC	CARET	PHS
Study design	Fractional factorial: combination of 4 types of supplements for 7 treatment and 1 placebo groups	Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled: 1 treatment and 1 placebo group	2 × 2 factorial: 3 treatment and 1 placebo groups	Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled: 1 treatment and 1 placebo groups	2 × 2 factorial: 3 treatment and 1 placebo groups
Treatment and dose	Daily: – retinol palmitate 5000 IU + zinc oxide 22.5 mg – riboflavin 3.2 mg + niacin 40 mg – ascorbic acid 120 mg + molybdenum 30 µg – β-carotene 15 mg + selenium 50 µg + α-tocopherol 30 mg	Daily: β-carotene 15 mg, vitamin A acetate 10 000 IU, α-tocopherol 60 IU, ascorbic acid 180 mg, folic acid 800 µg, vitamin B complex, micro-elements, including selenium 50 µg and zinc 45 mg	Daily: α-tocopherol 50 mg or β-carotene 20 mg or α-tocopherol + β-carotene	Daily: retinol 25 000 IU + β-carotene 30 mg	On alternate days: aspirin 325 mg or β-carotene 50 mg or aspirin + β-carotene
Duration	5 years	5 years	6 years (median)	4 years (mean)	11–12 years (for β-carotene)
Predefined end-points	Oesophageal and stomach cancer, incidence and mortality	Oesophageal and stomach cancer, incidence and mortality	Lung cancer and other major cancers, incidence	Lung and other cancers, incidence	Cardiovascular disease and lung cancer, incidence

ATBC, Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene cancer prevention study; CARET, β-Carotene and Retinol Efficiency Trial; PHS, Physicians' Health Study

trients were similar in all subgroups, but during treatment the concentrations of retinol, ascorbic acid and β -carotene increased in both the placebo and treatment groups, significantly more in subjects treated with the particular supplement. The plasma β -carotene concentration in the treated group (1.7 $\mu\text{mol/L}$) was 14.5-fold higher than at entry (Blot *et al.*, 1993).

ATBC: Compliance was assessed by counting capsules at a follow-up visit every four months and by plasma measurements at baseline, in random samples during the study and systematically after three years of treatment. The average overall rate of pill disappearance during the study was 93% (range, 93.1–93.4% among study groups). Dropouts, including deaths, accounted for 31.1% of the whole study group. The median plasma concentrations of micronutrients were similar at baseline in the treatment and placebo groups, but after three years of supplementation, the ratio to baseline concentration was 17.6 (up to 5.6 $\mu\text{mol/L}$) for β -carotene (Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Cancer Prevention Study Group, 1994b). Supplementation with β -carotene did not affect the serum retinol concentrations.

CARET: Compliance was assessed in 85% of subjects by weighing the returned bottles to estimate the number of remaining capsules; in 15% of cases, assessment was based on the subjects' own estimates. Blood was collected annually from participants in the pilot study and every two years from the others (Omenn *et al.*, 1996b,c). The percent of dropouts at 36 months after randomization was 14–20% across study groups. During supplementation, the median serum concentration of β -carotene increased by 12.4-fold to 3.8 $\mu\text{mol/L}$. The retinol concentration in the treated group exceeded that in the placebo group by 10% ($p > 0.01$) (Omenn *et al.*, 1996c).

PHS: Compliance was assessed on the basis of the subjects' own reports on capsule disappearance. At the end of the 12-year follow-up, 80% of participants reported that they were still taking the pills. The blood concentrations of β -carotene were measured in a subsample of participants resident in three areas, who were visited without announcement at their offices. The average plasma concentration of people receiving β -

carotene was four times higher (2.2 $\mu\text{mol/L}$) than that of people not given the supplement (Hennekens *et al.*, 1996).

(d) *Results (Table 26)*

Linxian: In the Linxian1 study, a protective effect of supplemental β -carotene, vitamin E and selenium of borderline significance was reported with regard to the incidence and mortality rates of gastric cancer (based on 539 cases and 331 deaths) when compared with untreated subjects; the relative risk for death from gastric cancer was 0.79 (95% CI, 0.64–0.99) and that for incidence was 0.84 (95% CI, 0.71–1.0). The mortality ($n = 360$) and incidence ($n = 640$) of oesophageal cancer were not affected by supplementation (mortality: RR, 0.96; 95% CI, 0.78–1.2; incidence: RR, 1.0; 95% CI, 0.87–1.2). The difference in cumulative cancer deaths began after one year of treatment for oesophageal cancer and after two years for gastric cancer. The protective effect was slightly greater in women (RR, 0.79; $p < 0.05$ versus 0.93 in men) (Blot *et al.*, 1993, 1995). The mortality rate from lung cancer was lower in the β -carotene-supplemented group but not significantly so (RR, 0.55; 95% CI, 0.26–1.1, based on 31 deaths) (Blot *et al.*, 1994).

In the Linxian2 trial, the relative risk for cancer mortality was 0.97 in men and 0.92 in women (not significant). The risk differed slightly by age in both trials, being lower in people under 55 (not significant) (Li, J.-Y. *et al.*, 1993; Blot *et al.*, 1995).

ATBC: At the end of follow-up, 894 newly diagnosed, confirmed cases of lung cancer and 553 deaths from lung cancer were reported to the Finnish Cancer Registry or on death certificates. The numbers of lung cancer cases by intervention group were: α -tocopherol, 204; β -carotene, 242; α -tocopherol plus β -carotene, 240; placebo, 208. The relative risk for lung cancer was 0.99 (95% CI, 0.87–1.1) among people receiving α -tocopherol and 1.2 (95% CI, 1.0–1.3) for those receiving β -carotene, as compared with those who did not receive the particular supplement. The cumulative incidence of cancer was similar in groups receiving and not receiving α -tocopherol, while a difference was seen in the β -carotene-treated subjects after

Table 26. Compliance (mean pill consumption), dropout rates, changes in serum β -carotene levels and effect of β -carotene supplementation on lung cancer incidence or mortality (relative risk and 95% CI) in cancer prevention trials

	Linxian 1	ATBC	CARET	PHS
Compliance	93%	93%	93%	78%
Dropout rate		31.1% (including deaths)	15% (asbestos-exp.) 20% (smokers)	20%
Change in serum β -carotene level ($\mu\text{mol/L}$)	1.5 (14.5x)	5.3 (17.6x)	3.6 (12.4x)	1.7 (4x)
Lung cancer				
Mortality	0.55 (0.26–1.14)			
Incidence				
Overall		1.16 (1.02–1.33)	1.36 (1.07–1.73)	
By smoking				
Nonsmokers		NA	NA	0.78 (0.34–1.79)
Former smokers		NA	asbestos-exposed: 2.34 (1.17–4.68) non-asbestos-exposed: 0.80 (0.44–1.45)	
Current overall		1.16 (1.02–1.33)	1.40 (1.10–1.80)	0.90 (0.58–1.40)
< 20 cig/d		0.97 (0.76–1.23)		
20–29 cig/d		1.25 (1.04–1.51)		
> 29 cig/d		1.28 (0.97–1.70)		
By alcohol consumption				
Non-drinkers		1.05 (0.82–1.35)	1.07 (0.76–1.51)	
Drinkers ^a		1.41 (1.07–1.87)	1.90 (1.11–3.24)	

ATBC, Alpha-Tocopherol, Beta-Carotene cancer prevention study; CARET, β -Carotene and Retinol Efficiency Trial; PHS, Physicians' Health Study; NA, not applicable

^a 25.6 g/d in ATBC and > 30 g/d in CARET, as ethanol

three years of follow-up. After 7.5 years, the group receiving β -carotene had a 16% higher cumulative incidence of lung cancer than those not given β -carotene (95% CI, 2–33%). The duration of intervention was not, however, relevant when categories < 1, 1–3 and > 3 years of follow-up were considered. A similar pattern was seen for mortality from lung cancer, although the difference between the treated and untreated groups was not significant (Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Prevention Study Group, 1994b; Albanes *et al.*, 1996).

The results of a further analysis (Albanes *et al.*, 1996) suggested that the excess risk associ-

ated with β -carotene supplementation was concentrated mainly among people who currently smoked more than 20 cigarettes per day (RR = 0.97 for 5–19 cigarettes per day (95% CI, 0.76–1.2); 1.2 for 20–29 cigarettes per day (95% CI, 1.0–1.5) and 1.3 for > 30 cigarettes per day (95% CI, 0.97–1.7; *p* for trend = 0.15)) and who drank more than 11 g/d of ethanol (RR = 1.05 for an ethanol intake < 2.6 g/d ('non-drinkers'; 95% CI, 0.82–1.4) 1.0 for 2.60–10.9 g/d (95% CI, 0.79–1.4), 1.3 for 11.0–25.6 g/d (95% CI, 0.95–1.7) and 1.4 for > 25.6 g/d (95% CI, 1.1–1.9; *p* for trend = 0.08)). The serum

concentration of β -carotene at baseline did not influence the effect of supplementation, while a high dietary intake of vitamin E (but not its baseline serum concentrations) tended to be inversely associated with the risk associated with β -carotene (p for trend = 0.03). The incidence of lung cancer in treated and untreated groups was, however, lower in people with higher baseline β -carotene plasma concentrations, as in the observational studies (Alpha-Tocopherol Beta-Carotene Prevention Study Group, 1994b; Albanes *et al.*, 1996). The incidences (per 10 000 person-years) of cancers of the prostate (16.3 versus 13.2) and stomach (8.3 versus 6.6) were higher among people receiving β -carotene supplementation than among those who did not. Supplementation had no effect on the incidences of cancers of the urinary bladder (9.3 versus 9.0) or colorectum (9.0 versus 8.6).

CARET: By the end of the follow-up, 388 participants had developed lung cancer, of whom 254 had died. The relative risk for lung cancer incidence was 1.3 (95% CI, 1.0–1.6; p = 0.02) in the treated group, 1.4 (95% CI, 0.95–2.1) in the asbestos-exposed group, 1.4 (95% CI, 1.1–1.9) among current smokers with no exposure to asbestos and 0.80 (95% CI, 0.48–1.3) among ex-smokers with no exposure to asbestos. The heterogeneity of the relative risks was not statistically significant. The cumulative incidences in the treated and placebo groups were virtually identical for the first 18 months and then tended to diverge. Mortality rates from lung cancer followed similar patterns, the relative risk for the whole cohort being 1.5 (95% CI, 1.1–2.0) (Omenn *et al.*, 1996b,c).

A subsequent analysis (Omenn *et al.*, 1996c), based on a stratified, weighted log-rank statistic, with the weight function raising linearly from 0 at time of randomization to 1 at two years and thereafter, and on unweighted and weighted Cox regression models for relative risk estimates, gave the following main results: weighted analysis, relative risks for lung cancer incidence and 95% CI—all participants, 1.4 (1.1–1.7); asbestos-exposed, 1.8 (1.2–2.8); current smokers at baseline, 1.4 (1.0–1.9); former smokers at baseline (not exposed to

asbestos), 0.80 (0.44–1.4); former smokers exposed to asbestos, 2.3 (1.2–4.7); non-drinkers at baseline, 1.2 (0.80–1.8) and drinkers of > 30 g/d of ethanol, 2.0 (1.1–3.8). The excess in lung cancer risk was thus confirmed and was shown to be concentrated in people exposed to asbestos, in current smokers and in drinkers. Ex-smokers not exposed to asbestos showed no excess risk (RR, 0.80; CI, 0.44–1.4). The increase in risk tended to be constant with years of follow-up. In all groups, a baseline β -carotene plasma concentration above the median was associated with a protective effect against lung cancer (Goodman *et al.*, 1996).

The risk tended to be concentrated among cases of large-cell carcinoma (weighted analysis not adjusted for multiple comparisons, RR = 2.2; 95% CI, 1.1–4.3, based on 63 cases). No significant difference among groups was reported for cancers at other sites. A total of 23 mesotheliomas were found, with 14 in the treated group and nine in those given the placebo (Omenn *et al.*, 1996c). [The Working Group noted that treatment was stopped early on the basis of an interim analysis, and the risk may therefore be overestimated.]

PHS: After an average of 12 years of follow-up, there were 2562 malignant neoplasias, of which 1272 (49.6%) were in the group receiving β -carotene. A total of 169 lung cancers developed in this low-risk population, of which 82 (49%) were in the treated group. The relative risks and 95% confidence intervals associated with β -carotene supplementation were: non-smokers, 0.78 (0.34–1.8); former smokers, 1.0 (0.62–1.6) and current smokers, 0.90 (0.58–1.4). The relative risk for all cancers was 0.98 (0.91–1.1). No significant modification in risk was found by year of follow-up (categories 1–4, 1–2, 3–4, 5–9) (Fontham *et al.*, 1995; Hennekens *et al.*, 1996).

(e) *The Skin Cancer Prevention Study*

The Skin Cancer Prevention Study involved 1188 men and 532 women with a mean age of 63.2 years from among 5232 potentially eligible subjects in four US medical centres. One aim of the study was to test the effect of oral treatment with β -carotene at 50 mg/d in the secondary prevention of non-melanoma skin

cancer in people from whom a skin cancer had recently been removed. A second aim was to test the effectiveness of β -carotene in reducing the average number of new skin cancers per person-year of observation. The trial was double-blinded, placebo-controlled and randomized. About 45% of subjects had had one previous skin cancer, 20% had had two and about 34% had had three or more. About 20% were current smokers, 36% were nonsmokers and about 45% were ex-smokers. At baseline, the median β -carotene plasma concentration was 0.33 $\mu\text{mol/L}$ in the group receiving treatment and 0.34 $\mu\text{mol/L}$ in that given a placebo. The median duration of treatment was 4.3 years. At least 80% of the subjects had taken more than 50% of the capsules by the fourth year of treatment. Supplementation with β -carotene increased the plasma concentration by about 10-fold (to 3.3 mmol/L), while the retinol concentrations did not change. β -Carotene supplementation had no effect overall or in any subgroup of sex, age, smoking, medical centre, number of previous skin cancers, skin type, baseline plasma β -carotene or baseline plasma retinol, among the 702 participants who developed at least one new skin cancer (340 on placebo and 362 on β -carotene), and no effect was found of year of follow-up. In a subsequent report based on further follow-up, the relative risk for all deaths from cancer in the treated group was 0.83 (95% CI, 0.54–1.3). Among the smokers, the relative risk for skin cancer was 1.4 (95% CI, 0.99–2.1) (Greenberg *et al.*, 1990, 1996).

(f) *Conclusions from the five trials*

With the exception of the protective effect of β -carotene at 15 mg/d in combination with selenium and α -tocopherol against gastric cancer in the main Linxian trial, which was of borderline significance, none of the studies provided evidence of a protective effect of β -carotene, alone or in combination with α -tocopherol or retinol, against any of the predefined endpoints. The reduction in gastric cancer risk reported in the Linxian trial was not confirmed in the ATBC study. The reduction began after one year of observation and may thus be attributable to an effect on very late stages of carcinogenesis or, more probably, on already

existing preclinical gastric cancers. The Linxian study also showed a nonsignificant reduction in the risk for lung cancer, which was not consistent with the results of the ATBC study or the CARET, which, on the contrary, showed excess risks for lung cancer among people given β -carotene after 18–36 months of follow-up. These findings are discussed in section 6.1. In the PHS, the incidence of lung cancer was virtually identical in the treated and untreated groups. The ATBC study and the CARET, which comprised a total of nearly 1600 cases of prostatic cancer and nearly 600 cases of colorectal cancer, showed no protective effect.

The Working Group noted several differences in the populations and study designs of the trials. The underlying incidence of lung cancer in the groups that did not receive β -carotene differed widely across studies, consistent with the different prevalences of exposure to tobacco and asbestos. The two studies that did not show an increased risk for lung cancer (Linxian and PHS) had limited power to detect a modest increase (Omenn, 1996).

The baseline plasma concentrations of β -carotene in the Linxian study were less than one-half those in the ATBC study, the CARET and the SCPS and less than one-quarter those in the PHS (see Table 24). When the inverse associations between overall mortality, cancer mortality (SCPS) and lung cancer incidence (ATBC, CARET) and baseline concentrations of β -carotene were considered independently from the treatment, they were consistent with the results of the observational studies; however, the variation in baseline β -carotene concentration was not related to the effect of β -carotene supplementation in the subgroup analyses in the ATBC study and the CARET (Albanes *et al.*, 1996; Omenn *et al.*, 1996c). The trials involved different doses and preparations of β -carotene, which may have resulted in differences in bioavailability and therefore in different plasma concentrations (see section 6.1.4). It should also be noted that β -carotene was combined with selenium and α -tocopherol in the Linxian study and with retinol in the CARET study and that the duration of treatment and of follow-up varied across the studies from four to 12 years.

The Working Group considered the possibility that differences in knowledge about their supplementation status among subjects in the ATBC study and the CARET could have resulted in the observed adverse effects on lung cancer incidence and mortality. Subjects who developed skin yellowing would be aware that they were receiving supplement. It is highly improbable, however, that any subsequent change in smoking habits or diet would have been sufficiently rapid and of such magnitude to result in the changes in lung cancer incidence and mortality observed. Further, the reports by the investigators suggest that relevant changes in lifestyle did not occur selectively.

4.1.2 Studies of intermediate end-points

Almost all of the studies with end-points other than cancer in humans have involved β -carotene rather than other carotenoids, and most have entailed experimental as opposed to epidemiological approaches. The end-points considered include: neoplasms such as colorectal adenomas that clearly are part of the carcinogenic process; other changes, including leukoplakia and cervical dysplasia, that are precursors of invasive cancer; changes in cell proliferation and induction of chromosomal damage, which play important roles in carcinogenesis and physiological or biochemical measures, such as immunological function, which may reflect susceptibility or resistance to carcinogenesis.

4.1.2.1 Observational studies of dietary and serum carotenoids

The most extensive database on this topic relates to cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN). A recent review of all published analytical epidemiological studies of carotenoid measurements and the risks for CIN1, CIN2 and CIN3 (Potischman & Brinton, 1996) covered five studies in which plasma concentrations of individual carotenoids were measured; in six, dietary intake was estimated through questionnaires. Inverse associations were found in several studies for estimated concentrations of carotenoids other than lutein. Confounding and effect modification by the presence of human papillomavirus was not adequately evaluated. In a subsequent

case-control study, five types of carotenoids were evaluated in the sera of women persistently infected with this virus and women who were either not persistently or not infected. After statistical adjustment, lower serum concentrations of β -carotene, β -cryptoxanthin and lutein were found to be significantly associated with persistent infection (Giuliano *et al.*, 1997).

The roles of various micronutrients in the etiology of colorectal adenoma were evaluated in an analysis of cohorts of health professionals. Adenomatous polyps of the left colon or rectum had been diagnosed in 564 of 15 964 women and 331 of 9490 men who had undergone endoscopy during 10- and four-year follow-up periods, respectively. The odds ratio for adenoma of the distal colon in association with the highest consumption of β -carotene as opposed to the lowest was 0.79 (95% CI, 0.58–1.1) after control for folate intake (Giovannucci *et al.*, 1993).

The association between dietary intakes of α - and β -carotene, β -cryptoxanthin, lutein plus zeaxanthin and lycopene and the prevalence of colorectal adenomas observed by sigmoidoscopy was investigated among 488 matched pairs of men and women aged 50–74. After adjustment for other known risk factors for colorectal adenoma, no association was found (Enger *et al.*, 1996).

In a case-control study of 472 California (USA) residents with at least one adenomatous polyp found at screening sigmoidoscopy and 502 matched controls with no polyps at screening, the plasma concentrations of six carotenoids and of all carotenoids were evaluated. The odds ratios, adjusted for several factors including fruit and vegetable intake, revealed no association with the prevalence of polyps (Shikany *et al.*, 1997).

The relationship between serum concentrations of micronutrients including β -carotene and precancerous gastric lesions was investigated in 3433 persons in China (Zhang *et al.*, 1994). Among a random sample of 600 asymptomatic men and women without cancer, aged 35–64 years, the serum β -carotene concentration was strongly and independently associated with the risk for intestinal metaplasia, the risk in the highest tertile of serum β -carotene

concentrations being 40% lower than that in the lowest tertile (odds ratio, 0.6; 95% CI, 0.4–0.9; p for trend = 0.01). More detailed analyses suggested that the major effect of serum β -carotene is on the transition from chronic atrophic gastritis, almost universal in the study population, to intestinal metaplasia but not on progression to dysplasia. The combination of high serum ascorbic acid and β -carotene concentrations was most strongly related to the risk for intestinal metaplasia (odds ratio, 0.16; 95% CI, 0.1–0.4).

In two earlier studies from Colombia (Haenszel *et al.*, 1985) and the United Kingdom (UK Subgroup of the ECP-EURONUT-IM Study Group, 1992), among 857 people who had undergone gastroscopy, serum β -carotene concentrations were also inversely associated with dysplasia. In the latter report, the inverse association between serum β -carotene and intestinal metaplasia was not statistically significant.

Among 624 men from various areas of Japan, the plasma concentrations of β -carotene were associated with a lower risk for atrophic gastritis (adjusted p value for trend = 0.01). Although the risk also tended to be lower with higher concentrations of plasma lycopene, the relationship was not statistically significant (adjusted p value for trend = 0.25) (Tsugane *et al.*, 1993).

4.1.2.2 *Experimental studies of colorectal adenoma*

Two published clinical trials specifically addressed the prevention of colorectal adenoma in patients in whom an adenoma had previously been diagnosed and removed. Both studies had a factorial design in which other nutritional interventions were assessed simultaneously with β -carotene supplementation. Neither trial provided evidence of a protective effect of β -carotene after four years of intervention. The Polyp Prevention Study (Greenberg *et al.*, 1994) was conducted at six United States academic medical centres and involved 864 patients, who were randomized by a 2 x 2 factorial design in which the factors were 25 mg/d β -carotene and a combination of vitamins C and E. The study was double-blinded, and follow-up consisted of colonoscopy performed one year and four years after enrolment. The

principal end-point of interest was the occurrence of new colorectal adenomas between the first and the final follow-up colonoscopy; about 35% of the patients had a new adenoma. β -Carotene appeared to have no effect in the 751 patients who completed the full four years of the study (RR, 1.0; 95% CI, 0.85–1.2). There was also no evidence of efficacy in subgroups defined by lower initial serum concentration of β -carotene or in subgroups stratified by age, sex, proximal or distal site of adenoma in the colorectum or number of prior adenomas.

The Australian Polyp Prevention Trial (MacLennan *et al.*, 1995) also included patients with a recently removed colorectal adenoma who were randomized by a 2 x 2 x 2 factorial design to 20 mg/d β -carotene, fat reduction or supplemental wheat bran fibre. Follow-up colonoscopy was conducted two years and four years after randomization. Of the 424 randomized patients, 390 completed the two-year examination and 306 the four-year examination; an adenoma was diagnosed in about 30% at the four-year examination. There was no evidence of a reduction in incidence in the group receiving β -carotene (odds ratio, 1.3; 95% CI, 0.8–2.2). The adenomas in the group receiving β -carotene tended to be larger than 1 cm, but there were relatively few such lesions, and the results were not statistically significant.

A report of a third, somewhat smaller trial has been published only in abstract form (Kikendall *et al.*, 1990, 1991).

4.1.2.3 *Experimental studies of cellular dysplasia and atypia*

The effects of β -carotene supplementation on the progression or regression of cellular dysplasia or atypia in the cervix, oesophagus or lung have been examined in seven trials. None showed clear evidence of efficacy. In a trial in the Netherlands (de Vet *et al.*, 1991), 278 patients were randomized to receive 10 mg/d β -carotene or a placebo for three months. All of the patients had cervical dysplasia at entry into the study, and they were randomized in strata according to the severity of the dysplasia. The recorded outcome was progression or regression of cellular changes. When a relatively liberal definition of regression was used and adjust-

ment was made for various prognostic variables, there was no evidence that β -carotene-treated patients were more likely to have regressed lesions (odds ratio, 0.68; 95% CI, 0.28–1.6). When strict criteria for regression were used, patients receiving β -carotene seemed slightly less likely to have regression (odds ratio, 1.2; 95% CI, 0.43–3.4), but neither of the results was statistically significant. An analysis in which compliance with the medication was taken into account still gave no evidence of a greater probability of regression in the group receiving β -carotene.

In an uncontrolled trial in the United States, reported in preliminary form (Meyskens & Manetta, 1995), 30 patients with cervical dysplasia were given 30 mg/d β -carotene for three months; those whose severity of dysplasia did not change or regress were treated for an additional three months. There were no control patients. The authors reported a 70% probability of remission at six months; at 12 months (six months after stopping β -carotene), only 33% of the patients had a lesser degree of dysplasia than at entry into the study.

In the large community intervention in Linxian, China, β -carotene (15 mg/d) was given in combination with vitamin E and selenium to more than 29 000 randomized patients. In 391 patients who underwent oesophageal and gastric endoscopy in a search for occult cancer and dysplasia, no significant difference was observed among people receiving and not receiving the supplement; 16 of 214 untreated patients had dysplasia as opposed to 13 of 177 patients treated with the combination (Wang, G. *et al.*, 1994). A total of 3318 men and women participating in the trial of dysplasia had grade 1 or 2 oesophageal dysplasia at baseline and were subsequently given supplementation with 25 vitamins and minerals, including 15 mg β -carotene, for six years. The supplemented group was significantly more likely to have reversion of dysplasia at the end of follow-up as compared with the placebo group (odds ratio, 1.2; 95% CI, 1.1–1.4) (Mark *et al.*, 1994).

In a study of 755 men and women in Texas, USA, exposed to asbestos, 50 mg/d β -carotene was administered with 25 000 IU retinol on alternate days. Patients were randomized, with stratification by the presence of atypia in spu-

tum. The median length of follow-up was about five years. The authors reported no difference in the frequency of cytological abnormalities: 46 of 349 β -carotene-treated patients versus 37 of 338 placebo-treated patients had moderate atypia or worse at the end of the intervention, as assessed by cytology (McLarty, 1995).

4.1.2.4 *Experimental studies of oral leukoplakia*

Perhaps the largest number of intervention studies that suggest a beneficial effect of β -carotene involved treatment of patients with oral leukoplakia, a lesion with a definite, though modest, probability of progressing to invasive cancer (Garewal, 1995). In these studies, the measured end-point has usually been regression of the size of the visible leukoplakia, which is largely subjective, although assessment based on histological evidence is also difficult because of the usually patchy distribution of the lesion. The published intervention studies have entailed relatively short periods of supplementation with β -carotene (three to nine months), and only a few involved a placebo-treated comparison group; randomization was not often performed, and in most the investigators were aware of the treatment the patients were receiving.

In a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blinded trial in Uzbekistan, six months of treatment with a combination of β -carotene, retinol and vitamin E led to a significant reduction in the prevalence odds ratio for oral leukoplakia (odds ratio, 0.62; 95% CI, 0.39–0.98). The risk for progression or no change versus regression was reduced by 40% by this intervention, although not statistically significantly (odds ratio, 0.60; 95% CI, 0.23–1.6) (Zaridze *et al.*, 1993).

In a study of chewers of tobacco and betel quid in Kerala (India), 130 people with oral leukoplakia were assigned to treatment with 180 mg β -carotene per week, β -carotene plus vitamin A or placebo, for six months. Regression of leukoplakia was assessed by marking the location and dimensions of the lesions on a chart of the oral cavity and by examining photographs. The assessed end-points were either complete remission of leukoplakia or the appearance of new lesions. Three and six months after the beginning of therapy, there

was no statistically significant difference between the group receiving β -carotene alone and the group receiving placebo with regard to remission or development of new leukoplakia. At six months, however, there was a modestly lower, but not statistically significant, risk for new leukoplakia, which was seen in four of 27 patients receiving β -carotene and seven of 33 patients receiving placebo. At six months, four of 27 patients given β -carotene and one of 33 on placebo showed evidence of remission. A statistically significantly larger proportion of patients receiving β -carotene plus vitamin A showed regression of leukoplakia than in the group receiving placebo (Stich *et al.*, 1988).

In another study in the same area of India, 160 men and women with oral leukoplakia were randomized to receive either vitamin A (300 000 IU per week, $n = 50$), β -carotene (360 mg/week, $n = 55$) or placebo ($n = 55$) for 12 months. Complete regression was achieved in 10% of those on placebo, 52% of those given vitamin A and 33% given β -carotene. Homogeneous leukoplakias and smaller lesions responded better than non-homogeneous and larger lesions. One-half of the group on β -carotene and two-thirds of those given vitamin A showed relapse after withdrawal of the supplementation (Sankaranarayanan *et al.*, 1997).

Other intervention studies of β -carotene and oral leukoplakia did not involve placebo controls. Among 24 patients treated in Arizona (USA) with 30 mg/d β -carotene for three months (Garewal *et al.*, 1990), two had complete remission and 15 partial remission at the end of treatment. In an uncontrolled study in Canada, 18 patients were treated with 120 mg/d β -carotene for three months. Four patients had a complete or partial remission, and one appeared to have worsening of the oral lesions. Seventeen of these patients were continued for an additional three months on β -carotene. By the end of the study, eight patients were found to have an improvement in their oral leukoplakia, and nine were assessed as stable. The authors suggested that smokers had a better response to β -carotene (Malaker *et al.*, 1991). In a study in Italy, 18 evaluable patients received 90 mg/d β -carotene for nine

months, when six showed complete remission and two, partial remission. The patients were followed-up after the end of treatment for between two and seven months. After β -carotene supplementation was stopped, an additional four patients were found to have complete remission of their leukoplakia, and one had a partial response (Toma *et al.*, 1992).

In the United States, 79 patients with leukoplakia received a combination of 30 mg/d β -carotene with 1 g vitamin C and 800 IU vitamin E, for nine months. At the end of treatment, 56% of the patients had clinical improvement, which was greatest in those who had diminished their use of alcohol and tobacco (Kaugars *et al.*, 1994).

4.1.2.5 Experimental studies of cell proliferation

Measures of the proportion of proliferating cells in the rectal crypt, such as the labelling index, have been suggested for use as indicators of risk for colorectal cancer. The effect of β -carotene, alone or in combination with other vitamins, on these measures of proliferation has been assessed in three intervention studies.

Within a randomized, multifactorial trial of polyp prevention in Australia, 24 patients were given 30 mg/d β -carotene and 17 were given placebo; all underwent rectal mucosal biopsy two to four years after randomization. Cell proliferation was determined by staining for proliferating cell nuclear antigen in five rectal mucosal crypts. No significant difference in total labelling index was found between the group receiving β -carotene and that receiving placebo, but patients taking β -carotene had a significantly lower proportion of labelled cells in the top 40% of the crypt (Macrae *et al.*, 1991). It has been suggested that a higher proportion of proliferating cells in the upper crypt represents initial evidence of neoplastic transformation (Lipkin *et al.*, 1994).

A subsequent report from Ireland indicated that β -carotene supplementation significantly ($p < 0.005$, signed rank sum test) reduced the total labelling index in the rectal crypt. Among 10 patients randomly assigned to receive 9 mg/d β -carotene, the labelling index in 10 rectal crypts dropped from 7.1% before the trial to 3.9% after the one-month intervention. The

control group showed only a modest change in labelling index, from 6.9 to 6.6% after the intervention. The decrease in proliferation was seen only in the lower 60% of the crypt, and there was no significant reduction in proliferating cells in the higher 40% (Cahill *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted that the authors reported only measures before and after intervention and no formal assessment of the difference between the treated and placebo groups.]

The largest trial of the effects of β -carotene in mucosal crypt labelling was reported from Illinois, USA, and involved 41 individuals who had had colorectal cancer and 40 who had had an adenoma. The participants were assigned at random to receive 30 mg/d β -carotene or placebo for 90 days. The labelling index, determined for proliferating cell nuclear antigen in at least three crypts per biopsy, was assessed before randomization and after three months, at the end of the intervention. β -Carotene had no significant effect on the total labelling index, and no significant difference was found in labelling in the lower, middle or upper third of the crypt compartment (Frommel *et al.*, 1995). [The Working Group noted the large fluctuations in the before-and-after measures of labelling among groups and that the proportion of labelled cells was substantially higher (> 20%) than in the other reports discussed here.]

Biochemical measures that may reflect cell proliferation include ornithine decarboxylase activity and excretion of *N*-acetylspemidine. Both measures were assessed in the study in Illinois summarized above (Frommel *et al.*, 1995), with no consistent evidence of an effect of β -carotene. An earlier report from the USA, however, found a significant decrease in ornithine decarboxylase activity from pretreatment values among 20 men who had previously had colon cancer and were assigned to receive 30 mg/d β -carotene for six months (Phillips *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted that no control subjects were included.]

In a study in the Russian Federation, 44 patients with chronic atrophic gastritis were treated with 20 mg/d β -carotene for three weeks. Ornithine decarboxylase activity in the

gastric mucosa was significantly lower than before treatment and than in 19 control patients who did not receive β -carotene (Bukin *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted that treatment was not assigned at random and that few data were presented on the comparability of these groups.]

4.1.2.6 Experimental studies of chromosomal damage

Chromosomal damage includes micronuclei and sister chromatid exchange, which are generally evaluated in cell scrapings or sputum specimens. Almost all of the studies were based on oral and bronchial mucosal specimens.

Most of the studies of micronucleus formation have come from one group of investigators at the British Columbia Cancer Research Centre in Canada. They initially conducted a pilot study (described above in the discussion of leukoplakia) among betel chewers in Kerala, India. People given 180 mg β -carotene weekly for four months showed a significant decrease in the number of micronuclei per cell (Stich *et al.*, 1988, 1990a). In a similar study, in which the independent effects of β -carotene, canthaxanthin and retinol were compared, a significant decrease was noted in micronucleus counts after administration of β -carotene and retinol, but no change was observed with canthaxanthin (Stich *et al.*, 1984). A pilot study was also conducted among Inuits who used tobacco snuff regularly. Their oral mucosa contained ample amounts of retinol but relatively small amounts of β -carotene. A statistically significant ($p < 0.001$) decrease in micronucleus count, from 1.9 to 0.7%, was seen in 23 people given 180 mg β -carotene per week for 10 weeks, whereas no significant change was found in 10 people given a placebo (Stich *et al.*, 1985).

In a randomized double-blinded trial of the effects of β -carotene on sister chromatid exchange, 70 healthy male smokers in The Netherlands were assigned to receive 20 mg/d β -carotene for 14 weeks and 73 to placebo. Sister chromatid exchange was evaluated as the mean number per lymphocyte. The counts were similar at the end of treatment: 4.4 versus 4.2, respectively. [The Working Group noted

that the reliability of the measurement of sister chromatid exchange in this trial was questionable; the absolute count decreased in both treated and control groups and the standard deviation of the counts after treatment was reduced by more than one-half.] In the same study, 14 weeks of supplemental β -carotene at 20 mg/d significantly reduced the micronucleus counts in sputum from 114 heavy smokers: the counts decreased by 16% in the 61 men receiving placebo and by 27% in those receiving β -carotene ($p < 0.05$), after adjustment for the initial concentrations (van Poppel *et al.*, 1992).

A study among cigarette smokers in South Africa involved random assignment of 60 subjects to three treatment groups: 40 mg/d β -carotene, 900 IU/d vitamin E or placebo. After six weeks of treatment, no change was observed in the frequency of sister chromatid exchange in peripheral blood lymphocytes (Richards *et al.*, 1990).

4.1.2.7 *Experimental studies of immunological end-points*

The effect of carotenoid supplementation on immunological function in humans has been examined in studies with various end-points. The results have been mixed: some studies indicate increased immunological function after supplementation and others no change. Relatively few of the studies had a randomized, placebo-controlled design, and most were simple comparisons of measures taken before and after treatment. The studies have focused exclusively on β -carotene.

Nine men with Barrett's oesophagus in Tucson (USA) had a statistically significant increase in the proportion of lymphocytes with natural killer (NK) and HLA-DR markers after two months' treatment with 30 mg/d β -carotene. They also had a nonsignificant increase in the proportion of cells with T-helper, interleukin (IL)-2R and transferrin receptor markers (Prabhala *et al.*, 1991). A further report from the same group, on 20 healthy men and women, indicated that the increase in T-helper (CD4⁺) cells was significant at doses of, e.g. 30, 45 and 60 mg/d but not at 15 mg/d, and that there had been a possibly similar dose-

dependent increase in cells with NK, transferrin receptor and IL-2 receptors (Watson *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that only four patients were randomized to each dose and the comparisons were of status before and after rather than of changes between patients receiving β -carotene and those receiving placebo.]

A randomized controlled trial of 50 adults in Michigan (USA), however, showed no evidence of a change in immunological markers with β -carotene treatment. Groups of 10 received β -carotene at a dose of 15, 45, 180 or 300 mg/d or placebo for four weeks. No significant change was found in the total number or percentage of peripheral B cells, T cells, T-cell subsets, NK cells or HLA-DR- or IL-2R-expressing cells, and there was no significant change in the proliferative response after OKT3-antibody stimulation or in the production of IL-2 by stimulated peripheral blood mononuclear cells (Ringer *et al.*, 1991). [The Working Group noted that some of the differences between these results and those noted above may have been due to the shorter duration of the latter study; in Tucson, immunological changes were found only after two months of treatment.]

Mixed findings were also reported from Japan in a study of 20 university-age volunteers who were randomized to 20 mg/d β -carotene or placebo for nine months. A significant increase was found in the CD4:CD8 ratio but no change in NK cells, virgin T cells, cytotoxic T cells or memory T cells (Murata *et al.*, 1994).

Exposure to UV light has been reported to suppress delayed-type hypersensitivity in the skin. In a study in New York (USA), 24 healthy men were assigned randomly to 30 mg/d β -carotene or placebo. After 28 days, all received dermal exposure to UV light, and their responses to antigens were assessed over the next 21 days. Men on placebo showed a statistically significant decrease in delayed-type hypersensitivity, whereas those on β -carotene showed only a slight, nonsignificant decrease (Fuller *et al.*, 1992). [The Working Group noted that the diminution in delayed-type hypersensitivity was not compared directly in the treated and control groups; however, the data indicate that the difference was probably not statistically significant.]

A group of 45 male cigarette smokers in The Netherlands were randomized to receive 20 mg/d β -carotene or placebo for 14 weeks. No effect of the treatment was noted on lymphocyte subpopulations in peripheral blood, as measured by 10 markers; however, the proliferative response to phytohaemagglutinin was 12% higher in the group receiving β -carotene, and this difference was statistically significant. The response pertained only to cells stimulated in plasma; it appeared even to be decreased in cells in fetal calf serum, and there was no change in the response to concanavalin A (van Poppel *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted that many immunological end-points were measured, and the multiplicity of comparisons was not taken into account in calculating the *p* values.]

A report from the Physicians' Health Study involved a subset of 59 male physicians chosen from among participants in the Boston (USA) area, 29 of whom had been randomized to receive 50 mg β -carotene every other day for about 10 years and 30 of whom had received placebo. Participants ≥ 65 years had lower NK cell activity than younger men; however, older men receiving β -carotene had significantly greater NK activity than those on placebo. No treatment-associated differences were seen in men under 65. The older men showed no differences in the proportion of NK cells or in IL-2 receptor expression (Santos *et al.*, 1996). In a subsequent report from this group of investigators, the effects of β -carotene were evaluated in 11 healthy elderly women assigned to receive 90 mg/d β -carotene for three weeks. No difference in delayed-type hypersensitivity skin responses was seen in comparison with 12 control women receiving placebo. Similarly, there were no differences in a variety of other immunological measures, including proportions of lymphocyte subpopulations, lymphocyte proliferation *in vitro* and production of IL-2 (Santos *et al.*, 1997).

The effects of β -carotene in conjunction with other supplements or as a component of diet have been addressed in three studies. The delayed hypersensitivity response was reported to be stronger after 12 months of supplementation with multivitamins which included β -carotene (Bogden *et al.*, 1994); and among

participants in the Linxian trial, the group receiving β -carotene, vitamin E and selenium had significantly higher T-lymphocyte mitogenic responsiveness *in vitro* (Zhang *et al.*, 1995). In a group of nine healthy women who were placed on a β -carotene-depleted diet for 68 days and then given 15 mg/d β -carotene, no effects were seen on the numbers of immunological cells or on the peripheral blood mononuclear cell proliferative response to phytohaemagglutinin or concanavalin A (Daudu *et al.*, 1994).

A randomized trial in England involved 25 participants who received either 15 mg/d β -carotene or placebo for 28 days and were then crossed over to the other treatment. Blood was collected for the analysis of a number of immunological measures at baseline and at the end of each of the two intervention periods. There was a statistically significant increase in the activity of tumour necrosis factor- α after supplementation, and an increase was seen in the proportion of monocytes expressing HLA-DR, intracellular adhesion molecule-1 and leukocyte function-associated antigen-3 (Hughes *et al.*, 1997).

In a randomized trial in Illinois (USA), 40 patients with a history of colorectal polyps and 40 with a prior colorectal cancer received 30 mg/d β -carotene or placebo for three months. At the end of the intervention, the counts of CD4⁺ T cells and IL-2R-expressing lymphocytes were significantly increased among the cancer patients given β -carotene but not among the patients with polyps. There were no clear changes in other measures, including CD8⁺ counts, CD4:CD8 ratios or NK cell counts (Kazi *et al.*, 1997). [The Working Group noted the loss of some blood specimens and the lack of direct statistical comparisons of treated and control groups.]

4.1.2.8 Summary

The effects of β -carotene (and, to a lesser extent, canthaxanthin) on possible antecedents of malignancy have been addressed in a substantial number of investigations. They provide strong evidence of a lack of efficacy of short-term supplementation with β -carotene in preventing colorectal adenomas, a neoplasm that can be a precursor for invasive cancer, but the

interventions were of relatively brief duration. The reports of clinical studies generally show regression of oral leukoplakia; however, in most of the trials, the design was not randomized or double-blinded and the assessment of leukoplakia was often subjective. The results of studies of other measures of possible relevance to carcinogenesis, such as cytogenetic abnormalities, have also been inconsistent. On balance, intervention studies of carotenoids and premalignant lesions show no consistent pattern of protection.

4.2 Experimental models

4.2.1 Experimental animals

4.2.1.1 β -Carotene

(a) Skin (Table 27)

Mouse: Two groups of two-month old albino hairless mice (University of California strain [sex unspecified]) received intraperitoneal injections of β -carotene (beadlets containing 10% β -carotene dissolved in distilled water at a concentration of 250 mg/ml) or placebo (filler of the beadlets) dissolved in distilled water three times a week for six months. During the first month, 61 mice given β -carotene and 56 mice given the placebo received 0.4-ml injections, providing 10 mg β -carotene for the supplemented animals; for the remaining five months they received 0.2-ml injections, providing 5 mg β -carotene. One month after the start of the injections, UV irradiation at 6.5×10^3 J/m² (mainly UV-B) was initiated and continued three times a week for the duration of the study, 15 months. Skin tumours > 4 and > 50 mm³ were registered. Eight of the mice with large tumours, five receiving β -carotene and three receiving the placebo, were killed, and the tumours were examined histologically. The tumours were all relatively well-differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas which had invaded the dermis and subcutaneous tissue. Mortality was relatively high, amounting to 18/61 and 35/61 animals receiving β -carotene and 12/56 and 32/56 controls after two and seven months, respectively. The first tumours > 4 and > 50 mm³ were found in mice on β -carotene after 7.75 and 8 months, respectively, and both sizes of tumour were found in controls after 7.25

months. After 12 months, 53 and 40% of the tumours in mice given β -carotene and 80 and 75% of the those in controls were > 4 and > 50 mm³, respectively. The numbers of mice per survivors with tumours > 4 mm³ were 2/24 after 40 weeks, 6/21 after 47 weeks ($p = 0.03$; χ^2 test for 2 x 2 contingency tables) and 8/15 after 52 weeks ($p = 0.0761$) among animals given β -carotene, and 2/22, 13/21 and 17/21, respectively, in controls. The numbers of mice per survivors with tumours > 50 mm³ were 1/24 and 1/22 after 40 weeks, 5/21 and 10/21 after 47 weeks ($p = 0.1074$) and 6/15 and 16/21 after 52 weeks ($p = 0.0281$) in animals given β -carotene and placebo, respectively (Epstein, 1977).

Four groups of 75 female Swiss albino 955 mice, nine to ten weeks old, were painted on a clipped, mid-dorsal area of the skin with 0.02 ml of a 0.5% solution of benzo[*a*]pyrene in acetone (0.1 mg benzo[*a*]pyrene per painting), twice a week for 60 weeks. Two of the four groups were kept in the dark except during treatment and observation; the other two groups were also kept in the dark but were exposed to long UV irradiation (300–400 nm; 5890 erg/cm² per s) for 2 h immediately after each skin painting. One of the groups kept in the dark and one of the groups subjected to UV irradiation were fed a normal rodent diet, while the other two groups were fed a diet containing 500 mg/kg β -carotene from 10% β -carotene-containing beadlets [use of placebo beadlets unspecified]. After one month, the animals fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet received an additional dose of 100 mg/kg bw crystalline β -carotene as a 1% solution in arachis oil by stomach tube twice a week [duration unspecified]. Two additional groups of 75 mice were fed a normal rodent diet and kept either continuously in the dark or subjected to UV irradiation for 2 h twice a week. These mice did not develop any skin tumours, and β -carotene had no consistent or significant effect on the incidence of benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced skin tumours in mice kept continuously in the dark during the final half of the experiment; however, during the last 20 weeks of the study, β -carotene significantly reduced the incidence of skin tumours in mice kept in the dark, from about 56 to 30% at 40 weeks and from about 67 to

Table 27. Effects of β -carotene on skin tumorigenesis in experimental mice

Strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Hairless [sex unspecified]	56-61	UV irradiation; 6.5×10^3 J/m ²	5/10 mg/mouse, intraperitoneally, 3 times/week	Before and during	Skin tumour size: 35-47% [SU] Skin tumour incidence after 47 weeks: 50% ($p = 0.1074$) -54% ($p = 0.03$)	Epstein (1977)
Swiss Albino, female	75	B[a]P, 0.1 mg/skin painting; UV (300-400 nm) 5890 erg/cm ² per s	500 mg/kg diet + 100 mg/kg bw by gavage twice/week	Before and during	Tumours, incidence B[a]P, 19-30% ($p < 0.005$) B[a]P/UV: 47% (SU)	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1981, 1983a,b, 1988); Santamaria & Bianchi (1989)
SKH/hr, female	24	UV-B (7.2 kJ/m ²)	6.68 g/kg bw per day, diet	Before and during	Onset of skin tumours: 22% ($p < 0.01$)	Mathews-Roth (1982)
SKH/hr female	24	DMBA [dose unspecified]; croton oil	6.68 g/kg bw per day, diet	Before and during	Onset of skin tumours: 17% ($p < 0.025$) Tumour yield: 78% after 10 weeks ($p < 0.01$); 71% after 20 weeks ($p < 0.01$)	Mathews-Roth (1982)
SKH/hr, female	24	DMBA [dose unspecified]; UV-B (2.7 kJ/m ²)	6.68 g/kg bw per day, diet	Before and during	Onset of skin tumours: 33% ($p < .05$)	Mathews-Roth (1982)
SKH/hr, [sex unspecified]	[about 25]	UV-B, 3.6 kJ/m ² , 3 times/week	33 g/kg diet	After	Papillomas/carcinomas Incidence After 10 weeks: 52% (NS) After 16 weeks: 39% (NS) After 20 weeks: none (NS)	Mathews-Roth (1983)
SKH/hr [sex unspecified]	7 or 9	UV-B, 8×10^4 J/m ² , single fluence	33 g/kg diet	Before and after	Papillomas/carcinomas Incidence: 34% (NS) Number: 60% (NS)	Mathews-Roth (1983)
SKH/hr-1, female	24	UV-B, total dose of 8×10^4 J/m ²	0.01, 0.07, 2/3.3% in diet; beadlets	Before and during	Papillomas/carcinomas Incidence Low dose: none (NS) Mid dose: 48% ($p < 0.0125$) High dose: 25% ($p < 0.025$) Multiplicity: none (NS)	Mathews-Roth & Krinsky (1985)

Table 27 (contd)

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	β -carotene, dose, route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
SKH/hr-1, female	24	UV-B, one dose of 8×10^4 J/m ²	0.1% in diet; beadlets	Before, during and after	Papillomas Incidence Only before: 36% ($p < 0.1$) Only after: 79% ($p < 0.025$) Before and after: 50% ($p < 0.05$)	Mathews-Roth & Krinsky (1987)
HRA/SKH, female	40	DMBA (2.56 μ g/mouse); TPA (1 μ g twice/week)	290 and 1430 IU/kg bw/day, oral gavage	Before and during	Papillomas Incidence: 19–22% (NS) ^b Multiplicity: 44–46% ($p < 0.05$) Carcinomas: none (NS)	Steinel & Baker (1990)
HRA/SKH, female	16–19 (survivors)	DMBA (2.56 μ g/mouse); TPA (1 μ g twice/week)	1430 IU/kg bw per day, gavage	After	Tumours: none (NS)	Steinel & Baker (1990)
SKH:hr-1, female	30	DMBA (150 μ g; TPA (5 μ g twice/week)	2.8% as beadlets in diet	Before, during and after	Cumulative number of tumours: 29% ($p = 0.057$)	Lambert <i>et al.</i> (1990)
SKH:hr-1, female	30	DMBA (150 μ g; TPA (5 μ g twice/week)	2.6%, crystalline in diet	Before, during and after	Cumulative number of tumours: 39% ($p = 0.05$)	Lambert <i>et al.</i> (1990)
CR:ORL Sencar, female	30	DMBA (4 μ g; TPA, (1.4 μ g once/week)	2.8% as beadlets in diet	Before, during and after	Cumulative number of tumours: 25% (NS)	Lambert <i>et al.</i> (1990)
CR:ORL Sencar, female	30	DMBA (4 μ g; TPA, (1.4 μ g once/ week)	2.6%, crystalline in diet	Before, during and after	Cumulative number of tumours: 22% (NS)	Lambert <i>et al.</i> (1990)
Swiss, male and female	30	DMBA (100 nmol/painting, twice weekly, 8 weeks)	1 mg, painted on skin, 5 times/week, 24 weeks	Before, during and after	Tumours Survival: 233% [SU] Incidence: 37% (NS) Latency: 75% (NS) Number/mouse: 86% ($p < 0.001$)	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Hairless Swiss nude, male	20	DMBA (100 nmol/painting, twice weekly, 8 weeks)	1 mg, painted on skin, 5 times/week, 24 weeks	Before, during and after	Tumours Survival: 67% [SU] Incidence: 50% (NS) Latency: 143% (NS) Number/mouse: 94% ($p < 0.001$)	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1991)

Table 27 (contd)

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	β -carotene, dose, route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
ICR, [sex unspecified]	16	DMBA, 100 μ g; single application (1 μ g twice/week)	200 and 400 nmol, skin application, twice/week	After	Papillomas Incidence: high dose, 64% (NS); low dose, 55% (NS) Multiplicity: high dose, 65% [SU]; low dose, 21% [SU] Latency: none [SU]	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992); Nishino (1995)
Sencar, male, female	13-25	20 μ g DMBA, single application; 2 μ g TPA, 20 weekly applications	0.6, 6, 60 and 600 mg/kg diet	During and after	Papillomas Incidence and yield: none [rather an increase] Conversion of papilloma to carcinoma: males, 87% (significant [<i>p</i> value unspecified]); females, 64% (NS) to 86% (significant [<i>p</i> value unspecified])	Chen <i>et al.</i> (1993)
CD-1, female	10	DMBA [dose unspecified]	200 mg/kg bw per day, gavage	After	Cumulative papilloma size, after 7 days: 11% (<i>p</i> < 0.05); after 14 days: 18% (<i>p</i> < 0.05)	Katsumura <i>et al.</i> (1996)

UV, ultraviolet; B[a]P, benzo[a]pyrene; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; TPA, 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate; NS, nonsignificant; SU, statistics unspecified

54% at 60 weeks ($p < 0.05$ [statistics unspecified]). In comparison with benzo[*a*]pyrene alone, the combination with UV irradiation increased the skin tumour incidence by two- to sevenfold at different times. β -Carotene reduced the incidence of benzo[*a*]pyrene- and UV-induced skin tumours considerably, e.g. from about 12 to 2% at 20 weeks, from about 47 to 21% at 28 weeks, from about 61 to 34% at 38 weeks, from about 68 to 35% at 40 weeks and from about 95 to 65% at 60 weeks. At the end of the study, 10–20% of the skin tumours were papillomas and 80–90% were squamous epitheliomas in the various groups [no information was provided on statistics] (Santamaria *et al.*, 1981, 1983a,b, 1988; Santamaria & Bianchi, 1989).

β -Carotene (33 g/kg diet; 6.68 g/kg bw per day; from carotenoid-containing beadlets) was administered in the diet to three groups of 24 female hairless Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr mice, five to eight weeks of age, for 30–32 weeks. Three groups of mice received placebo beadlets. After 10 weeks on the respective diets, skin tumours were induced by one of three methods, each being applied to one of the β -carotene-treated groups and to one of the placebo control groups. In the first method, the mice were irradiated with UV-B (7.2 kJ/m² of total energy, 54% of which was between 285 and 320 nm) three times a week for 22 weeks. In the second method, a 0.5% solution of DMBA in acetone was painted twice at an interval of two weeks onto the entire back of each mouse, followed—three weeks after the second DMBA treatment—by painting two drops of a 0.5% solution of croton oil in acetone on the entire back twice weekly for 16 weeks. In the third method, the DMBA treatment was followed two weeks later by UV-B irradiation (2.7 kJ/m² of total energy, 54% of which was between 285 and 320 nm) three times per week [period of treatment unspecified]. Representative skin tumours from about 30% of the mice were studied histologically. Each method of tumour induction resulted in both squamous-cell carcinomas and papillomas. β -Carotene significantly delayed the time to appearance, but not the yield, of skin tumours induced by UV-B irradiation alone, the first tumour $> 1 \text{ mm}^3$ appearing in weeks 11

and 9 in the mice given β -carotene and in controls, respectively ($p < 0.01$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test). β -Carotene delayed the onset of skin tumours induced by DMBA and croton oil, the first 15 tumours appearing significantly later in the mice on β -carotene than in those on placebo ($p < 0.025$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test). β -Carotene also significantly ($p < 0.01$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test) reduced the yield of skin tumours induced by DMBA and croton oil, the average number of tumours per mouse being 1.74 in animals given β -carotene and 8.0 in those on placebo after 10 weeks of treatment and 3.40 and 11.6 after 20 weeks. The onset of the first skin tumour $> 1 \text{ mm}^3$ induced by DMBA and UV-B was also delayed by β -carotene, the first tumour appearing six weeks after the start of treatment in those on placebo and after eight weeks in the β -carotene-fed group ($p < 0.05$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test). β -Carotene had no effect on the average number of skin tumours per animal induced by DMBA and UV-B (Mathews-Roth, 1982).

An unspecified number of Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr mice, five to eight weeks of age, were fed normal mouse chow and were irradiated with UV-B (3.6 kJ/m²) for 20 min, three times per week for an unspecified period [at least 24 weeks]. As soon as a mouse developed a skin tumour $\geq 1 \text{ mm}^3$, it was allocated at random to a β -carotene-supplemented diet (33 g/kg diet from β -carotene-containing beadlets) or to placebo beadlet-supplemented control diet. There was a nonsignificant trend for a delayed appearance of new skin papillomas and carcinomas in mice fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet; e.g. the seventh skin tumour developed after 10 weeks in 20% of β -carotene-fed mice and 42% of those on placebo, after 16 weeks in 43% on β -carotene and 70% on placebo and after 20 weeks in 79% of each group [incidences estimated from a figure]. There was also a statistically insignificant trend for inhibition by β -carotene of the development of skin tumours $> 4 \text{ mm}^3$ ($p < 0.3$; Student's *t* test) and $> 50 \text{ mm}^3$ ($p < 0.1$; Student's *t* test) [not further specified]. In a second experiment, groups of mice received the β -carotene-supplemented diet (seven mice) or the placebo diet (nine mice) for 34 weeks. After 10

weeks on their respective diets, all mice were subjected to a large single fluence of UV-B irradiation ($8 \times 10^4 \text{ J/m}^2$) and were observed for 43 weeks [apparently, all mice were fed a normal diet during the last nine weeks of this period]. There was no intercurrent mortality. The first skin tumours were seen five weeks after exposure to UV-B, and no new skin tumours developed 21 weeks after exposure. β -Carotene did not significantly reduce the incidence or total number of skin tumours $> 1 \text{ mm}^3$, the incidences being 2/7 and 4/9 and the total numbers 2 and 5 in the β -carotene and control groups, respectively (Mathews-Roth, 1983).

Six groups of 24 female hairless Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr-1 mice, five to seven weeks old, were fed diets supplemented with β -carotene or placebo beadlets. Groups 1 and 2 were fed rodent chow supplemented with 3.3% β -carotene (3.3 g/kg diet) in beadlets or placebo beadlets for 16 weeks and then 2% β -carotene (2 g/kg diet) for another 22 weeks; groups 3 and 4 were fed a diet containing 0.07% β -carotene (700 mg/kg diet) or placebo beadlets for 30 weeks; groups 5 and 6 were fed diets containing 0.01% β -carotene (100 mg/kg diet) or placebo for 26 weeks and four days. All mice were subjected to UV-B irradiation (total dose, 10.8 J/m^2) for 16 weeks [schedule of irradiation unspecified], starting after 12 weeks on their diets for groups 1 and 2, after one month for groups 3 and 4 and after four days for groups 5 and 6. The animals were killed 10 weeks after irradiation. At the end of the study, the β -carotene content of the epidermis was found to be increased in a dose-related manner. β -Carotene at dietary concentrations of 3.3/2% and 0.07% prevented or delayed the appearance of UV-B-induced skin tumours; e.g. the percentages of mice with skin tumours 21 weeks after the start of the irradiation were 63% at the high dose and 84% with placebo ($p < 0.025$; Student's *t* test), 44% at the intermediate dose and 85% with placebo ($p < 0.0125$; Student's *t* test) and 65% at the low dose and 56% with placebo. The average numbers of tumours per mouse were also lower (but not statistically significantly) in those on β -carotene than in the respective placebo groups; e.g. 21 weeks after the start of the irradiation,

1.83 at the high dose and 2.65 with the placebo, 1.27 at the intermediate dose and 1.70 with the placebo and 1.29 at the low dose and 1.30 with the placebo (Mathews-Roth & Krinsky, 1985).

Groups of 24 female hairless Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr-1 mice, five to seven weeks old, were fed a diet containing 0.1% β -carotene in beadlets, and two other groups received the same diet supplemented with placebo beadlets for six weeks. All mice then received a single exposure to $8 \times 10^4 \text{ J/m}^2$ UV-B radiation for 220 min. Immediately after exposure, one of the groups on the β -carotene-supplemented diet was switched to the placebo diet and one of the placebo groups was switched to the β -carotene-supplemented diet, while the two other groups were continued on their respective diets. The animals were observed for 24 weeks after treatment. At the end of the study, β -carotene was detected in the skin even of animals that received the pigment before irradiation. There was no intercurrent mortality. The first tumours appeared five weeks after irradiation, some growing to 50 mm^3 but most measuring 1–4 mm^3 . When β -carotene was fed before or after or only after exposure to UV-B, the incidences of skin tumours (mainly papillomas) were significantly reduced, being 14/24 for the group continuously fed the placebo diet, 7/24 for the group fed the β -carotene diet ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test) and 3/24 for the group fed the placebo diet before and the β -carotene-supplemented diet after exposure to UV-B ($p < 0.0025$; Fisher exact test). The skin tumour incidence in the group fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet only before UV-B exposure was 9/24, which was not statistically significantly lower than that (14/24) in the group continuously fed the placebo diet (Mathews-Roth & Krinsky, 1987).

From three weeks of age, 120 inbred female HRA/Skh mice were fed a vitamin A- and β -carotene-free diet (8% sucrose, 27% dextrose, 30% corn flour, 21% soya protein, 5% cellulose, 6% peanut oil and 3% vitamin-mineral premix without vitamin A). At 42–49 days of age, 2.56 mg (10 nmol) DMBA in 50 μl acetone were applied over the lower half of the dorsal skin surface of each mouse. One week later, 1 mg (1.6 nmol) 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-

acetate (TPA) in 50 ml acetone was applied over the same skin surface, twice weekly for a further 19 weeks. At the same time, the mice were divided into three groups of 40 mice and were given 100 ml peanut oil or 10 or 50 IU β -carotene (290 or 1430 IU/kg bw per day) in 100 ml peanut oil on five days per week for 39 weeks. The mice were held for a further 12 weeks for observation. A group of 20 mice was similarly treated with DMBA and TPA but received normal feed throughout the study. β -Carotene had no effect on body weight, but all of the mice on the vitamin A- and β -carotene-free diet had statistically significantly reduced body weights ($p < 0.0001$ [method of statistical analysis unspecified]). The incidence of skin papillomas was reduced from 97% in the control group to 77% in both β -carotene-treated groups at week 20 and from 68% in the control group to 50 and 52% in the groups at the low and high doses of β -carotene, respectively, at week 40. The incidences of papillomas in the group fed normal feed were 100% at week 20 and 78% at week 40, and the maximum number of papillomas per mouse found during weeks 6–14 was significantly reduced ($p < 0.05$; two-tailed unpaired t test) from 3.5 ± 1.6 in the control group to 2.5 ± 2.1 and 2.5 ± 2.4 in mice at the low and high doses of β -carotene, respectively, and 4.9 ± 1.8 in the group given normal feed. The incidences of squamous-cell carcinomas and carcinomas *in situ* of the skin in mice still alive at the end of the study (week 52) ranged from 7/38 to 7/25 in the various groups and did not differ significantly (two-tailed unpaired t test). In order to investigate the effect of β -carotene on established skin tumours, mice on normal feed were treated with DMBA and TPA as described above and were distributed randomly into two groups at week 20. Both groups received the vitamin A- and β -carotene-free diet in weeks 20–40, and one group received the high dose of β -carotene and the other group only peanut oil. There was no significant difference between the two groups with regard to papilloma yield or the occurrence of skin carcinomas, the incidences of carcinomas being 3/19 and 6/16 in controls and β -carotene-treated groups, respectively [no further details given] (Steinel & Baker, 1990).

Four groups of 30 female CR:ORL Sencar mice and 30 female Skh:HR-1 mice, 10–13 weeks of age, were maintained on standard rodent pellet diet, finely ground rodent standard diet containing 2.8% β -carotene (from 10% β -carotene-containing beadlets), 2.6% crystalline β -carotene (type 1, *trans*, synthetic) or placebo beadlets at a concentration equal to that of the diet containing 2.8% β -carotene. In week 11, a single dose of 4 mg DMBA in 0.2 ml acetone was applied to the skin of the back of each Sencar mouse and 150 mg DMBA in 0.2 ml acetone to Skh mice. One week later, all mice received a first application of TPA: Sencar mice received 1.4 mg TPA in 0.2 ml acetone once a week for 11 weeks, while Skh mice received 5 mg TPA in 0.2 ml acetone twice a week for 18 weeks. No significant difference in body weight was found between the groups. The Sencar mice given the β -carotene beadlets had a statistically nonsignificant (Kruskal-Wallis test), 25% decrease in the cumulative number of skin tumours (total number of tumours in survivors), with 414 tumours in those given the placebo and 312 in those given β -carotene, whereas Skh mice had a statistically significant ($p = 0.057$; Kruskal-Wallis test), 29% decrease in the cumulative number of skin tumours, with 315 tumours in those on placebo and 223 with the beadlets. Sencar mice fed the crystalline β -carotene supplement had a 22% decrease in the cumulative number of skin tumours (284 versus 366 with placebo), while Skh mice had a 39% decrease (174 versus 287; $p = 0.05$; Kruskal-Wallis test). At one time (week 11), significantly fewer tumour-bearing animals were found among the Sencar mice fed the beadlets than the placebo ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test), while no such significant difference was seen between the group fed the crystalline β -carotene supplement. Significantly fewer tumour-bearing Skh mice among those fed the beadlets than among those receiving the placebo ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test) were found at two times, and fewer tumour-bearing mice fed the crystalline β -carotene diet were found at four times [statistics unspecified]. There was a statistically significant delay in the time to appearance of tumours in Skh mice fed either the beadlet or the crystalline

supplement ($p < 0.05$; Kruskal-Wallis test), but no statistically significant difference was seen in Sencar mice (Lambert *et al.*, 1990).

Two groups of 30 Swiss mice of each sex [number per sex unspecified], six to eight weeks old, were painted on the shaven back skin with 100 nmol DMBA in 0.1 ml acetone twice weekly from week 3 to week 11. One of the groups received 1 mg β -carotene in 0.1 ml acetone topically on the back skin on five days per week from week 1 to week 24 (end of the study), while the other group received no further treatment. A third group of animals was treated with acetone alone or with 1 mg β -carotene in acetone. β -Carotene increased the survival rate from [8/30] to [27/30] and the mean latency of skin tumours from 8 to 14 weeks and reduced the incidence of skin tumours from [30/30] to [19/30] (not significant; Student's *t* test) and the number of skin tumours per mouse from 13.1 ± 1.7 to 1.8 ± 0.3 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). None of the animals treated with acetone alone or with 1 mg β -carotene in acetone died, and no skin tumours were found (Azuine *et al.*, 1991).

Groups of 20 male inbred hairless Swiss nude mice were treated in a study of similar design but with 50 nmol DMBA. β -Carotene increased the survival rate from [12/20] to [22/20] [statistics unspecified] and the mean latency of skin tumours from 7 to 17 weeks, and it reduced the incidence from [20/20] to [10/20] (not significant; Student's *t* test) and the number of skin tumours per mouse from 46.4 ± 5.1 to 2.6 ± 0.4 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). None of the animals treated with acetone alone or with 1 mg β -carotene in acetone died, and no skin tumours were found (Azuine *et al.*, 1991).

The backs of 48 ICR mice [sex unspecified], seven weeks old, were shaved and two days later given a single application of 0.1 mg DMBA [vehicle unspecified]. One week later, 1 mg (1.62 nmol) TPA was painted on the shaven skin twice weekly for 20 weeks. Groups of 16 mice received 200 or 400 nmol β -carotene in 0.2 ml acetone at the same time as each application of TPA, or the vehicle in acetone. There was no significant difference in body weight among the groups. The first skin tumours (papillomas) appeared within nine weeks after the start of application of TPA in

both control and treated groups [time to tumour appearance not further specified]. At 20 weeks, the percentages of mice bearing papillomas [estimated from a figure] were 69, 31 and 25 [statistics unspecified], and the average numbers of skin tumours were 3.73, 2.94 and 1.31 [standard deviations unspecified] (not significant; Student's *t* test) in controls and in those given the low and high doses of β -carotene, respectively. The tumours were smaller in the β -carotene-treated animals than in controls; e.g. the average numbers of tumours 1–2 mm in diameter per mouse were 2.20, 1.81 and 1.06 [standard deviations unspecified] in the three groups, respectively. Furthermore, no tumours > 4 mm in diameter were seen in β -carotene-treated mice, whereas 0.26 such tumours per mouse [standard deviation unspecified] were seen in the control group [statistics unspecified]. The study was repeated with similar results [no further details presented] (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992; Nishino, 1995).

After pregnant Sencar mice had delivered their pups, they were placed on a vitamin A-deficient diet (TD85239) supplemented with 0.6, 6, 60 or 600 mg/kg β -carotene (crystalline; > 95% pure). At the age of three weeks, the pups were weaned onto the same diets as their mothers: 18, 20, 13 and 25 females on diets supplemented with 0.6, 6, 60 and 600 mg/kg β -carotene, respectively, and 22 and 25 males on diets supplemented with 60 and 600 mg/kg β -carotene, respectively. At the age of three weeks, all mice received a single skin application of 20 mg DMBA in 0.2 ml acetone, followed one week later by 20 weekly topical applications of 2 mg TPA in 0.2 ml acetone. There was no significant difference in body weight or survival between the groups. β -Carotene did not significantly affect the number of skin papillomas in female mice. Significantly more male mice aged 11–15 weeks developed skin papillomas when given the high dose (about 86% at 14 weeks) than the low dose (about 33% at 14 weeks; Fisher-Irwin exact test [*p* values unspecified]). The maximal number of papillomas in mice at the high dose (553 in females and 315 in males) was statistically significantly higher than in those at the lower dose: 149–339 in females and 169 in

males (Wilcoxon rank sum test [p values unspecified]). The conversion of papillomas to carcinomas—(total number of carcinomas per maximal number of papillomas) \times 1000—was much lower in mice at the high dose (0.4 for females and 0.6 for males) than at the lower doses (1.1–3.5 for females and 4.7 for males), the differences being statistically significant in males and for two of the three groups of females (Fisher-Irwin exact test and log-rank test [p values unspecified]). There was no significant difference in the time to appearance of carcinomas between the groups (log-rank test) (Chen *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted the use of vitamin A-deficient animals.]

Two groups of 45 female hairless Crl:Skh1 (hr/hr) BR mice, 80 days old, were fed standard mouse chow or chow fortified with 0.5% (w/w) β -carotene (type 1, all-*trans*, synthetic, crystalline) for 32 weeks. In week 11, all mice received a single application of 150 mg DMBA in acetone on the dorsal skin; one week later, 5 mg TPA in acetone were applied twice weekly for 11 weeks and once weekly for another nine weeks. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. The levels of β -carotene in mice that received the supplement were significantly increased in liver and skin but remained near the limit of detection in serum throughout the study. Nearly all mice had developed skin tumours towards the end of the study. In weeks 17 and 18, the incidence of skin tumours in those given β -carotene was statistically significantly lower than that in the control group ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test [no further details given]). The time to appearance of the first skin tumour was statistically significantly longer in mice given β -carotene than in the controls ($p < 0.05$; Kruskal-Wallis test [no further details given]). The cumulative number of skin tumours and their time to appearance were significantly lower in the β -carotene group ($p = 0.03$; analysis of variance) (Lambert *et al.*, 1994).

Skin papillomas were induced in 20 female CD-1 mice, eight weeks old, by dermal application of DMBA for 60 days, until 10–20 papillomas had developed in each mouse. Two groups of 10 mice were then given 200 mg/kg bw per day β -carotene in 0.1 ml peanut oil or peanut

oil alone. By day 14, the β -carotene level was 0.006 μ mol/L in serum, 0.6 nmol/g tissue in liver and 0.12 nmol/g tissue in skin papillomas, whereas no β -carotene was detected in controls. Mean food intake and mean body weights were not affected by β -carotene. The cumulative size of the skin papillomas (number of papillomas \times diameter of each papilloma), measured in each animal on days 7 and 14 after the start of β -carotene administration, was $96.8 \pm 7.6\%$ of the size at the start of the β -carotene treatment at day 7 and $96.4 \pm 5.6\%$ at day 14, the sizes in the control group being $109.0 \pm 5.4\%$ at day 7 and $117.2 \pm 10.9\%$ at day 14 ($p < 0.05$; Dunnett's t test) (Katsumura *et al.*, 1996).

(b) *Colon (Table 28)*

Mouse: Groups of female inbred Swiss Webster (ICR) mice [initial number of mice unspecified], 10 weeks old, were fed diets containing 2 or 22 mg/kg of diet (ppm) β -carotene (type III, dissolved in corn oil). After five weeks, half of the animals at each dose received seven weekly subcutaneous injections of 20.5–31 mg/kg bw 1,2-dimethylhydrazine (DMH) as the dihydrochloride in 1 mmol/L neutralized EDTA, for a total dose of DMH of 196 mg/kg bw. At week 17, 10 or 12 mice in each group given DMH and all mice not treated with DMH were killed and examined for hyperplastic colonic lesions; and at week 36, 31 animals at the low dose and 32 at the high dose were killed and examined for colon tumours. The remaining 30 mice at the low dose and 27 at the high dose were observed for an additional 13 weeks and killed when moribund. Mice fed the high dose gained significantly more weight (37.0 ± 4.0 g) than those fed the low dose of β -carotene (34.4 ± 3.4 g; $p < 0.05$; Student's t test). Food intake was similar in all groups. DMH induced mild hyperplasia of the colonic epithelium, and β -carotene did not appear to moderate this effect. Mice fed the high dose of β -carotene had fewer colon tumours than those fed the low dose. Adenomas were reduced in both incidence (low dose: 19/31, high dose: 12/32; not significant; χ^2 test) and multiplicity (low dose: 1.96 ± 1.72 , high dose: 1.17 ± 0.39 ; $p < 0.05$; Student's t test). Adenocarcinomas were reduced in both

Table 28. Effects of β -carotene on colon tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Mouse, Swiss Webster (ICR)	10-32	1,2-Dimethylhydrazine; total dose 196 mg/kg bw; subcutaneous	22 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	Hyperplasia: none Adenoma: incidence, 38% (NS); multiplicity, 40% ($p < 0.05$) Adenocarcinoma: incidence, 96% ($p < 0.001$); Multiplicity, 86% ($p < 0.05$)	Temple & Basu (1987); Basu <i>et al.</i> (1988)
Rat, Holtzman, male	28	1,2-Dimethylhydrazine; 30 mg/kg bw, subcutaneous, total dose, 480 mg/kg bw	1% in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours/cancers in colon: None (NS) ^a	Colacchio <i>et al.</i> (1989); Colacchio & Memoli (1986)
Rat, Wistar Crl, male	36	MNNG, 2 mg/rat, intrarectally twice weekly for 3 weeks	0.2/0.4% in diet	Before, during and after	Adenocarcinoma Incidence: none (NS) Adenoma: none (NS)	Jones <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Rat, Fischer 344 [sex unspecified]	25-30	Azoxymethane; 2 x 15 mg/kg bw, subcutaneous	90 mg/kg in diet	After	Large aberrant crypt foci: number, 51% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours: incidence, 26% ($p < 0.05$)	Shivapurkar <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	20-30	1,2-Dimethylhydrazine 12 weekly doses of 20 mg/kg bw; subcutaneous	0.005% in diet	Before and during	Carcinomas Incidence: 44% [SU]	Yamamoto <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Rat, Fischer-344, male	20	Azoxymethane; 2 doses of 15 mg/kg bw, subcutaneous	1, 10 and 20 mg/kg diet (high-fat, low-fibre diet)	Before, during and after	Aberrant crypt foci Low dose: 20% (NS); mid-dose: 53% ($p < 0.05$); high dose: 71% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours Low dose: 36% (NS); mid-dose: 73% ($p < 0.05$); High dose: 73% ($p < 0.05$)	Alabaster <i>et al.</i> (1995, 1996)
Rat, Fischer 344, male	15	Azoxymethane; 3 x 15 mg/kg bw, subcutaneous	50 and 200 mg/kg bw/day, orally	Before, during, after	Aberrant crypt foci: low dose: 26% ($p < 0.01$); high dose: 37% ($p < 0.01$)	Komaki <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	6	MNU, 30 x 4 mg intrarectally	0.24, 1.2 and 6 mg; gavage, daily for 2 weeks	After	Aberrant crypt foci; number/colon Low dose: none (NS) Mid dose: none (NS) High dose: none (NS)	Narisawa <i>et al.</i> (1996)

NS, not significant; MNNG, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; SU, statistics unspecified; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea

incidence, by 96% (low dose: 10/31, high dose: 1/32; $p < 0.01$; χ^2 test), and multiplicity, by 86% (low dose: 0.57 ± 0.73 , high dose: 0.08 ± 0.29 ; $p < 0.05$; Student's t test). The mortality rate of mice on the high- β -carotene diet was about half (19%) that of mice on the low- β -carotene diet (40%), but the difference was not statistically significant (Temple & Basu, 1987; Basu *et al.*, 1988).

Rat: Two groups of 28 weanling male Holtzman rats were fed regular chow supplemented with either 1% β -carotene (w/w; from beadlets containing 10% β -carotene) or 10% placebo beadlets for 24 weeks. After four weeks, all rats received 16 weekly subcutaneous injections of 30 mg/kg bw symmetrical DMH dissolved in neutral sodium hydroxide-corrected phosphate-buffered saline (total dose, 480 mg/kg bw). At 24 weeks, the animals were killed and examined for intestinal tumours. All rats had colon cancers, and β -carotene had no effect on the tumour response: 3.79 colon cancers per rat in the β -carotene group and 3.71 in the group given placebo (not significant; Colacchio & Memoli, 1986; Colacchio *et al.*, 1989).

Two groups of 36 weanling male Wistar Crl rats, three weeks old and weighing about 50 g, were fed a powdered basic diet (NIH-07 containing 10 000 IU vitamin A and 1.4 mg carotene per kg) supplemented with either 0.4% β -carotene (from beadlets containing 10% β -carotene) or placebo beadlets (4%) for two weeks. The β -carotene and placebo contents of the diets were then reduced by a factor of two, and these diets were fed until termination of the study at 25 weeks. At five weeks of age, 2 mg *N*-methyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine (MNNG; 0.15 ml of a solution of 13.4 mg/ml distilled water, pH 5) were administered intrarectally twice weekly for three weeks. Two additional groups of 18 rats did not receive MNNG and served as β -carotene and placebo control groups, respectively; a further group of eight rats served as untreated controls. There were no significant differences among the groups in body weight. β -Carotene did not affect the incidence of MNNG-induced colorectal cancer: 34/36 rats receiving β -carotene had adenocarcinomas and 17/36 had adenomas, whereas

34/35 MNNG-treated controls had adenocarcinomas and 24/35 had adenomas ($p = 0.12$; χ^2 test). The locations of the tumours were similar in the two groups (Jones *et al.*, 1989).

Fifty-five Fischer 344 rats [sex and age unspecified] were fed a 'high-risk' diet, high in fat and low in fibre, with the following composition: casein, 194.9 g/kg; DL-methionine, 2 g/kg; dextrose, 256.5 g/kg; sucrose, 256.5 g/kg; wheat bran, 25.6 g/kg; fat mixture (44.2% lard, 46.2% corn oil, 9.6% hydrogenated coconut oil, 200 g/kg); calcium-free AIN76 salt mix, 35 g/kg; modified AIN76A vitamin mix, 10 g/kg; choline bitartrate, 2 g/kg and calcium carbonate, 17.5 g/kg. After two weeks, the rats were given two subcutaneous injections of 15 mg/kg bw azoxymethane [interval between injections unspecified]. After another six weeks, 25 rats were given the diet supplemented with 90 ppm β -carotene [formulation unspecified]. Five rats fed the unsupplemented diet were killed at 10 weeks, five rats from each group at 14 and 18 weeks, and the remaining rats 30 weeks after the start of the study. There were no significant differences between the groups in body weight. β -Carotene significantly reduced the number of aberrant crypt foci ($p < 0.05$; Student's t test) and the incidence and multiplicity of colonic adenomas and adenocarcinomas. Thus, the ratio of the number of aberrant crypt foci with eight or more aberrant crypts per focus in the unsupplemented group and in the β -carotene-supplemented group at week 18 was 2.06, and colonic tumours had occurred by the end of the study in 74% of the unsupplemented and 55% of the β -carotene-supplemented groups ($p < 0.05$; Fisher exact test) [incidences estimated from a figure] at multiplicities of 1.35 and 0.70 ($p < 0.05$; Student's t test), respectively (Shivapurkar *et al.*, 1995).

Male Sprague-Dawley rats, five weeks old, were fed CE-2 basic diet either as such for 26 weeks (30 animals) or supplemented with 0.005% β -carotene (type III, from carrot [formulation in the diet unspecified]) for 14 weeks, followed by CE-2 basic diet for the final 12 weeks (20 animals). From day 3, all rats were given weekly subcutaneous injections of 20 mg/kg bw DMH for 12 weeks. At the end of week 26, all rats were killed and examined for

the presence of colon carcinomas. A group of 20 rats fed CE-2 basic diet for 26 weeks served as untreated controls. No significant differences in body weight were seen among the groups. β -Carotene reduced the incidence of colon adenocarcinomas, mucinous adenocarcinomas and signet-ring cell carcinomas from 24/30 to 9/20 [statistics unspecified] (Yamamoto *et al.*, 1994).

Four groups of 20 male Fischer 344 rats, four weeks old, were fed a high-fat (20% fat), low-fibre (1% wheat bran) diet containing 0, 1, 10 or 20 mg/kg β -carotene for 30 weeks [formulation in the diet unspecified]. All rats were given two subcutaneous injections of 15 mg/kg bw azoxymethane, one in week 3 and one in week 4. After 10 weeks, five rats per group were killed and examined for the presence of aberrant crypt foci in the colon. The remaining rats were continued on their respective diets for an additional 20 weeks and examined for the presence of colon tumours. Four comparable groups of rats were kept on the same diets and received a subcutaneous injection of saline only in weeks 3 and 4. There was no significant difference in body weight among the groups. β -Carotene reduced the number of aberrant crypt foci per rat from 44.0 ± 4.18 in the control group to 35.0 ± 3.29 in rats at 1 mg/kg β -carotene, 20.6 ± 0.68 in those at 10 mg/kg and 12.8 ± 1.96 in those at 20 mg/kg; the differences from the controls were statistically significant ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) for the two highest doses. In addition, β -carotene reduced the incidence of colon adenoma and adenocarcinoma from 11/15 in controls to 7/15 in those at 1 mg/kg β -carotene, [3/15] in those at 10 mg/kg and [3/15] in those at 20 mg/kg, the differences from controls again being statistically significant only at the two highest doses. No aberrant crypt foci or colon tumours were found in controls not treated with azoxymethane (Alabaster *et al.*, 1995, 1996) [The Working Group noted discrepancies between the two publications in the total number of aberrant crypt foci and the incidence of colon adenomas.]

Three groups of 20 male Fischer 344 rats, five weeks old, were kept on a semi-purified diet (20% casein, 59% sucrose, 4% cellulose, 0.15% choline, 4% mineral mixture, 1% vitamin mixture and 12% olive oil) and received β -carotene at 0, 50 or 200 mg/kg bw per day in

distilled water for five weeks. At six, seven and eight weeks of age, 10 rats in each group were injected subcutaneously with 15 mg/kg bw azoxymethane; the other 10 animals in each group served as controls. All rats were killed at 10 weeks of age, and the colons of five azoxymethane-treated rats and five that did not receive azoxymethane were examined for the presence and number of colonic aberrant crypts and foci. Mean food intake and mean body weight were not significantly affected by β -carotene administration. No neoplasms were found. No aberrant crypt foci were observed in the colons of controls that did not receive azoxymethane, but all rats given the carcinogen had foci. In rats given β -carotene, both the number of foci per colon and the number of crypts per colon were statistically significantly decreased ($p < 0.01$; Dunnett's *t* test) as compared with the control group; the numbers of aberrant crypt foci per colon were 217 ± 23.5 , 159.8 ± 16.4 and 135.4 ± 16.3 in controls and those at 50 and 200 mg β -carotene, and the numbers of aberrant crypts per colon were 381.2 ± 38.1 , 267.0 ± 33.8 and 223.6 ± 27.5 , respectively. The numbers of aberrant crypts per focus were also lower in rats receiving β -carotene than in controls, but the differences were not statistically significant (Komaki *et al.*, 1996). [The Working Group noted that a positive effect was noted even though β -carotene was administered in distilled water.]

Twenty four female Sprague-Dawley rats, seven weeks old, received three intrarectal instillations of 4 mg *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea (MNU) in 0.5 ml distilled water in week 1 and were then divided into four groups of six animals which received 0.2 ml corn oil containing 0, 0.24, 1.2 or 6 mg β -carotene by intragastric gavage daily during week 2 and week 5. In week 6, all rats were killed and their colons were examined for aberrant crypt foci. The numbers of aberrant crypt foci per colon were not significantly reduced by administration of β -carotene (56.1 ± 10.0 at the high dose) but were in fact slightly higher in rats at the low (74.5 ± 3.9) and intermediate (67.7 ± 3.9) doses than in the control group (62.7 ± 7.2) (Narisawa *et al.*, 1996).

(c) *Respiratory tract (Table 29)*

Mouse: Two groups of 16 male, specific pathogen-free, ddY mice, six weeks old,

Table 29. Effects of β -carotene on tumorigenesis in organs other than skin, salivary glands, buccal pouch, colon and liver

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Lung	Mouse, ddY, male	16	4-NQO, 10 mg/kg bw, single s.c. injection Glycerol (10%) in drinking-water	0.05% in drinking-water (3.27 mg/mouse per day)	During and after	Type II adenoma Incidence: none (NS) Multiplicity: none (NS)	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992)
Lung	Mouse, N:GP(S), male and female	38–41	0.5 mg B[a]P, single dose, s.c.	500 mg/kg diet	After	Adenoma Incidence: males, none (NS); females, 34% (NS) Multiplicity: males, 17% (NS); females, 40% (NS)	Yun <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Respiratory tract	Hamster, male and female	40–60	64 mg B[a]P/animal; intratracheally + 8 mg Fe ₂ O ₃	56 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	(Pre)neoplasia None (some weak indication of enhancement)	Beems (1987)
Respiratory tract	Hamster, male	?	NDEA, 17.8 mg/kg bw, s.c. twice weekly, 20 weeks	1.5 mg s.c., twice weekly for 21 weeks	Before and during	Tumour incidence, 48% (NS)	Moon <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Respiratory tract	Hamster, male	50	10 doses of 8 mg B[a]P + 8 mg Fe ₂ O ₃ over 12 weeks	56 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	(Pre)neoplasia None (some weak indication of enhancement)	Wolterbeek <i>et al.</i> (1995a)
Urinary bladder	Mouse, B6D2F ₁ [sex unspecified]	24	NBHBA, 10 weekly doses of 1.5 or 3.0 mg; gavage	5 mmol/kg diet	After	Hyperplasia and carcinomas; none (SU)	Hicks <i>et al.</i> (1984)
Urinary bladder	Mouse, B6D2F ₁	24	5 mg NBHBA, gavage, twice/week	0.1% in diet	Before, during and after	Carcinoma: incidence, 47% ($p < 0.05$)	Mathews-Roth <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Urinary bladder	Rat, Fischer 344 [sex unspecified]	About 70	NBHBA; total dose, 635 mg/rat [route unspecified]	3 mmol/kg diet	Before, during and after	Hyperplasia and carcinomas: none (SU)	Pedrick <i>et al.</i> (1990)
Forestomach	Mouse, Swiss, female	20	B[a]P; 1 mg, twice weekly, 4 weeks; gavage	4.7 mmol/animal per day, gavage	Before, during and after	Gross tumour incidence, 85% ($p < 0.001$)	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)

Table 29 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Stomach, small intestine	Rat, Wistar Crl, male	36	MNNG; 3.82–4.10 mg/kg bw per day in drinking- water	0.2/0.4% in diet	Before, during and after	Stomach, adenocarcinoma, incidence: 43% (NS) Small intestine, incidence, multiplicity: none (rather, a small increase)	Jones <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Small intestine	Rat, Holtzman, male	28	DMH; 30 mg/kg bw s.c.; total dose, 480 mg/kg bw	1% in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours: none (NS)	Colacchio & Memoli (1986); Colacchio <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Small intestine	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	20–30	DMH; 12 weekly doses of 20 mg/kg bw s.c.	0.005% in diet	Before and during	Carcinomas Incidence: none [SU]	Colacchio & Memoli (1986); Colacchio <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Pancreas	Rat, Bor(WISW, Cob) Wistar, female	40	Azaserine, 30 mg/kg bw, two i.p. injections	60 mg/kg diet	After	Preneoplasia: Number: 27% (NS – 43% ($p < 0.05$))	Appel <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Pancreas	Rat, Wistar, male	15?	Azaserine, 3 x 30 mg/kg bw; i.p.	100 and 1000 mg/kg diet	After	Preneoplasia High dose: 29% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours: None (NS)	Appel & Woutersen (1996)
Pancreas	Rat, Wistar, male	15?	Azaserine, 3 x 30 mg/kg bw; i.p.	100 and 1000 mg/diet diet	Before and during	Preneoplasia High dose: 42% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours : None (NS)	Appel & Woutersen (1996)
Pancreas	Hamster, male	40	NBOPA, 3 weekly doses of 20 mg; s.c.	60 mg/kg diet	After	Preneoplasia and carcinomas: none (NS)	Appel <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Multiple organs	Rat, F344/DUCrj Fischer, male	10–20	DMH, 40 mg/kg bw; two s.c. injections; MNU, 20 mg/kg bw; 4 i.p. injections,	0.2% in diet	After	Preneoplasia/cancers Liver cell foci: 25% (NS) Colonic carcinoma: 56% (NS) Nephroblastoma: 56% (NS)	Imaida <i>et al.</i> (1990)

4-NQO, 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide; NS, not significant; B[a]P, benzo[a]pyrene; NBHBA, *N*-nitrosobutyl(4-hydroxybutyl)amine; NBOPA, *N*-nitrosobis(oxopropyl)amine; MNNG, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitro-*N'*-nitrosoguanidine; DMH, 1,2-dimethylhydrazine; s.c., subcutaneously; i.p. intraperitoneally; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea; SU, statistics unspecified

received drinking-water containing 0.05% β -carotene (as an emulsion containing 0.5% sucrose ester P-1750, 1% Sansoft 8000, 0.2% L-ascorbyl stearate and 4% peanut oil; mean β -carotene intake, 3.27 mg/d per mouse) or the emulsion without β -carotene for four weeks. On the first day, all mice received a single subcutaneous injection of 10 mg/kg bw 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide (4-NQO) dissolved in a 20:1 mixture of olive oil and cholesterol (about 0.3 mg 4-NQO per mouse). During weeks 5–25, the drinking-water of all mice contained 10% glycerol. The mice were killed at week 30. There was no significant difference in water intake or body weight between the two groups. The percentages of mice with lung tumours (type II adenoma) were 94 and 93, and the mean numbers of lung tumours per mouse were 4.06 ± 0.18 in controls and 4.93 ± 0.28 in those given β -carotene. The size of the lung tumours [not further specified] was similar in the two groups. The study was repeated with almost similar results [no further details presented] (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992; Nishino, 1995).

Two groups of newborn male and female N:GP(S) mice, less than 24 h old, received a single subcutaneous injection into the scapular region of 0.02 ml of a suspension of 0.5 mg benzo[a]pyrene in 1% aqueous gelatin or 0.02 ml of the 1% aqueous gelatin alone. After weaning, the mice received NIH 7-open formula diet either alone (41 males and 39 females given benzo[a]pyrene; 39 male and 40 female controls) or containing 500 mg/kg β -carotene (40 males and 40 females given benzo[a]pyrene; 40 male and 38 female controls) for six weeks. Nine weeks after the benzo[a]pyrene injection, all mice were killed and examined for lung tumours. β -Carotene did not significantly affect the incidence of lung tumours (adenoma), which occurred in [15/41] males and [22/39] females given benzo[a]pyrene and [15/40] males and [15/40] females given benzo[a]pyrene plus β -carotene (χ^2 test); nor did it affect the multiplicity, which was 1.02 ± 2.17 in males and 1.38 ± 2.08 in females given benzo[a]pyrene and 0.85 ± 1.42 in males and 0.83 ± 1.81 in females given benzo[a]pyrene plus β -carotene (Student's *t* test). No lung tumours were found in mice fed only β -carotene, while 1/39 males

and 1/40 females in the group on unsupplemented diet developed a pulmonary adenoma (Yun *et al.*, 1995).

Hamster: β -Carotene was added at a dose of 56 mg/kg to a semisynthetic diet as water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β -carotene and administered to a group of weanling Syrian golden hamsters [age not further specified], initially consisting of 40 males and 40 females, for 374 days to females and 429 days to males. A group of 60 male and 60 female hamsters fed the same diet without β -carotene served as controls [use of placebo beadlets unspecified]. After an adaptation period of 30 days on the diets, all hamsters received an intratracheal instillation of 8 mg benzo[a]pyrene and 8 mg ferric oxide suspended in 0.2 ml sterile saline once every two weeks for 16 weeks. At the end of the study, the serum concentrations of β -carotene and serum retinol (free and bound to retinol-binding protein) were higher in the animals given β -carotene than in controls; however, the concentrations of both β -carotene and vitamin A in the liver were statistically significantly increased ($p < 0.01$; analysis of variance). Body weight and food intake were not affected by β -carotene. At the end of the experiment, the survival rate in one of the groups had dropped below 25% [mortality not further specified]. β -Carotene did not clearly affect the tumour response (predominantly epidermoid carcinomas, epidermoid papillomas, adenosquamous carcinomas and adenomas) in the respiratory tract, the incidences of tumours in males being 34/57 in controls and 26/38 in those given β -carotene and those in females being 37/57 and 25/36, respectively. When the tumour incidences were analysed by a method that took into account differences in mortality between the groups, however, the tumour response in the respiratory tract tended to increase in animals of each sex given β -carotene rather than to decrease ($p = 0.07$ for positive trend), and the incidences of epidermoid papillomas in the trachea, bronchi and larynx in these animals were statistically significantly increased ($p = 0.04$), as were those of all types of laryngeal tumours combined ($p = 0.03$ [incidences of tumours at these sites unspecified]). The incidence and severity of

preneoplastic changes in the respiratory tract—dysplasia in the larynx, metaplasia in the trachea and bronchi, alveolar bronchiolization in the lungs—were not affected by β -carotene (Beems, 1987).

Groups of 10–20 male Syrian golden hamsters, five to six weeks of age, were given subcutaneous injections of 1.5 mg β -carotene (micellar form dispersed in an aqueous solution, 40 mg/ml) twice a week. After one week, the animals received NDEA at 17.8 mg/kg bw by subcutaneous injection 24 h after every β -carotene injection for 20 weeks. At termination of the study after 25 weeks on the test diets, the entire respiratory tree was removed, and incidence of tumours was examined. β -Carotene reduced the tumour incidence by 48% (not significant) (Moon *et al.*, 1994).

Two groups of 50 male Syrian golden hamsters [age unspecified] were fed a pelleted diet containing 4000 IU/kg retinyl palmitate with or without 1% (w/w) β -carotene. After one month, all of the hamsters received 10 intratracheal instillations of 8 mg benzo[*a*]pyrene and 8 mg ferric oxide particles suspended in 0.2 ml saline for 12 weeks, while two groups of 20 hamsters received 10 intratracheal instillations of ferric oxide only. One week after the last instillation, six to eight hamsters in each group given benzo[*a*]pyrene were killed; the remaining survivors were killed five weeks later. The incidences of preneoplastic and neoplastic changes in the larynx, trachea and lungs were not reduced by β -carotene but on the contrary were almost twice as high in hamsters fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet: Squamous-cell carcinomas of the larynx, carcinomas *in situ*, squamous-cell carcinomas of the trachea and papillomas, squamous-cell carcinomas, adenosquamous carcinomas, adenocarcinomas and carcinosarcomas of the lungs or bronchi occurred in 15/41 animals, in comparison with 8/39 in hamsters on the control diet; however, the difference was not statistically significant ($p = 0.15$; two-sided Fisher exact probability test). The average time to appearance of the tumours was 19 weeks in animals receiving β -carotene and 18 weeks in controls. No respiratory-tract tumours were found in hamsters that

were not treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene (Wolterbeek *et al.*, 1995a).

(d) *Urinary bladder (Table 29)*

Mouse: Groups of 23–25 B6D2F₁ mice [sex and age unspecified] were given *N*-nitrosobutyl(4-hydroxybutyl)amine (NBHBA) in ethanol or ethanol alone by stomach tube: two groups received 10 weekly doses of 1.5 mg NBHBA (total dose, 15 mg), two groups received 10 weekly doses of 3.0 mg NBHBA (total dose, 30 mg), and two groups received alcohol alone [volume unspecified]. For the next six months, one group on each treatment was maintained on standard diet, while the other three groups received standard diet supplemented with 5 mmol/kg β -carotene [method and dose not further specified]. No significant effect of β -carotene was observed on the incidence of either hyperplasia or carcinoma of the urothelium, the incidences being 0/24, 7/23, 16/25, 18/24, 13/25 and 12/25 for hyperplasia and 0/24, 0/23, 6/25, 4/24, 12/25 and 11/25 for carcinoma in the vehicle controls, the β -carotene controls, the mice fed the low dose of NBHBA, those fed the low dose of NBHBA plus β -carotene, those fed the high dose of NBHBA and those given the high dose of NBHBA plus β -carotene, respectively [statistics unspecified] (Hicks *et al.*, 1984)

Two groups of 24 male B6D2F₁ mice, five to seven weeks old, were fed powdered rodent chow supplemented with either 10% β -carotene-containing beadlets (0.1% β -carotene in the diet) or the same amount of placebo beadlets, for about seven months. After five weeks, all mice received 5 mg NBHBA in saline (total dose, 90 mg) by gastric tube twice weekly for nine weeks. The mice were killed six months after the first instillation of NBHBA. β -Carotene did not affect body weight, but it reduced the incidence of urinary bladder tumours (carcinoma *in situ* and transitional-cell carcinoma) from 15/24 to 8/24 ($p < 0.05$; χ^2 test) (Mathews-Roth *et al.*, 1991).

Rat: A total of 285 weanling Fischer 344 rats [age and sex unspecified] were randomized into four groups [number of rats per group not specified], two of which received a basic vitamin A-deficient diet while the other two received the

same diet with added vitamin A palmitate [amount unspecified] for 46 days. At day 46, the diets of one of the groups on the basic diet and one of the groups with added vitamin A were supplemented with 3 mmol/kg β -carotene [not further specified]; the other group on basic diet received a low level of vitamin A palmitate in the drinking-water to maintain a healthy but vitamin A-deficient condition. After day 102, the rats were dosed [route unspecified] with 635 mg per rat NBHBA in five weekly portions, except for one-half of the rats on vitamin A-deficient basic diet with added vitamin A palmitate and β -carotene and half the rats on vitamin A-deficient basic diet receiving vitamin A palmitate in their drinking-water, which were treated with the NBHBA vehicle [unspecified] only. All rats were killed 42 weeks later, and the urinary bladders were examined histologically. The urothelium of vehicle-treated rats was normal. β -Carotene did not reduce the incidence of hyperplasia or carcinoma of the bladder epithelium in NBHBA-treated rats, hyperplasia being seen in 16/26, 16/26, 20/28 and 16/33 and carcinomas in 10/26, 10/26, 8/28 and 17/33 rats on the vitamin A-deficient basic diet with added vitamin A palmitate and β -carotene, the vitamin A-deficient basic diet with added vitamin A palmitate, the vitamin A-deficient basic diet with β -carotene and the vitamin A-deficient basic diet with vitamin A palmitate in the drinking-water, respectively (Pedrick *et al.*, 1990) [The Working Group noted the absence of information on mortality and intercurrent deaths.]

(e) *Liver (see also Table 30)*

Mouse: Groups of 17 eight-week-old male C3H/He mice, which have a high spontaneous incidence of liver tumours, received 0.005 or 0.05% β -carotene mixed with the drinking-water as an emulsion containing 0.5% sucrose ester P-1750, 1% Sansoft 8000, 0.2% L-ascorbyl stearate and 4% peanut oil, to give mean β -carotene intakes of 0.24 and 2.47 mg/d per mouse, respectively, or the emulsion without β -carotene for 40 weeks, at the end of which the mice were killed. There was no significant difference in body weight or water intake between the groups. All of the mice developed well-

differentiated hepatocellular carcinomas. β -Carotene did not significantly reduce the mean number of liver tumours per mouse, although relatively few occurred in animals at the high dose: 6.31 ± 0.62 in controls, 7.38 ± 0.83 at the low dose and 4.71 ± 0.39 at the high dose. The size [not further specified] and histological appearance of the tumours did not differ among the groups (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992).

Rat: Groups of 15 male albino Wistar rats, 50 days old and weighing about 150 g, were fed an adequate basal diet gelatinized with a 3% agar solution (water content of the diet, 50%) and another was fed the basal diet supplemented with 1 mg/kg β -carotene. After seven days, all animals receiving β -carotene and those in one of the two groups given unsupplemented basal diet received a single dose of 500 mg aflatoxin B₁ dissolved in 0.2 ml dimethylsulfoxide by stomach tube, while the other group on basal diet received 0.2 ml dimethylsulfoxide only. Three weeks after aflatoxin B₁ administration, the animals fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet were switched to basal diet. The experiment was terminated at 24 months, when all survivors were killed and examined for liver lesions. The incidence of hepatocellular carcinomas in the group treated with aflatoxin B₁ and given unsupplemented diet was 12/15; no liver tumours were found in the vehicle controls or in the group treated with aflatoxin B₁ and fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet. In these groups, 14/15 rats survived for 24 months, whereas in the group treated with aflatoxin B₁ and fed the basal diet only 7/15 animals survived (Nyandieka *et al.*, 1990). [The Working Group noted the absence of statistical analysis.]

Two groups of Wistar rats [age unspecified], weighing 90–100 g, were kept on a commercial natural diet containing 5 μ g/g diet vitamin A and 0.08 μ g/g diet β -carotene; a group of 10 received corn oil and a group of 12 received corn oil containing β -carotene (*trans*, type I; 70 mg/kg bw) intragastrically every other day for eight weeks. After two weeks, all rats received a single intraperitoneal injection of 200 mg/kg bw *N*-nitrosodiethylamine (NDEA) in 0.9% saline. Two weeks later, all rats received a single dose of 20 mg/kg bw 2-acetylaminofluorene

Table 30. Effects of β -carotene on liver tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose/route)	Carotenoid (dose/route)	Treatment period	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Mouse, C3H/He, male	17	–	0.005 and 0.05% in drinking-water (0.24 and 2.47 mg/mouse per day)	–	Liver carcinomas Incidence: none (NS) Multiplicity: low dose, none (NS); high dose, 25% (NS)	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992)
Rat, Wistar, male	15	500 mg AFB1, single dose by gavage	1 μ g/kg diet	Before and during	Hepatocellular carcinomas: 100% [SU]	Nyandieka <i>et al.</i> (1990)
Rat, Wistar, male	10–12	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. 2-AAF, 10–20 mg/kg bw, 5 daily doses, gavage; partial hepatectomy	70 mg/kg bw, gavage; 8 weeks	Before, during and after	Preneoplasia Incidence: 75% ($p < 0.005$); Number: 95% ($p < 0.05$); Area: 85% ($p < 0.01$)	Moreno <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Rat, Wistar, male	7–11	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. 2-AAF, 10–20 mg/kg bw, 5 daily doses, gavage; partial hepatectomy	70 mg/kg bw, gavage; 8 weeks	Before	Preneoplasia Incidence: 55% ($p < 0.05$) Number: 87% ($p < 0.05$) Area: 77% ($p < 0.01$)	Moreno <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Rat, Wistar, male	11	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p.; 2-AAF, 10–20 mg/kg bw, 5 daily doses, gavage	70 mg/kg bw, gavage; 8 weeks	During and after	Preneoplasia Incidence: none Number: 25% (NS) Area: 55% (NS)	Moreno <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Rat, Fischer, male	13–15	IQ (100 mg/kg bw), single dose, gavage	0.02% in diet	Before and during	GST-P ⁺ foci: Number 45% ($p < 0.001$) Area 30% ($p < 0.05$)	Tsuda <i>et al.</i> (1994)

Table 30 (contd)

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose/route)	Carotenoid (dose/route)	Treatment period	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	10-14	2-AAF, 0.05% in diet	100 mg/kg diet	Before and during; before; after	Hyperplastic liver-cell nodules Before and during: Incidence, 77% [SU] Number, 99% [SU] Before: Incidence, 60% [SU] Number, 97% [SU] After: Incidence, 37% [SU] Number, 84% [SU]	Sarkar <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Rat, Fischer, male	15-16	NDEA (200 mg/kg bw), single dose, i.p.	0.1% in the diet	After	None (NS)	Hirose <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Rat, Fischer, male	15-16	NDEA (200 mg/kg bw), single dose, i.p. + Glu-P-1 (0.03% in diet)	0.1% in the diet	After	GST-P ⁺ foci, Number: 26% ($p < 0.01$) Area: 48% ($p < 0.05$)	Hirose <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Rat, Fischer, male	15-16	NDEA (200 mg/kg bw) + NDMA (0.002% in drinking-water)	0.1% in the diet	After	None (rather an increase)	Hirose <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	8-12	3'-Met-DAB, 0.06% in diet	120 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	Hyperplastic liver-cell nodules <i>Before and during:</i> Incidence, 75% [SU] Number, 97% [SU] Multiplicity, 92% ($p < 0.001$) <i>Before:</i> Incidence, 58% [SU] Number, 92% [SU] Multiplicity, 87% ($p < 0.001$) <i>After:</i> Incidence, 37% (SU) Number, 71% [SU] Multiplicity, 67% ($p < 0.001$)	Sankar <i>et al.</i> (1995a)

Table 30 (contd)

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose/route)	Carotenoid (dose/route)	Treatment period	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	12-14	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. Phenobarbital, 0.05% in drinking-water for 12 weeks	120 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	Preneoplasia Incidence: significant [% unspecified] Number: 75% ($p < 0.001$) Volume: 66% ($p < 0.001$)	Sarkar <i>et al.</i> (1995b)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	12-14	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. Phenobarbital, 0.05% in drinking-water for 12 weeks	120 mg/kg diet	Before	Preneoplasia Incidence: significant [% unspecified] Number: 58% ($p < 0.001$) Volume: 62% ($p < 0.001$)	Sarkar <i>et al.</i> (1995b)
Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	12-14	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. Phenobarbital, 0.05% in drinking-water for 12 weeks	120 mg/kg diet	After	Preneoplasia Incidence: significant [% unspecified] Number: 41% ($p < 0.001$) Volume: 34% ($p < 0.05$)	Sarkar <i>et al.</i> (1995b)
Rat, Wistar, male	6	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. 2-AAF, 20 mg/kg bw, 6 daily doses, gavage; partial hepatectomy	70 mg/kg bw, gavage; 8 weeks	Before, during and after	Preneoplasia Incidence: 50% [SU] Number: 46% ($p < 0.05$) Area: 72% ($p < 0.05$)	Moreno <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Rat, SPF Wistar, male	10	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. 2-AAF, 50 mg/kg diet Phenobarbital, 500 ppm in diet	300 mg/kg diet, 3 weeks	Before and during	Preneoplastic foci: None (NS)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1996)

Table 30 (contd)

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose/route)	Carotenoid (dose/route)	Treatment period	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Rat, SPF Wistar, male	9–10	NDEA, 200 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p. 2-AAF, 50 mg/kg diet Phenobarbital, 500 ppm in diet	9 doses of 10 mg/kg bw; i.p.	Before and during	Preneoplastic foci: None (NS)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Rat, Fischer 344, male	12	AFB ₁ (0.25 mg/kg bw, intragastrically, for 2 weeks)	Carotenoid-rich food extract, 250 mg/kg bw intragastrically	Initiating or post-initiating phase	Decrease in foci diameter ($p < 0.05$), decrease in number of foci/cm ³ ($p < 0.05$)	He <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Rat, SPF Wistar, male	7–9	2-Nitropropane 6 x 100 mg/kg bw, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: none (NS)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Rat, SPF Wistar, male	9–10	NDEA, 100 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 58% (NS)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Rat, SPF Wistar, male	9–10	AFB ₁ , 2 x 1 mg/kg bw, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 83% ($p < 0.05$)	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1998)

From Appel & Woutersen (1996)

NS, not significant; AFB₁, aflatoxin B₁; SU, statistics unspecified; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; i.p., intraperitoneally; 2-AAF, 2-acetylaminofluorene; IQ, 2-amino-3-methylimidazo[4,5-*f*]quinoline;

GST-P⁺, glutathione *S*-transferase placental form-positive; Glu-P-1, 2-amino-6-methyldipyrido[1,2- α :3'2'-*d*]imidazole; NDMA, *N*-nitrosodimethylamine; 3'-Met-DAB, 3'-methyl-4-dimethylaminoazobenzene

(2-AAF) dissolved in corn oil by gavage for four consecutive days and were subjected one day later to a two-thirds hepatectomy. Four days later, a last dose of 10 mg/kg bw 2-AAF was given by gavage. All rats were killed eight weeks after the start of the experiment. The body weights were statistically significantly higher in the β -carotene group (309 ± 31 g) than in the control group (264 ± 30 g; $p < 0.005$; Student's *t* test). The hepatic concentration of β -carotene was enhanced in animals that received it for eight weeks (1.79 ± 0.42) in comparison with controls (0.84 ± 0.14) and in those that received it for six weeks after initiation (2.23 ± 1.71 ; 1.57 ± 1.89 in controls) but not in those that received β -carotene only for two weeks in the initiation study (0.72 ± 0.07 ; 1.34 ± 1.44 in controls). β -Carotene reduced the incidence of hyperplastic nodules from 10/10 to 3/12 ($p < 0.005$; Student's *t* test), the total number of nodules from 581 to 8, the number of nodules per cm^2 from 33.7 ± 29.3 to 1.7 ± 1.4 ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) and the total area of the nodules from 0.62 ± 0.24 to 0.10 ± 0.09 mm^2 ($p < 0.005$; Student's *t* test) (Moreno *et al.*, 1991).

Two groups of male rats were similarly treated, except that β -carotene in corn oil was administered to 11 rats and corn oil to seven rats only during the first two weeks of the experiment (initiation study). There was no significant difference in body weight between the two groups. β -Carotene reduced the incidence of hyperplastic nodules from 7/7 to 5/11 ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test), the total number of nodules from 302 to 18, the number of nodules per cm^2 from 14.3 ± 18.5 to 1.9 ± 2.0 ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) and the total area of the nodules from 0.35 ± 0.20 to 0.08 ± 0.07 mm^2 ($p < 0.005$; Student's *t* test).

Another two groups of 11 male rats were treated similarly, except that administration of corn oil with or without β -carotene was begun after two weeks and NDEA was administered on the first day of the experiment (selection-promotion study). There was no significant difference in body weight between the two groups. β -Carotene had no significant effect on the selection-promotion phase of liver carcinogenesis: the incidences of hyperplastic nodules were 7/11 in both groups, the total number of

nodules was 1143 in controls and 138 in the β -carotene group, the number of nodules per cm^2 was 18.9 ± 18.8 in controls and 14.2 ± 19.5 in the β -carotene group (not significant; Student's *t* test), and the total area of the nodules was 0.38 ± 0.33 in controls and 0.17 ± 0.14 mm^2 in the β -carotene group (not significant; Student's *t* test) (Moreno *et al.*, 1991).

Two groups of 13 or 15 male, six-week old Fischer rats were given basal diet containing 0 or 0.02% β -carotene for eight days [formulation in diet unspecified]. On day 7, each rat was given a single dose of 100 mg/kg bw 2-amino-3-methylimidazo[4,5-*f*]quinoline (IQ) by gavage 12 h after a two-thirds hepatectomy. After two weeks on basal diet without added β -carotene, all rats were fed basal diet containing 0.05% phenobarbital for eight weeks. One week after the start of the phenobarbital feeding, each rat received a single intraperitoneal injection of 100 mg/kg bw D-galactosamine. Two additional groups of five rats each, fed basal diet with or without 0.02% β -carotene, did not receive the intragastric dose of IQ but were otherwise treated in the same way as the two other groups. At 11 weeks, all survivors were killed, and the livers were examined for the presence of placental glutathione *S*-transferase-positive (GST-P⁺) foci (areas > 70 μm in diameter). The body weights of the rats treated with β -carotene and IQ were slightly, statistically significantly lower than those of the rats treated only with IQ ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test). β -Carotene significantly reduced both the number per cm^2 and the area (mm^2/cm^2) of GST-P⁺ foci, the numbers being 14.54 ± 4.04 and 7.99 ± 3.14 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) and the areas being $107\ 674 \pm 42\ 178$ and $74\ 949 \pm 33\ 221$ ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) for the rats given IQ and those given β -carotene plus IQ, respectively. No significant induction of GST-P⁺ foci was found in the rats not given IQ (Tsuda *et al.*, 1994).

trans- β -Carotene administered at a dose of 100 mg/kg diet before and during the initiation and selection-promotion phase (20 weeks), only during the initiation phase (four weeks) or only during the selection-promotion phase (10 weeks) to groups of 10–14 male Sprague-Dawley rats weighing 130–150 g [age unspecified] reduced the incidence and total number of

hyperplastic nodules induced in liver cells by 2-AAF at 0.05% in the diet for 16 weeks. The incidences of nodules were 13/13, 3/13, 4/10 and 7/11 and the total numbers were > 600, 8, 18 and 94 in the 2-AAF-treated animals and the groups receiving the β -carotene-supplemented diet before and during the initiation and selection-promotion phase, only during the initiation phase or only during the selection-promotion phase, respectively [no statistical analysis reported]. In each group receiving β -carotene, the β -carotene content of the liver was two to four times higher than that in controls (0.35 $\mu\text{g/g}$ liver) (Sarkar *et al.*, 1994).

trans- β -Carotene administered at a dose of 120 mg/kg diet before and during the initiation and selection-promotion phase (20 weeks), only during the initiation phase (four weeks) or only during the selection-promotion phase (10 weeks) to groups of 8–12 male Sprague-Dawley rats weighing 130–150 g [age unspecified] reduced the incidence, total number and multiplicity of hyperplastic nodules induced in the liver by 3'-methyl-4-dimethylaminoazobenzene (3'-Met-DAB) at 0.06% in the diet for 16 weeks. The incidence, total number and multiplicity (average number of nodules per nodule-bearing liver) of hyperplastic nodules in the three groups were: incidence: 8/8, 3/12, 5/12 and 7/11; numbers: 350, 10, 28 and 102; and multiplicity: 43.75 ± 11.31 , 3.3 ± 1.15 , 5.6 ± 2.07 and 14.57 ± 2.99 (for the last measure, $p < 0.001$ for all three groups; Student's *t* test [no statistical analysis reported for incidence or total number of nodules]). In the groups receiving β -carotene, the level of this carotenoid in the liver was two to four times higher than that in controls (0.39 $\mu\text{g/g}$ liver) (Sarkar *et al.*, 1995a).

Seven groups of 15 or 16 male Fischer 344 rats, six weeks old, with an average body weight of 150.2 g, were given a single intraperitoneal injection of 200 mg/kg bw NDEA and were fed basal diet for two weeks. Two of the groups received unsupplemented basal diet for another six weeks, and the other five groups received the basal diet supplemented with 0.1% β -carotene (in gelatin as coating material), 0.03% 2-amino-6-methyldipyridol[1,2- α :3',2'-*d*]imidazole (Glu-P-1), 0.3% Glu-P-1 plus 0.1% β -carotene, 0.002% *N*-nitrosodimethylamine

(NDMA) or 0.002% NDMA plus 0.1% β -carotene for six weeks. At the end of week 3, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. There were no significant differences in body weight or relative liver weight between the groups, except for a statistically significantly reduced liver weight in rats fed the diet with Glu-P-1 plus β -carotene (3.34 g/100 g bw) as compared with that in rats fed the diet with Glu-P-1 alone (3.60 g/100 g bw) ($p < 0.05$), which in turn was significantly greater than that of rats fed the unsupplemented basal diet (3.20 g/100 g bw) ($p < 0.001$ [statistical test unspecified]). β -Carotene significantly reduced the development of NDEA plus Glu-P-1-induced GST-P⁺ foci in the liver, the numbers and areas of the foci in rats fed β -carotene plus Glu-P-1 being $34.4 \pm 10.5/\text{cm}^2$ and $6.2 \pm 2.8 \text{ mm}^2/\text{cm}^2$ versus $46.8 \pm 11.0/\text{cm}^2$ and $12.0 \pm 5.6 \text{ mm}^2/\text{cm}^2$ in those fed Glu-P-1, respectively ($p < 0.01$ for the number and < 0.05 for the area [statistical test unspecified]). β -Carotene significantly increased the development of NDEA plus NDMA-induced GST-P⁺ foci, the numbers and areas of foci in the animals fed β -carotene plus NDMA being $20.9 \pm 5.1/\text{cm}^2$ and $2.9 \pm 1.2 \text{ mm}^2/\text{cm}^2$ versus $16.5 \pm 3.9/\text{cm}^2$ and $2.1 \pm 1.0 \text{ mm}^2/\text{cm}^2$ in those treated with NDMA, respectively ($p < 0.05$ for the number; the difference is not significant for the area [statistical test unspecified]). β -Carotene did not affect the development of GST-P⁺ foci induced by NDEA alone, the numbers and areas of foci in rats fed β -carotene plus NDEA being $3.5 \pm 1.5/\text{cm}^2$ and $0.3 \pm 0.3 \text{ mm}^2/\text{cm}^2$ versus $3.8 \pm 1.6/\text{cm}^2$ and $0.4 \pm 0.2 \text{ mm}^2/\text{cm}^2$ in those treated with NDEA, respectively [statistical test unspecified] (Hirose *et al.*, 1995).

Two groups of 12–14 male Sprague-Dawley rats weighing 130–150 g [age unspecified] were fed a purified basal diet alone or supplemented with 120 mg/kg β -carotene for 20 weeks, followed by the unsupplemented diet during the final two weeks of the study. After four weeks, all rats received a single intraperitoneal injection of 200 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline. Four weeks later, all rats were given drinking-water containing 0.05% phenobarbital for 12 weeks; during the final two weeks of the study, all rats received unsupplemented drinking-

water. At 22 weeks, the rats were killed and examined for hyperplastic nodules in the liver. β -Carotene significantly decreased (Student's *t* test) the incidence of nodules and the total area of the liver parenchyma occupied by the nodules [no further data presented]. Moreover, β -carotene reduced the number of hyperplastic nodules per cm^3 liver from 1664.75 ± 184.49 to 421 ± 46.24 , and the volume per 0.1 mm^3 from 1.90 ± 0.19 to 0.64 ± 0.17 ($p < 0.001$ for both number and volume; Student's *t* test). Similar results were found in additional groups of rats treated comparably but fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet only during the first four weeks of the study, before the NDEA injection (initiation study) or only during weeks 10–20 (selection–promotion study). The number of hyperplastic nodules per cm^3 liver was reduced from 1664.75 ± 184.49 to 702.75 ± 24.12 and the volume per 0.1 mm^3 from 1.90 ± 0.19 to 0.73 ± 0.10 ($p < 0.01$ for both number and volume; Student's *t* test) in the initiation study. In the selection–promotion study, the number was reduced from 1664.75 ± 184.49 to 989.25 ± 83.77 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) and the volume per 0.1 mm^3 from 1.90 ± 0.19 to 1.26 ± 0.43 ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) (Sarkar *et al.*, 1995b).

Two groups of six male Wistar rats weighing 60–70 g [age unspecified] were kept on regular chow pellets containing $0.24 \mu\text{g/g}$ diet β -carotene and $20 \mu\text{g/g}$ diet vitamin A and received either corn oil or corn oil containing 70 mg/kg bw *trans*- β -carotene (type I) by gavage for eight weeks. After two weeks, each rat received a single intraperitoneal injection of 200 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline. Two weeks later, all rats were given 20 mg/kg bw 2-AAF dissolved in corn oil by gavage on four consecutive days, followed on the fifth day by a two-thirds hepatectomy; two and four days later, all rats again received 20 mg/kg bw 2-AAF in corn oil by gavage. Eight weeks after the start of the study, all rats were killed. The average body weight of rats fed β -carotene ($266.8 \pm 10.1 \text{ g}$) was significantly higher than that of the controls ($244.3 \pm 17.8 \text{ g}$) ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test). The concentration of β -carotene in the liver was increased from $0.06 \pm 0.06 \mu\text{g/g}$ liver in controls to $0.34 \pm 0.40 \mu\text{g/g}$ liver in rats fed β -carotene. β -Carotene reduced the incidence

of hyperplastic nodules from 6/6 to 3/6, the total number of nodules from 1691 to 23, the number of hepatocyte nodules per cm^2 from 37.1 ± 9.7 to 20.1 ± 12.5 ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) and the total area of the nodules from 0.54 ± 0.39 to $0.15 \pm 0.06 \text{ mm}^2$ ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) (Moreno *et al.*, 1995).

Two groups of 10 male SPF Wistar rats, 24–27 days old, were fed a semiliquid purified diet containing 10% corn oil and 6000 IU/kg vitamin A and supplemented with 300 mg/kg β -carotene from a 10% dispersible powder or the same diet supplemented with placebo powder for 21 days, followed by the same diet with no supplement for 21 days. On day 15, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 200 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline. 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 42–56. On day 49, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. From day 56 to the end of the experiment (day 70), the diets were supplemented with 500 ppm phenobarbital. The liver β -carotene content in the group fed this compound was $30.4 \pm 3.0 \mu\text{g/g}$ after 15 days of feeding and remained significant on day 49 ($4.7 \pm 0.9 \mu\text{g/g}$ liver) and at the end of the experiment ($1.1 \pm 0.3 \mu\text{g/g}$ liver), indicating good absorption of the compound. There was no significant difference in body weight between the two groups. β -Carotene did not significantly inhibit (one-sided Dunnett's test and one-sided *t* test) the number of γ -glutamyltranspeptidase-positive (GGT⁺) liver foci (28.7 ± 3.1 versus 28.4 ± 2.3 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (51.2 ± 5.3 versus 51.4 ± 7.6 in controls), the mean area of GGT⁺ foci ($0.156 \pm 0.02 \text{ mm}^2$ versus $0.145 \pm 0.017 \text{ mm}^2$ in controls), the mean area of GST-P⁺ foci ($0.167 \pm 0.027 \text{ mm}^2$ versus $0.146 \pm 0.023 \text{ mm}^2$ in controls), the area occupied by GGT⁺ foci ($4.88 \pm 0.90\%$ versus $4.39 \pm 0.82\%$ in controls) or the area occupied by GST-P⁺ foci ($7.64 \pm 1.02\%$ versus $7.49 \pm 1.45\%$ in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1996).

Male SPF Wistar rats, 24–27 days old, were fed a semiliquid purified diet containing 10% corn oil, 6000 IU/kg vitamin A and 3 g/kg carotenoid placebo powder for 21 days, followed by the same diet with no supplement for 21 days. Ten animals were then injected intraperitoneally with 10 mg/kg bw emulsified

β -carotene three times per week during the first three weeks of the experiment (total β -carotene dose, 90 mg/kg bw), while nine controls were injected with the placebo emulsion. On day 15, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 200 mg/kg bw NDEA bw in 0.9% saline. 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 42–56. On day 49, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. From day 56 to the end of the experiment (day 70), the diets were supplemented with 500 ppm phenobarbital. There was no significant difference in body weight between the two groups. The β -carotene content of the liver in the group fed this compound was $43.0 \pm 3.4 \mu\text{g/g}$ on day 15 of the experiment and remained significant on day 49 ($2.1 \pm 0.9 \mu\text{g/g}$ liver) and at the end of the experiment ($0.4 \pm \mu\text{g/g}$ liver), indicating good incorporation into the liver. β -Carotene did not significantly inhibit (one-sided Dunnett's test and one-sided *t* test) the number of GGT⁺ foci (31.4 ± 3.5 versus 37.1 ± 2.5 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (52.1 ± 7.7 versus 47.1 ± 4.6 in controls), the mean area of GGT⁺ foci ($0.149 \pm 0.041 \text{ mm}^2$ versus $0.150 \pm 0.015 \text{ mm}^2$ in controls), the mean area of GST-P⁺ foci ($0.151 \pm 0.037 \text{ mm}^2$ versus $0.153 \pm 0.013 \text{ mm}^2$ in controls), the area occupied by GGT⁺ foci ($4.59 \pm 1.09\%$ versus $5.58 \pm 0.59\%$ in controls) or the area occupied by GST-P⁺ foci ($6.93 \pm 1.15\%$ versus $7.22 \pm 0.87\%$ in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1996).

Male Fischer 344 rats, weighing 40–50 g, were acclimatized for two weeks and then randomized into experimental groups of 12 animals each. As the initiation stage, aflatoxin B₁ was administered intragastrically at daily doses of 0.25 mg/kg bw, dissolved in tricapylin at a concentration of 250 mg/ml, for two periods of five days each with two days between dosing periods. Carotenoid-rich food extracts were prepared by repeated chloroform extraction of tomato paste (rich in lycopene), orange-juice concentrate (rich in β -cryptoxanthin) or tinned sliced carrots (rich in α - and β -carotene). The carotenoid content of each extract was estimated by high-performance liquid chromatography; solvents were removed under nitrogen, and the extracts were diluted to 500 mg/ml with tricapylin. The carotenoid extracts were given by gavage at a dose of 250 mg/kg bw

during the initiation phase immediately after the aflatoxin B₁; after a one-week recovery period, they were given by gavage every second day for 12 weeks (i.e. the post-initiation phase, experimental weeks 3–15). At experimental week 15, GGT⁺ foci in liver were measured as an indicator of hepatocarcinogenesis. The foci were significantly smaller in the groups treated with extracts of carrot (129 mm) and tomato (132 mm) during the post-initiation phase than in the control group (309 mm; $p < 0.05$). The number of foci per cm³ was significantly lower in the groups treated with extracts of carrot (0.002), tomato (0.06) and orange (0.0001) during the initiation phase than in the control group (1.86; $p < 0.05$). The final body weights varied slightly among the groups, but administration of carotenoids during the initiation phase resulted in higher weights (He *et al.*, 1997).

Wistar rats, 24–27 days old, were fed either a semiliquid purified diet containing 10% corn oil and 6000 IU/kg vitamin A supplemented with 300 mg/kg β -carotene from a 10% dispersible powder or the same diet supplemented with placebo powder for 28 days, followed by the same diet with no supplement for 21 days. On days 14, 16, 18, 21, 23 and 25, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 100 mg/kg bw 2-nitropropane in 2% Tween 20. 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 49–63. On day 56, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. From day 63 to the end of the experiment (day 70), the rats received unsupplemented diet. The β -carotene content of the livers of rats fed this carotenoid was still $1.9 \pm 0.5 \mu\text{g/g}$ liver at the time of partial hepatectomy, i.e. four weeks after cessation of β -carotene feeding. β -Carotene did not significantly inhibit the onset of preneoplastic foci in the liver, as seen from the number of GGT⁺ foci per cm³ liver (407 ± 67 versus 371 ± 53 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (1000 ± 230 versus 703 ± 120 in controls), the mean volume (10^{-3} mm^3) of GGT⁺ foci (31.7 ± 7.5 versus 62.4 ± 20.6 in controls), the mean volume of GST-P⁺ foci (34.1 ± 3.9 versus 59.9 ± 13.5 in controls), the fraction of the liver volume (mm^3/cm^3) occupied by GGT⁺ foci (10.0 ± 4.2 versus 15.7 ± 5.5 in controls) or the fraction of the liver

volume occupied by GST⁺ foci (30.3 ± 11.0 versus 33.4 ± 8.6 in controls (Astorg *et al.*, 1997).

In a similar study, the animals were fed the same diets for 21 days, followed by the diet with no supplement for 21 days. On day 14, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 100 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline; 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 42–56; all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy on day 49; and the rats received unsupplemented diet from day 56 to the end of the experiment on day 63. β -Carotene did not significantly inhibit the number of GGT⁺ foci/cm³ liver (251 ± 66 versus 205 ± 40 in controls) or the number of GST-P⁺ foci (1991 ± 285 versus 1853 ± 327 in controls); it decreased (not significantly) the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GGT⁺ foci (23.4 ± 6.3 versus 61.0 ± 14.1 in controls), the mean volume of GST⁺ foci (13.4 ± 3.4 versus 27.1 ± 8.4 in controls), the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GGT⁺ foci (5.4 ± 2.4 versus 10.8 ± 3.6 in controls) and the fraction of the liver volume occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (21.2 ± 5.3 versus 50.7 ± 17.3 in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1997).

In a study of similar design, all rats were injected intraperitoneally on days 13 and 19 with 1 mg/kg bw aflatoxin B₁ in 50% dimethylsulfoxide in water; 50 mg/kg 2-AAF were added to the diet on days 42–56; all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy on day 49; and the rats received unsupplemented diet on days 56–63 (end of the study). The β -carotene content of the livers of rats receiving the compound was still 9.2 ± 1.4 μ g/g liver at the time of partial hepatectomy, i.e. four weeks after cessation of β -carotene feeding. β -Carotene significantly inhibited the onset of liver preneoplastic foci; i.e. the number of GST-P⁺ foci (318 ± 107 versus 773 ± 169 in controls), the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GST-P⁺ foci (24.3 ± 4.3 versus 107.8 ± 46.8 in controls) and the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (9.5 ± 4.0 versus 55.4 ± 17.6 in controls) (Gradelet *et al.*, 1998).

(f) *Buccal pouch (Table 31)*

Hamster: Buccal pouch tumours were induced in 30 randomly bred male Syrian hamsters [age

unspecified] by topical application of DMBA (as 620 μ g/ml heavy mineral oil), three times a week for 22 weeks; 15 hamsters were not treated with the carcinogen. The day after the last treatment with DMBA, the tumours of two groups of 10 hamsters were painted with 250 μ g/ml β -carotene [unspecified source] in mineral oil or mineral oil alone twice a week for four weeks, while the other group of DMBA-treated animals received no further treatment; 10 of the controls were treated with β -carotene and the other five with mineral oil. At the end of treatment with β -carotene, buccal pouch tumours were found in 2/10 hamsters that received the carotenoid and in all animals treated with DMBA or DMBA plus mineral oil. The mean numbers of tumours per animal were 1.50 ± 0.53 in the group given DMBA, 0.25 ± 0.46 in those given DMBA plus β -carotene ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) and 1.50 ± 0.37 in those given DMBA plus mineral oil. No tumours were found in hamsters treated with β -carotene or mineral oil only (Schwartz *et al.*, 1986).

Groups of 10 male randomly bred Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 96–120 g, were painted on the left buccal pouch with a 0.25% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.6 mg DMBA on the pouch surface) three times per week, treated similarly with DMBA and also painted with a 2.5% solution of β -carotene in mineral oil (about 0.62 mg β -carotene on the pouch surface) three times per week on alternate days to DMBA, painted with β -carotene alone or untreated. All of the hamsters were killed 22 weeks after the start of the study. All of the DMBA-induced buccal pouch tumours were moderately to well-differentiated epidermoid carcinomas. β -Carotene reduced the tumour incidence from 9/10 to 4/10 ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test), the total number of tumours from 20 to 12 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test), their mean diameter from 2.87 ± 1.5 mm to 0.98 ± 0.86 mm ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) and the tumour burden (total number of buccal pouch tumours \times mean volume of tumours) from 242 to 6 mm³ ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). Moreover, the carcinomas in the β -carotene-treated animals were less pleomorphic, better differentiated, less invasive and formed more keratin than those in the animals treated with DMBA only. No buccal pouch tumours were

Table 31. Effects of β -carotene on buccal pouch tumorigenesis in male hamsters

No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
5-10	DMBA, 620 μ g/ml; painting	250 μ g/ μ l; painted onto tumours	After	Regression tumour incidence: 80% [SU] Tumour multiplicity: 83% ($p < 0.001$)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1986)
10	0.25% DMBA in oil \pm 0.6 mg, painting	2.5% in oil; \pm 0.62 mg; painted three times/week	During	Tumour incidence: 56% ($p < 0.001$) Tumour burden: 74% ($p < 0.001$)	Suda <i>et al.</i> (1986)
10	0.1% DMBA in oil \pm 0.24 mg; painting	190 ng/ml oil; painted three times/week	During and after	Tumour incidence: 60-80% ($p < 0.001$) Tumour burden: 93-97% ($p < 0.001$)	Suda <i>et al.</i> (1986)
10	0.25% DMBA; 25 mg/kg bw, 3 times/week	0.025% solution (25 mg/kg bw) painted on buccal pouch	During	Carcinomas Incidence: 56% ($p < 0.001$) Burden: 51% ($p < 0.001$)	Suda <i>et al.</i> (1987)
20	0.5% DMBA; 3 times/week	250 μ g, injected into cheek pouch three times/week	After	Epidermoid carcinomas; regression Complete: 20% [SU] Partial: 80% [SU]	Schwartz & Shklar (1987)
10	0.5% DMBA; 0.4 mg/painting	250 μ g/injection into pouches	After	Carcinoma burden: 98% [SU]	Schwartz & Shklar (1988)
20	0.5% DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting; 3 times/week	0.19 mg injected into buccal pouch 3 times/week	After	Carcinomas; regression Burden: 93% [SU]	Shklar & Schwartz (1988)
20	0.1% DMBA; painting 3 times/week for 28 weeks	0.14 mg/ painting (1.5 mg/kg bw) 3 times/week	During	Carcinomas Incidence (gross tumours): 45% [SU] Multiplicity: 45-49% [SU] Burden: 40-55% ($p < 0.001$)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1988)
20	0.5% DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting	400 μ g animal/day; by mouth	After	Carcinomas: none [SU]	Shklar <i>et al.</i> (1989)
20	0.15% DMBA; 0.4 mg/painting	1.4 mg/kg bw, gavage	During	Carcinoma incidence: 45% (NS) Carcinoma burden: 98% ($p < 0.001$) Carcinoma onset: 25% (NS)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1989)

Table 31 (contd)

No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	Beta-carotene, dose, route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
20	0.25% DMBA; painting 3 times/week	2.5%; painting 3 times/week	During	Tumours Incidence: 50% at one time ($p < 0.05$) During: Incidence, 70% ($p < 0.001$) Burden: 97% ($p < 0.001$) After: Incidence: 60% ($p < 0.001$) Burden: 91% ($p < 0.001$) During promotion: Incidence: 80% ($p < 0.001$) Burden: 96% ($p < 0.001$)	Hibino <i>et al.</i> (1990)
15–20	0.125 mg DMBA/ application	250 mg/topical application	After	Cheek pouch and forestomach tumours: 100% [SU]	Gijare <i>et al.</i> (1990)
10	0.5% DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting	3.8 µg in liposomes/ submucosal injection	After	Regression of carcinoma burden: 99.7% ($p < 0.05$)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1991)
10	0.5% DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting	4 µg/ submucosal injection	After	Regression carcinoma burden: 59% [SU]	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1991)
15	AcO-NDMA; 2 mg/kg bw/painting; twice weekly; 6 months	5.8 nmol/L in drinking-water	Before, during and after	Tumours Incidence: 92% ($p < 0.001$) Burden: 100% ($p < 0.001$) Latency: 33% [SU]	Azuine & Bhide (1992)
10	0.5% DMBA; painting 3 times/week	50 µg/topical application	During	Tumour burden: 85% ($p < 0.001$)	Shklar <i>et al.</i> (1993)
10	DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting; 3 times/week; 14 weeks	10 mg/kg bw; painting; 3 times/week; 14 weeks	During	Carcinomas Incidence: 10% [SU] Number: 53% [SU] Burden: 18% (NS)	Schwartz & Shklar (1997)

DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; SU, statistics unspecified; NS, not significant; AcO-NDMA, N-nitroso(acetoxymethyl)methylamine

found in animals treated with β -carotene alone or in untreated controls (Suda *et al.*, 1986).

Groups of 10 hamsters similar to those used above were painted on the left buccal pouch with a 0.1% DMBA solution in oil [dose unspecified] for 10 weeks followed by no treatment for the next six weeks and then painted with a 40% benzoyl peroxide solution in acetone for the next nine weeks; painted on the left buccal pouch as in group 1 but also painted during the first 10 weeks with 190 ng/ml β -carotene in mineral oil three times per week on alternate days to DMBA; painted on the left buccal pouch as in group 1 but also treated with β -carotene three times per week during the six weeks of no DMBA treatment; painted on the left buccal pouch as in group 1 but also painted with β -carotene three times per week on alternate days to benzoyl peroxide during the last nine weeks; painted on the left buccal pouch as in group 1 but also painted with mineral oil three times per week on alternate days to DMBA during the first 10 weeks; painted on the left buccal pouch as in group 1 but also painted with mineral oil three times per week during the six weeks of no DMBA treatment; painted on the left buccal pouch as in group 1 but also with mineral oil three times per week on alter-

nate days to benzoyl peroxide during the last nine weeks; or were untreated. All animals were killed at 28 weeks. β -Carotene, whether applied simultaneously with DMBA, immediately after DMBA or simultaneously with benzoyl peroxide, significantly reduced the incidence of buccal pouch epidermoid carcinomas, the total number of these tumours, their mean diameter and the tumour burden (Table 32). Moreover, the tumours found in the β -carotene-treated animals were generally smaller and tended to be less invasive than those in the DMBA-treated animals not painted with β -carotene (Suda *et al.*, 1986).

Groups of 10 male Syrian hamsters [age unspecified] were painted on the left buccal pouch with a 0.25% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 22 weeks, similarly treated with DMBA and also painted with a 0.25% solution of β -carotene in mineral oil (0.25 mg/ml; 25 mg/kg bw) three times per week on alternate days to DMBA, painted with β -carotene or untreated. All animals were killed at 22 weeks. No buccal pouch tumours were found in untreated controls or animals treated with β -carotene only. β -Carotene reduced the number of animals with well- to moderately differentiated epidermoid carcinomas of the buccal pouch, from 9/10 to 4/10 ($p < 0.001$; χ^2

Table 32. Incidence, total number, diameter and total burden of buccal pouch tumours in groups of 10 male Syrian hamsters after repeated topical painting with 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (DMBA) alone or combined with β -carotene (BC)

First ten weeks	Treatment during		Tumour response of the buccal pouch			
	Next six weeks	Next nine weeks ^a	Incidence	Total no.	Mean diameter (mm)	Total burden (mm ³)
DMBA	–	BeP	10/10	34	3.2 \pm 1.4	582.1
DMBA + BC	–	BeP	3/10 ^c	3 ^d	2.1 \pm 0.78 ^d	15.3 ^d
DMBA	BC	BeP	4/10 ^c	7 ^d	2.4 \pm 0.41 ^d	50.4 ^d
DMBA	–	BeP + BC	2/1 ^c	5 ^d	2.3 \pm 0.26 ^d	32 ^d
DMBA + oil	–	BeP	8/10	28	ND	ND
DMBA	Oil	BeP	10/10	31	ND	ND
DMBA	–	BeP + oil	9/10	26	ND	ND
–	–	–	0/10	0	0	0

From Suda *et al.* (1986); ND, not determined

^a Benzoyl peroxide (BeP) used as promoter

^b Total number of tumours x mean tumour volume

^c χ^2 ; $p < 0.001$ in comparison with first group

^d Student's *t* test; $p < 0.001$ in comparison with first group

test) and the mean tumour burden from 2.88 ± 1.49 to 1.40 ± 0.76 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). The tumours in β -carotene-treated animals were generally less invasive, better differentiated, less pleomorphic and had more keratin than the tumours in animals treated only with DMBA (Suda *et al.*, 1987).

Epidermoid carcinomas were produced in the right buccal pouches of three groups of 20 adult male Syrian golden hamsters [age not further specified] by painting with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 13 weeks. Then, the right buccal pouches were injected with 0.1 ml of a solution of about 250 μ g β -carotene in solvent added to minimal essential medium or with 0.1 ml the medium alone (sham-injected controls); 20 hamsters were not further treated. The experiment was terminated at 17 weeks. The body weights of the sham-injected DMBA controls (about 85 g) were consistently lower than those given β -carotene (120 g) and the uninjected animals (100 g). No tumour regression was seen in sham-injected or uninjected hamsters, all of which had multiple, large cheek-pouch tumours; two uninjected controls and one sham-injected animal died intercurrently with very large tumours and infection. β -Carotene caused complete gross tumour regression in 4/20 hamsters and partial regression in 16/20. In general, regression of large and multiple tumours tended to be incomplete, whereas total regression was usually seen of small or moderate tumours. The tumours in regression showed degeneration and infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages, which often contained tumour necrosis factor. Stratified squamous epithelium adjacent to carcinomas with severe destruction was relatively unaffected and appeared essentially normal (Schwartz & Shklar, 1987).

Sixty randomly bred male Syrian hamsters, two to three months old, were painted on the right buccal pouch with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.4 mg DMBA per painting) three times per week for 14 weeks, when each hamster appeared to have well-to-moderately differentiated epidermoid carcinomas of the buccal pouch. Then, the animals were divided randomly into three groups of 20 animals each: the tumour-bearing pouch

was injected twice weekly with 0 or 250 μ g β -carotene in 0.1 ml minimal essential medium or was not injected. After four weeks, all of the hamsters were killed, and the numbers and sizes of the buccal pouch tumours were recorded. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. β -Carotene reduced the buccal pouch tumour burden (average tumour volume x number of tumours) from 2258.9 ± 5.6 mm³ (sham controls) or 2150.4 ± 5.0 mm³ (uninjected controls) to 42.7 ± 1.2 mm³ [number and size of tumours unspecified; no information on statistical analysis]. In the β -carotene-treated hamsters but not the controls, many buccal pouch tumours showed cellular degeneration and dense infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages (Schwartz & Shklar, 1988).

The right buccal pouches of 60 male Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 95–125 g were painted with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.6 mg DMBA per painting) three times a week for 14 weeks, when all hamsters had obvious, gross cheek pouch tumours of variable size and number. They were then divided into three groups of 20 animals each, which were either not further treated or received injections into the right cheek pouch of 0.1 ml solvent plus minimal essential medium alone or containing 0.19 mg β -carotene, three times per week for four weeks. β -Carotene reduced the total burden of the moderate papillary epidermoid carcinomas from 1400 mm³ in the hamsters given DMBA or sham-injected with DMBA to 100 mm³ in those given β -carotene [no information on statistics]. In addition, a clearly elevated number of tumour necrosis factor- α -positive macrophages was found in the tumours and adjacent to regressing tumours in hamsters treated with β -carotene (Shklar & Schwartz, 1988).

Sixty non-inbred adult male hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 96–120 g were fed standard laboratory pellets, and their right buccal pouches were painted with a 0.1% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 28 weeks. The animals were divided into three groups of 20 hamsters each and were given either 0.14 mg β -carotene (1.5 mg/kg bw) in 0.4 ml mineral oil three times per week on

alternate days to DMBA, mineral oil only or no further treatment. All hamsters were killed after 28 weeks, when obvious moderately large buccal pouch tumours were seen in untreated controls. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. All control hamsters and most of those given β -carotene had cheek pouch tumours, but the latter group had fewer, smaller tumours than the controls: numbers of animals with gross tumours, 20/20, 20/20 and 11/20 in the untreated control, the vehicle control and the β -carotene groups, respectively; mean numbers of tumours per animal, 3.5, 3.7 and 1.8; mean tumour burden, 85.5, 114.9 and 51.7 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). The control animals had proliferative epidermoid carcinomas that invaded the underlying connective tissue, numerous foci of hyperkeratosis with dysplasia and carcinoma *in situ* and lymphocyte infiltration into areas of tumour infiltration and carcinoma *in situ*. The tumours in β -carotene-treated animals resembled those in controls but were smaller and somewhat less invasive, and lymphocyte infiltration was more pronounced (Schwartz *et al.*, 1988).

The mucosa of the right buccal pouches of 60 male Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 95–125 g, were painted three times a week with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.6 mg DMBA per painting) for 14 weeks, when all animals had moderate-size tumours. They were then divided into three groups of 20 animals each and received either no further treatment or daily oral injections of 0.2 ml vegetable oil with or without 400 μ g β -carotene. Observations at 16, 18 and 20 weeks showed a gradual increase in the tumour burden in all groups. At 22 weeks, when most of the animals were weak and cachectic, all survivors were killed. Oral β -carotene administration did not appear to cause regression of these epidermoid carcinomas, the total tumour burden at 22 weeks being about 3700, 4000 and 4200 mm³ in β -carotene-treated animals, vehicle controls and untreated controls, respectively [statistics unspecified] (Shklar *et al.*, 1989).

The mucosa of the right cheek pouch of three groups of 20 male Syrian hamsters [age unspecified], fed a normal hamster diet con-

taining 22% protein and the required concentrations of vitamin A and E, was painted with 0.1% DMBA in heavy mineral oil (0.4 mg DMBA per painting) three times a week for 28 weeks. One group received no further treatment; the other two groups were given 0.4 ml of heavy mineral oil containing 0 or 1.4 mg/kg bw β -carotene (crystalline form, type IV), by gavage three times a week on alternate days to DMBA, for 28 weeks. A fourth group served as untreated controls. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups, and there was no intercurrent mortality. Ingestion of β -carotene significantly inhibited the formation of buccal pouch squamous-cell carcinomas, as shown by the later onset of tumours (month 5 versus month 4 in both DMBA control groups), fewer tumour-bearing hamsters (11 versus 20 in both DMBA control groups), fewer tumours (50 versus 135 in the DMBA/vehicle control and 150 in the DMBA control group) and a significant decrease in the tumour burden after six months of treatment (66 mm³ versus 3675 mm³ in the DMBA/vehicle control and 2450 mm³ in the DMBA control group; $p < 0.001$, Student's *t* test). At the end of the treatment period, the average number of areas of cheek pouch with epithelial dysplasia was 3 in the group given β -carotene and 6 in both DMBA-treated groups. No buccal pouch tumours or sites of epithelial dysplasia were found in untreated controls. β -Carotene ingestion resulted in a histologically unique picture not seen in DMBA-treated controls: a dense, mixed, inflammatory infiltrate consisting predominantly of cytotoxic lymphocytes and macrophages producing tumour necrosis factor- α and localized areas of mast cells in the deep dermis adjacent to areas of dysplasia, carcinoma *in situ* and small foci of squamous-cell carcinoma (Schwartz *et al.*, 1989).

The left buccal pouches of three groups of 20 adult male Syrian golden hamsters, eight weeks old and weighing 90–100 g, were painted three times per week with a 0.25% solution of DMBA and on alternate days with a 2.5% solution of β -carotene (α -carotene-free) in heavy mineral oil or with DMBA or β -carotene alone [doses and treatment period unspecified]. At the time of autopsy, the body weights of animals treated

with DMBA only were significantly lower than those in the other groups. Buccal pouch tumours were seen grossly in 6/20 hamsters treated with DMBA alone at 10 weeks, in 10/20 animals at 11 weeks and in 20/20 animals at 12.5 weeks. In contrast, buccal pouch tumours were seen in the group treated with both DMBA and β -carotene in 3/20 animals at 10 weeks, 5/20 animals at 11 weeks, 10/20 animals at 12.5 weeks, 14/20 animals at 14 weeks and 20/20 animals at 15 weeks. At 12.5 weeks, the difference in tumour incidence between the two groups was statistically significant ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) (Hibino *et al.*, 1990).

The mucosa of the cheek pouches of 35 randomly bred male Syrian golden hamsters, four to six weeks of age and weighing 90–100 g, was painted with 50 μ l of a 0.25% solution of DMBA in liquid paraffin (0.125 mg DMBA per application) twice weekly for one month. Fifteen days after the last DMBA treatment, a dose of 250 mg β -carotene suspended in liquid paraffin was applied to the cheek pouch of 20 hamsters in volumes of 50 μ l, twice a week for 4.5 months. An additional group of 20 hamsters received only β -carotene, and another group of 15 hamsters served as untreated controls. At six months, immediately after the last β -carotene application, all hamsters were killed and examined grossly for the presence of cheek pouch tumours and forestomach papillomas. No tumours were found in hamsters treated with DMBA and β -carotene, whereas 10/15 hamsters treated only with DMBA had cheek pouch tumours and 15/15 had forestomach tumours [statistics unspecified]. No tumours were found in untreated controls or in hamsters treated with β -carotene only (Gijare *et al.*, 1990).

Oral squamous-cell carcinomas were induced in four groups of 10 young adult male Syrian hamsters [age not further specified] by painting the mucosa of the right cheek pouch with 0.5% DMBA in heavy mineral oil (0.6 mg DMBA per painting) three times per week for 16 weeks. Four groups of 10 hamsters were untreated. After 16 weeks, the tumour burden in the cheek pouches was determined, and the tumours of one group of DMBA-treated animals and one group of untreated controls were injected submucosally with 3.8 μ g β -carotene encapsulated in 0.2-ml liposomes (large unilamellar vesicles composed

of L- α -phosphatidyl-L-serine, L- α -phosphatidyl-ethanolamine and L- α -phosphatidylcholine in a ratio of 1:1:1), 0.2-ml liposomes not containing β -carotene, 4 μ g β -carotene suspended in 0.2 ml phosphate-buffered saline containing 0.1% ethanol or 0.2 ml phosphate-buffered saline, three times per week for five weeks. There was no differences in body weight between the groups. The mean cheek pouch tumour burden in the four DMBA-treated groups at week 16, when the β -carotene treatment was started, was 2327.5 mm³ (range, 2304–2600 mm³), with 8.0 ± 1.0 tumours per pouch. β -Carotene in liposomes reduced the tumour burden significantly ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test), the average tumour burden being 48.1 and 7.6 mm³ after four and five weeks of β -carotene treatment, respectively. β -Carotene suspended in saline also reduced the tumour burden but to a lesser extent than in liposomes, the average tumour burden being 1250.6 and 958.6 mm³ after four and five weeks of treatment with β -carotene, respectively. Treatment with liposomes alone did not consistently reduce the tumour burden, and saline injection resulted in a gradual progression of the tumour burden (average, 8858.6 mm³ after four weeks). No buccal pouch tumours were found in untreated controls. Treatment with β -carotene in liposomes was associated with cellular destruction of carcinomas, seen ultrastructurally as liposome accumulation, disorganization and clumping of tonofilaments, swelling of mitochondria, loss of Golgi apparatus, lysosomal rupture and degeneration of nuclei. Liposome administration alone resulted in accumulation of lipid debris in endocytic vesicles and in organelle disruption, but to a lesser degree than after administration of β -carotene-containing liposomes. Normal cheek pouch mucosal cells were not affected by the liposome injections (Schwartz *et al.*, 1991).

Two groups of 15 female inbred Syrian hamsters, eight weeks old, were given drinking-water with or without 5.8 μ mol/L β -carotene (3.1 mg/d per animal) for 13 months. After two weeks, 2 mg/kg bw *N*-nitroso(acetoxymethyl)-methylamine (AcO-NDMA) were applied to the mucosa of the right cheek pouch, twice] for six months. Two additional

groups of 15 hamsters received drinking-water alone or supplemented with β -carotene; no cheek pouch tumours were seen in these groups. β -Carotene increased the survival of the AcO-NDMA-treated hamsters, from 27 to about 67% [statistics unspecified], reduced the incidence of cheek pouch tumours from 14/15 to 1/15 ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test), reduced the cheek pouch tumour burden from 600 ± 72 to 0.5 ± 0.0 mm³ ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) and lengthened the time to appearance of tumours from 5–10 to 8–12 months [statistics unspecified] (Azuine & Bhide, 1992).

The mucosa of the right buccal pouches of two groups of 10 male Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 92–123 g, was painted with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 12 or 14 weeks. One of the groups was not further treated, while the other received 50 μ g β -carotene in 0.5 ml mineral oil by mouth [route not further specified] three times a week on alternate days to DMBA for 12 or 14 weeks. One-half of the animals in each group were killed after 12 weeks and the other half after 14 weeks. After both 12 and 14 weeks of treatment, β -carotene appeared to have significantly reduced the incidence of cheek pouch leukoplakia and also the incidence, area, volume and total burden of cheek pouch tumours, consisting of carcinomas *in situ* and early carcinomas, as exemplified by the tumour burdens of 2.89 ± 0.6 mm³ for the DMBA controls and 0.434 ± 0.1 mm³ for the β -carotene-treated group after 12 weeks ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) (Shklar *et al.*, 1993).

The mucosa of the right buccal pouches of three groups of 10 male Syrian golden hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 95–125 g, was painted with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (0.6 mg DMBA per painting) three times per week for 14 weeks. One of the groups also received oral applications of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene in 0.5 ml mineral oil three times per week on alternate days to DMBA. Two other groups either were not further treated or were treated with mineral oil only. An additional group of 10 hamsters was treated with β -carotene only; no buccal pouch tumours were seen in these animals. β -Carotene reduced the number of animals with buccal pouch tumours,

which were well-to-moderately differentiated epidermoid carcinomas, from 10 in both control groups to 9, the total numbers of cheek-pouch tumours from 125 in controls and 130 in the vehicle controls to 60 [statistics unspecified] and the cheek pouch tumour burden from 174 200 mm³ (mean of both control groups) to 142 300 mm³ (not significant; Student's *t* test) (Schwartz & Shklar, 1997).

(g) Stomach (Table 29)

Mouse: Groups of 20 inbred female Swiss mice, six to eight weeks old, and weighing 20–25 g, were given β -carotene (4.7 μ mol/d per animal) in 0.1 ml palm oil by gavage or only palm oil for eight weeks. From week 3, a fourth group of 20 mice and 20 mice receiving β -carotene were given 1 mg benzo[*a*]pyrene in 0.1 ml palm oil by gavage twice a week for four weeks. After completion of treatment at eight weeks, the animals were observed for up to 180 days, when they were killed. The mean body-weight gain was similar in all groups. β -Carotene reduced the incidence of forestomach tumours from 20/20 to 3/20 ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test) and the mean number of forestomach tumours per mouse from 7.0 ± 0.3 to 1.0 ± 0.0 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). No forestomach tumours were found in the groups treated with β -carotene or palm oil alone (Azuine *et al.*, 1992).

Rat: Two groups of 36 weanling male Wistar Crl rats, three weeks old and weighing about 50 g, were fed a powdered basic diet (NIH-07 containing 10 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 1.4 mg/kg carotene) supplemented with either 0.4% β -carotene from beadlets containing 10% β -carotene or placebo beadlets (4%) for two weeks; then the β -carotene and the placebo beadlet content of the diets was reduced to 0.2 and 2% in the respective diets, which were fed until termination of the study at 52 weeks. Starting at five weeks of age, all rats were given distilled water (pH 4) as drinking-water, containing 80 mg/L MNNG, to give daily intakes of 3.82 mg/kg bw for rats given β -carotene and 4.10 mg/kg bw for those on placebo. Two additional groups of 18 rats received drinking-water with no addition, and a group of eight rats served as untreated controls. There were no significant differences in body weight among the

groups. β -Carotene did not affect MNNG-induced tumorigenesis, although the incidence of adenocarcinomas of the glandular stomach was slightly lower in animals given β -carotene (4/35) than in those treated with MNNG (7/36) (Jones *et al.*, 1989).

(h) *Small intestine (Table 29)*

Rat: Two groups of 28 weanling male Holtzman rats were fed regular chow supplemented with either 1% β -carotene (w/w) from beadlets containing 10% β -carotene or 10% placebo beadlets for 24 weeks. After four weeks, all rats received 16 weekly subcutaneous injections of 30 mg/kg bw symmetrical DMH dissolved in neutral sodium hydroxide-corrected phosphate-buffered saline, for a total dose of 480 mg/kg bw. At 24 weeks, the animals were killed. All rats had intestinal tumours, and β -carotene had no effect on the tumour response; e.g. small-bowel cancer occurred in 17/28 rats given β -carotene and 15/28 given placebo, and there were 1.29 small-bowel cancers per rat in those given β -carotene and 0.82 in those on placebo (not significant) (Colacchio & Memoli, 1986; Colacchio *et al.*, 1989).

Thirty male Sprague-Dawley rats, five weeks old, were fed CE-2 basic diet for 26 weeks, and 20 were given the diet supplemented with

0.005% β -carotene (type III, from carrots, equivalent to 2.8 mg/kg bw) for 14 weeks followed by CE-2 basic diet for the final 12 weeks. From day 3, the rats were given weekly subcutaneous injections of 20 mg/kg bw DMH for 12 weeks. Twenty control rats were fed CE-2 basic diet for 26 weeks. At the end of week 26, the animals were killed and examined for the presence of small intestinal carcinomas. No significant difference in body weight was seen between the groups. β -Carotene did not reduce the incidence of small intestinal adenocarcinomas or mucinous adenocarcinomas, the rates being 6/30 in DMH-treated rats and 7/20 in those given β -carotene (Yamamoto *et al.*, 1994).

(i) *Salivary glands (Table 33)*

Rat: Two groups of young male Sprague-Dawley rats [age not further specified], weighing 130–160 g, received a single injection of 1 mg 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene (DMBA) dissolved in 20 ml olive oil into one of the submandibular salivary glands. The contralateral gland was injected with 20 ml olive oil alone. Immediately after injection, one of the groups (14 rats) was fed *ad libitum* a semisynthetic diet (AIN-76; 4000 IU/kg retinyl palmitate) supplemented with 100 mg/kg of diet β -carotene

Table 33. Effects of β -carotene on salivary gland tumorigenesis induced by injection of 1 mg 1,2-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene into the submandibular salivary gland of male Sprague-Dawley rats

No. of animals/group	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
9–14	100 ppm in diet	After	Carcinomas Incidence: 75% (NS)	Alam <i>et al.</i> (1984)
30	5, 25, 125 and 250 ppm in diet	Before, during and after	Gross tumours (three highest dose groups combined), 35% ($p = 0.029$) Carcinomas Incidence: none [SU]	Alam & Alam (1987)
30	250 ppm in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours Incidence: none (NS) Weight: 54% (NS)	Alam <i>et al.</i> (1988)

NS, not significant; SU, statistics unspecified

(*trans*- β -carotene, type I, synthetic crystalline; purity, > 95%), while the other group (nine rats) received the same diet without β -carotene. The animals were observed for 22 weeks, when all those remaining were necropsied. There was no appreciable difference in growth rate between the two groups. During the first 13 weeks, three rats given β -carotene died, probably as a result of vitamin K deficiency, and the vitamin K level in the diet was increased from 50 to 500 mg/kg from that time, with no further deaths. Well-differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas and poorly differentiated malignant salivary gland neoplasms resembling squamous-cell carcinomas [distribution over the groups unspecified] were found in 3/9 controls and in 1/11 animals given β -carotene, but the difference in tumour incidence was not statistically significant [method of statistical analysis unspecified]. In addition, 4/9 controls and 4/11 rats given β -carotene had salivary gland enlargement (designated as grossly observed tumours) due to fibrosis, inflammation, cysts and proliferation and metaplasia of the ductal epithelium (Alam *et al.*, 1984).

Five groups of 30 male weanling Sprague-Dawley rats were fed *ad libitum* a semi-purified diet supplemented with 0, 5, 25, 125 or 250 mg/kg of diet β -carotene (stabilized gelatin beadlets containing 10% all-*trans*- β -carotene). Placebo beadlets were added to the diet to compensate for the differences between doses. Uptake was demonstrated by measurement of significantly higher β -carotene levels in the liver at six weeks and at termination of the study. After six weeks, all rats received a single injection of 1 mg DMBA dissolved in 20 ml olive oil into one of the submandibular salivary glands, and the contralateral gland was injected with 20 ml olive oil alone. Rats were killed and necropsied 30–32 weeks after the start of the study and thus 24–26 weeks after the injection of DMBA. Body weight and survival were not affected by β -carotene administration. The β -carotene levels in serum and liver were significantly increased, in a dose-related manner, after both 6 and 32 weeks; e.g. the high dose resulted in a concentration of 1950 mg/g in the liver at 32 weeks, while none was detectable in con-

trols. Palpable salivary gland tumours appeared in rats fed diets supplemented with β -carotene two to three weeks after they appeared in controls [no further details given]. The incidences of submandibular salivary gland tumours observed grossly at autopsy were 17/29 in controls, 17/28 in rats given 5 mg/kg β -carotene, 10/25 in those given 25 mg/kg, 10/28 in those at 125 mg/kg and 11/26 in those at 250 mg/kg. The combined incidence of these tumours in the controls and rats at the low dose of β -carotene (34/57) was statistically significantly higher than that in the combined groups at higher doses of β -carotene (31/79) ($\chi^2 = 4.74$; $p = 0.029$). The incidences of malignant tumours in the submandibular salivary glands—partially to fully differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas, spindle-cell carcinomas and adenocarcinomas [distribution over the groups unspecified]—were 15/29, 14/28, 10/25, 12/28 and 11/26 in controls and rats at 5, 25, 125 and 250 mg/kg β -carotene, respectively [statistics and types of nonmalignant tumours unspecified]. The average weights of the submandibular salivary gland tumours were 32.6 ± 8.4 , 25.4 ± 9.2 , 18.0 ± 11.5 , 19.2 ± 7.3 and 17.6 ± 10.9 g for the five groups, respectively. The incidences of tumours weighing 11 g or more were 9/29 in controls, 8/28 in animals at 5 mg/kg β -carotene and 10/79 in those at the combined higher doses, and the differences in incidence between the groups showed a statistically significant trend ($\chi^2 = 4.48$; $p = 0.034$) (Alam & Alam, 1987).

Two groups of 30 male weanling Sprague-Dawley rats, weighing 73 ± 1.0 g, were fed either basal AIN-76A diet (containing 4000 IU vitamin A) or basal diet supplemented with 250 mg/kg β -carotene (10% stabilized gelatin beadlets). Uptake was demonstrated by β -carotene measurement in the liver. After six weeks, one of the submandibular salivary glands of each rat was injected with 1 mg DMBA in 0.02 ml olive oil, while the contralateral gland was injected with 0.02 ml olive oil alone. Rats were killed 21–22 weeks after the DMBA injection, when more than 50% of the animals had developed submandibular salivary gland tumours, some of which were very large. There was no significant difference in body-weight gain between the two groups. The

incidence of partially to fully differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas and undifferentiated spindle-cell submandibular salivary gland tumours was closely similar: all tumours: 20/28 in controls and 20/30 in rats given β -carotene; malignant tumours: 11/28 in controls and 16/30 (53%) in rats given β -carotene. The mean tumour weight was slightly lower in rats fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet (3.2 ± 0.8 g) than in rats fed the unsupplemented diet (7.0 ± 3.3 g). Two of 20 tumour-bearing control animals had submandibular salivary gland tumours weighing more than 40 g, whereas none of the rats given β -carotene had such large tumours. In addition, 4/20 tumour-bearing controls and 1/20 given β -carotene had tumours weighing more than 10 g (not significant; χ^2 test) (Alam *et al.*, 1988).

(j) Pancreas (Table 29)

Rat: Eighty male weanling SPF albino Bor (WISW,Cpb) Wistar rats were fed standard laboratory chow and received two intraperitoneal injections of 30 mg/kg bw azaserine in 0.9% saline, one at 19 days and one at 26 days of age. One week after the second injection, the animals were switched to an AIN-76 diet with a high percentage of saturated fat (20% lard), with or without 60 mg/kg β -carotene added to the diet as water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β -carotene [use of placebo beadlets unspecified]. Necropsy was performed 482–485 days after the second injection of azaserine. Food intake and body and pancreatic weights were similar in the two groups. β -Carotene significantly reduced the total number of atypical acinar-cell nodules in the pancreas that were 0.5–1.0 mm in diameter, with 338 in the control group and 194 in the group given β -carotene ($p < 0.05$; generalized linear regression, error is Poisson, link function is log); the number of atypical acinar-cell nodules with a diameter of 1.0–3.0 mm was also lower in the animals given β -carotene (146) than in controls (200), but the difference was not statistically significant. β -Carotene reduced the incidence of pancreatic tumours from 22/39 in controls to 9/37 and that of carcinomas from 15/39 in controls to 4/37 ($p < 0.05$ for both; regression analysis followed by χ^2 tests) (Appel *et al.*, 1991).

The effect of β -carotene on the initiation or early promotion and the late promotion phases of pancreatic carcinogenesis was studied in rats. A group of 16 female Wistar rats that had been mated one week earlier was maintained on a high-fat diet (25% fat, 25% casein, 0.37% DL-methionine, 36.79% wheat starch, 6.18% cellulose, 0.25% choline bitartrate, 4.32% AIN76 minerals, 1.24% AIN76 vitamins and 1.85% calcium phosphate), while the other 16 rats were divided into two groups and fed the high-fat diet supplemented with 100 or 1000 mg/kg β -carotene (added as a 30% solution in corn oil). When the pups were born, six groups of 20 male pups were formed and received the same diets as their mothers. At 14 and 21 days of age, pups received a subcutaneous injection of 30 mg/kg bw azaserine in saline, except for the pups in one group kept on unsupplemented diet which received subcutaneous injections of saline only. At five weeks of age, two of the three azaserine-treated groups fed the unsupplemented high-fat diet were switched to high-fat diet plus 100 or 1000 mg/kg β -carotene (to study the effects of β -carotene on the late promotion phase), while the third group was continued on the unsupplemented high-fat diet; two groups fed the high-fat diets with β -carotene were switched to the unsupplemented high-fat diet (to study the effects of β -carotene on the initiation or early promotion phase). The experiment was terminated when the rats were 29 weeks of age. Body and pancreatic weights were similar in all groups, and, as the animals consumed similar amounts of food, the calculated energy intake was also similar. β -Carotene inhibited azaserine-induced pancreatic carcinogenesis, the strongest effects occurring when β -carotene was administered during the late promotion phase (see Table 34). No (putative) preneoplastic or neoplastic lesions were seen in saline-treated rats (Appel & Woutersen, 1996).

Two groups of 20 male weanling albino Cpb:WU; Wistar random rats, 19 days old, received a single intraperitoneal injection of 30 mg/kg bw azaserine and were fed standard rodent diet. Twelve days later, they were given a high-fat diet (20% lard), either unsupplemented or supplemented with 56 mg/kg

Table 34. Putatively preneoplastic atypical acinar-cell nodules (AACN), carcinoma *in situ* and atypical acinar-cell foci (AACF) in the pancreas of azaserine-treated male Wistar rats at two phases of the carcinogenesis process

Diet	AACN		No./cm ³	Mean diameter (µm)	Area as % pancreas	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>		Multiplicity of AACF > 1 mm
	No./cm ²	Area (mm ²)				Incidence	Multiplicity	
Initiation or early promotion phase								
HF	46.2	0.21	1521	409	9.5	3/15	7.0 ± 1.5	0.3 ± 0.2
HF/LBC	40.3	0.20	1281 ^a	430	8.1	3/15	7.6 ± 1.6	0.2 ± 0.1
HF/HBC	30.7	0.18	1069 ^a	405	5.5	4/15	4.8 ± 1.4	0.3 ± 0.2
Late promotion phase								
HF	46.2	0.21	1521	409	9.5	3/15	7.0 ± 1.5	0.3 ± 0.2
HF/LBC	29.8	0.18	1102 ^a	389	5.3 ^a	3/15	4.1 ± 1.6	0.2 ± 0.1
HF/HBC	33.9	0.20	1183 ^a	408	6.7 ^a	2/15	5.8 ± 1.4	0.1 ± 0.1

From Appel & Woutersen (1996); for details, see text

HF, high fat (25%); LBC, low β-carotene (100 mg/kg); HBC, high β-carotene (1000 mg/kg)

^a $p < 0.05$; analysis of variance

β-carotene in the form of water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β-carotene, for about four months [use of placebo beadlets not specified]. There were no significant differences in food intake, body weight or pancreatic weight between the two groups. β-Carotene did not significantly reduce the number of preneoplastic acidophilic foci per cm² (44.86 ± 5.51 versus 41.81 ± 5.01 in controls), their volume per cm³ (2212 ± 248 versus 2034 ± 196 in controls), their transectional area (615 ± 57 mm² versus 648 ± 78 mm² in controls), their area as percentage of the pancreas ($3.07 \pm 0.51\%$ versus $3.25 \pm 0.79\%$ in controls) or their diameter (237 ± 11 µm versus 241 ± 10 µm in controls), nor did it reduce the number of preneoplastic basophilic foci per cm² (12.07 ± 1.55 versus 13.41 ± 1.47 in controls), their volume per cm³ (1261 ± 138 versus 1492 ± 167 in controls), their transectional area (137 ± 9 mm² versus 157 ± 15 mm² in controls), their area as percentage of the pancreas ($0.17 \pm 0.02\%$ versus $0.20 \pm 0.02\%$ in controls) or their diameter (117 ± 4 µm versus 118 ± 6 µm in controls), except for the number of basophilic foci with a diameter > 192.5 µm, which appeared to be statistically significantly lower in animals on the β-carotene [number of

foci and p value unspecified] (generalized linear model; error is Poisson, link function is log). No pancreatic tumours were reported (Woutersen & van Garderen-Hoetmer, 1988).

Hamster: Two groups of 40 male Syrian golden hamsters, five to six weeks old, fed a standard diet were injected subcutaneously with 20 mg/kg bw *N*-nitrosobis(2-oxopropyl)-amine (NBOPA [vehicle unspecified]) at six, seven and eight weeks of age. One week after the last NBOPA injection, all hamsters were fed a high-fat (20% lard) diet with or without 60 mg/kg β-carotene added to the diet as water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β-carotene, for the rest of the experimental period [use of placebo beadlets unspecified]. The survivors were killed 364 or 365 days after the first injection of NBOPA. Hamsters fed the β-carotene-supplemented diet had lower body weights than the controls ($p < 0.05$; analysis of variance and Dunnett's test, two-sided). β-Carotene did not inhibit the development of (pre)neoplastic lesions in the pancreas, the incidences of advanced ductular lesions, carcinoma *in situ* and invasive carcinoma being 9/27, 5/27 and 12/27 in the controls and 11/34, 10/34 and 11/34 in the group fed the β-carotene-

supplemented diet, respectively (χ^2 test) (Appel *et al.*, 1996).

Two groups of 20 male weanling Syrian golden hamsters fed standard diet were injected subcutaneously with 20 mg/kg bw NBOPA once weekly at five, six and seven weeks of age. Twelve days after the last NBOPA injection, the animals were fed a diet with a high percentage of saturated fat (20% lard), either unsupplemented or supplemented with 56 mg/kg β -carotene in the form of water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β -carotene, for about four months [use of placebo beadlets unspecified]. There were no significant differences in food intake, body weight or pancreatic weight between the two groups. β -Carotene significantly reduced the total number of preneoplastic, large tubular ductal complexes in the pancreas, which are focal lesions composed of multiple lumina lined by cuboidal epithelial cells ($p < 0.05$; generalized linear model, one-tailed, error is Poisson, link function is log), the incidences being 14/19 in the unsupplemented group and 4/20 in the β -carotene-supplemented group. The numbers of preneoplastic tubular ductal complexes of intermediate size were also lower in the animals given β -carotene (33 in 20 animals) than in controls (49 in 19 animals), but the differences were not statistically significant. Two pancreatic carcinomas, one carcinoma *in situ* and one microcarcinoma were found in the controls and one microcarcinoma in the β -carotene supplemented group (Woutersen & van Garderen-Hoetmer, 1988).

(k) *Multiple organs (Table 29)*

Rat: Two groups of 20 male Fischer 344/Du Crj rats, seven weeks old, received three subcutaneous injections of 40 mg/kg bw DMH dissolved in 0.9% saline during week 1 and then an intraperitoneal injection of 20 mg/kg bw MNU in citrate buffer twice per week during weeks 2 and 3. A group of 10 rats was similarly treated with the vehicles of DMH and MNU. At week 4, one carcinogen-treated group and the vehicle control group were placed on a diet supplemented with 0.2% β -carotene [not further specified]. At week 52, all survivors—15/20 carcinogen-treated, β -carotene-fed rats, 20/20 carcinogen-treated rats and 10/10 vehicle plus β -carotene-fed controls—

were killed and subjected to a complete autopsy. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. β -Carotene did not significantly reduce the development of organ-specific tumours, but the incidences of hyperplastic liver foci, colonic adenocarcinomas and nephroblastomas were lower in the carcinogen-treated group fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet than in the group treated with the carcinogens and fed unsupplemented basal diet: liver foci, 9/15 versus 16/22; colonic adenocarcinomas, 3/15 versus 9/20; nephroblastomas: 2/15 versus 6/20 (Imaida *et al.*, 1990).

(l) *Inoculated tumours (see Table 35)*

Carotenoids have been reported to affect the growth and/or the rejection of tumours inoculated into recipient animals. While this effect is clearly therapeutic rather than preventive, since the target cells are established tumours, the Working Group decided to include these studies, primarily because intervention trials with carotenoids in high-risk groups like current smokers might include many individuals who are harbouring preclinical malignancies. The potential response of existing tumours to carotenoids is thus of interest.

C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells: Two groups of 10 female inbred C3H/HeJ mice, five weeks old, were fed a powdered diet containing 6190 IU/kg vitamin A palmitate and 4.3 mg/kg β -carotene, with or without the addition of 90 mg/kg β -carotene [formulation in the diet unspecified]. At day 4, all mice were inoculated subcutaneously with 10^4 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the area above the right inguinal lymph node. β -Carotene reduced the tumour incidence and size, slightly increased the latency of the tumours and lengthened the survival time. Thus, the tumour incidences were 6/10 and 2/10 ($p < 0.05$; χ^2 test), the diameters of the tumours at day 46 were 13.5 ± 0.5 and 4.5 ± 0.3 mm ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test), the latency was 21.7 ± 3.2 and 26.5 ± 3.5 days (not significant) and the survival times were 70.2 ± 4.0 and 112.5 ± 5.5 days ($p < 0.06$; analysis of variance) in the unsupplemented and β -carotene-supplemented animals, respectively (Rettura *et al.*, 1982).

Table 35. Prevention or regression of tumour cell-inoculated or virus-induced tumours by β -carotene

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Virus of tumour-cells (dose)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Timing of treatment relative to virus or tumour-cell administration	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Inoculated tumour cells						
Mouse, C3H/HeJ, female	10	10 ⁴ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Adenocarcinoma Incidence: 40% ($p < 0.05$); size: 67% ($p < 0.001$); latent period: 22% (NS); survival: 60% ($p < 0.06$)	Rettura <i>et al.</i> (1982)
Mouse, C3H/HeJ, female	10	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	After	Adenocarcinoma Survival: 59% ($p < 0.001$); size after 14 days: 52% [SU]	Rettura <i>et al.</i> (1982)
Mouse, CBA/J, male	10	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	After	Adenocarcinoma Survival: 49% ($p < 0.001$); size after 19 days: 34% [SU]	Rettura <i>et al.</i> (1982)
Mouse, C ³ H/HeJ female	10	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	After	Adenocarcinoma Survival, 61% ($p < 0.001$); size after 12 days: 21% (SU)	Rettura <i>et al.</i> (1982)
Mouse, CBA/J, male	10–12	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	After	Adenocarcinoma Survival of mice, 49% ($p < 0.001$) Tumour growth: 75% [SU]	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1983)
Mouse, CBA/J, male	10–12	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	After	Adenocarcinoma Survival of mice, 26%; ($p < 0.001$) Tumour growth: 46% [SU]	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1983)
Rat, Wistar, male	6	10 ⁶ C-6 glioma cells	10 mg/kg bw, gavage (?)	Before and during	Gliomas Latency: 50% (SU) Weight: 67% ($p < 0.02$)	Wang <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Rat, Wistar, male	6	10 ⁶ C-6 glioma cells	10 mg/kg bw, gavage (?)	After	Gliomas Incidence: 33% (SU) Weight: 55% (SU)	Wang <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Mouse, C3H, male	15	SCC-VII, 2 x 10 ⁶ cells, single dose, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw; i.p., daily, 5 days	After	Carcinoma Growth: slightly delayed (NS)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)

Table 35 (contd)

Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Virus/tumour cells (dose)	β -carotene (dose, route)	Timing of treatment relative to virus or tumour-cell administration	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Mouse, C3H, male	15	SCC-VII, 2×10^6 cells, single dose, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw; i.p., daily, 5 days	After	Carcinoma Growth: slightly delayed (NS)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Mouse, C3H, male	15	Fsall, 2×10^6 cells, single dose, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw; i.p., 1, 3 or 5 doses	After	Fibrosarcoma Growth: One dose: slight (SU) Three doses: slight (SU) Five doses: moderate (SU)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Virus-induced tumours						
Mouse, CBA/J, male	10	M-MuSV, 0.1 ml of 10^{-1} and 10^{-2} g eq/ml	90 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	Sarcoma <i>Low inoculum</i> : incidence, 35% ($p < 0.005$); latency, 43% ($p < 0.005$); persistence, 45% ($p < 0.01$); regression, 52% ($p < 0.02$); <i>High inoculum</i> : incidence, 47% ($p < 0.009$); latency, 48% ($p < 0.008$); persistence, 57% ($p < 0.03$); regression, 59% ($p < 0.006$)	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1982)
Mouse, CBA/J, male	10	M-MuSV, 0.1 ml of 10^{-1} and 10^{-2} g eq/ml	120 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	Sarcoma <i>Low inoculum</i> : incidence, 35% ($p < 0.005$); latency, 16% ($p < 0.01$); persistence, 46% ($p < 0.03$); regression, 54% <i>High inoculum</i> : incidence, 47% ($p < 0.009$); latency, 24% ($p < 0.05$); persistence, 35% ($p < 0.1$); regression, 45% ($p < 0.01$)	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1982)
Mouse, CBA/J, male	10	M-MuSV, 0.2 ml of 10^{-1} g eq/ml	[unspecified; probably 90 or 120 mg/kg diet]	After	Sarcoma regression: 100% [SU]	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1982)

SU, statistics unspecified; NS, not significant; s.c., subcutaneously; i.p., intraperitoneally

Two groups of 10 female inbred C3H/HeJ mice, five weeks old, were fed a powdered basal diet containing 6190 IU/kg vitamin A palmitate and 4.3 mg/kg β -carotene for one week [formulation unspecified] and were then inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^5 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the area above the right inguinal lymph node. Several hours after inoculation, one of the groups was switched to basal diet supplemented with 90 mg/kg β -carotene, while the other group was maintained on basal diet for the remainder of the experiment. β -Carotene increased the average survival time of the mice from 34.9 ± 1.1 to 55.6 ± 3.0 days ($p < 0.001$; analysis of variance), and it slowed tumour growth but did not cause regression, the average tumour size being 6.5 and 2.5 mm five days after inoculation and 16.8 and 8.1 mm 14 days after inoculation in the unsupplemented and β -carotene-supplemented animals, respectively (Student's *t* test [p value unspecified]) (Rettura *et al.*, 1982).

Two groups of 10 male CBA/J mice, five weeks old, were inoculated with 2×10^5 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the outer aspect of the thigh and were maintained on powdered basal diet containing 15 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 6.5 mg/kg β -carotene [formulation unspecified]. After 13 days, when the tumours had reached a mean diameter of 6.2 ± 0.3 mm, one group of mice was switched to basal diet supplemented with 90 mg/kg β -carotene, while the other group was maintained on unsupplemented basal diet. β -Carotene increased the average survival time of the mice from 40.0 ± 2.8 to 59.5 ± 3.0 days ($p < 0.001$; analysis of variance); it slowed tumour growth but did not cause regression. After eight days on the β -carotene-supplemented diet, the average tumour diameter was 9.7 mm versus 14.7 mm in the unsupplemented animals, and after 19 days these values were 13.2 and 20.1 mm (Student's *t* test [p values unspecified]) (Rettura *et al.*, 1982).

Two groups of 10 female C3H/HeJ mice, five weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^5 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the outer aspect of the thigh and were maintained on powdered basal diet containing 15 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 6.5 mg/kg β -carotene [no data on absorption]. When the

tumours reached an average diameter of 7.5 ± 0.2 mm, one group of mice was continued on the basal diet and the other was switched to basal diet supplemented with 90 mg/kg β -carotene. The average survival times were 36.3 ± 1.3 days for unsupplemented animals and 58.5 ± 3.5 days for the β -carotene-supplemented mice ($p < 0.001$; analysis of variance). β -Carotene reduced tumour growth: after 12 days of the β -carotene-supplemented diet, the average tumour diameter was about 17.1 mm, while that of the controls was about 21.7 mm (data presented as curves; Student's *t* test [p values unspecified]) (Rettura *et al.*, 1982).

Twenty male CBA/J mice, six weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^5 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the outer aspect of the right thigh and were fed a basal diet containing 15 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 6.4 mg/kg β -carotene [formulation unspecified]. On day 13, when the mean diameter of the tumours was 6.2 ± 0.3 mm, the mice were randomly distributed into two groups, one of which was continued on unsupplemented basal diet and the other received basal diet supplemented with 90 mg/kg β -carotene. A similar experiment was begun nine weeks after the start of the first experiment, in which the mean tumour diameter on day 13 was 5.6 ± 0.2 mm. In neither study was there a significant difference in body weight between groups, and in both experiments β -carotene significantly increased the average survival time ($p < 0.001$ for both experiments; analysis of variance), from 41.2 to 61.2 days in experiment 1 and from 43.3 to 63.3 days in experiment 2. β -Carotene also slowed tumour growth considerably [statistics unspecified]: the average tumour diameter reached about 16.8 mm by weeks 12 and 21 in experiment 1 and by weeks 19 and 24 in experiment 2 in the unsupplemented and β -carotene-supplemented animals respectively (Seifter *et al.*, 1983).

Rat C-6 glioma cells: Two groups of six male Wistar rats, three to four weeks old, were fed normal rodent chow and were given intraperitoneal injections of either 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene in 0.06% dimethylsulfoxide (v/v; 2 mg/ml) or dimethylsulfoxide alone on five consecutive days. Then, 10^6 C-6 glioma cells were inoculated

subcutaneously into the right scapula. Eight to 10 weeks later, the animals were killed and the tumours were removed and weighed. In a second, similar experiment, β -carotene was administered intraperitoneally two weeks after tumour-cell inoculation. In the first experiment, β -carotene prolonged the time to 50% tumour incidence from 14 days in controls to 21 days in those given β -carotene [statistics unspecified] and reduced the mean tumour weight from 67.0 ± 18.1 g in controls to 22.1 ± 24.4 g in animals given β -carotene ($p < 0.01$ [statistical test unspecified]). In the second experiment, β -carotene prolonged survival (at week 10, 3/6 controls and 5/6 animals given β -carotene were still alive), reduced the number of rats with tumours (6/6 in controls and 4/6 in those on β -carotene) and reduced the mean tumour weight from 147.1 ± 73.4 g in controls to 66.8 ± 44.3 g in those given β -carotene ($p < 0.05$ [statistical test unspecified]) (Wang *et al.*, 1989).

SCC VII cells: Two groups of 15 male C3H mice, eight to ten weeks old, received subcutaneous implantations of 2×10^6 SCC-VII carcinoma cells into one leg. After seven days, one group of mice received intraperitoneal injections of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene (soya-based emulsion) daily for five days, while the other group served as untreated controls. β -Carotene delayed the tumour growth, measured as the number of days required to reach a volume of 500 mm³, by 0.3 ± 0.3 day [no further data presented; statistics unspecified] (Teicher *et al.*, 1994).

FSaII cells: Three groups of 15 male C3H mice, eight to ten weeks old, received subcutaneous implantations of 2×10^6 FSaII fibrosarcoma cells into one leg. They then received intraperitoneal injections of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene (soya-based emulsion) either once (on day 7), three times (on days 7, 9 and 11) or five times (on days 7–11). A fourth group of 15 male mice served as untreated controls. β -Carotene delayed tumour growth, measured as the number of days required to reach a volume of 500 mm³, by 0.3 ± 0.3 , 0.8 ± 0.3 and 1.2 ± 0.4 days after one, three and five injections, respectively [no further data presented; statistics unspecified] (Teicher *et al.*, 1994).

(m) *Virus-induced tumours (Table 35)*

Mouse: Two groups of 20 male inbred CBA/J mice, five weeks old, were fed powdered basal diet containing 6190 IU/kg vitamin A palmitate and 4.3 mg/kg β -carotene, with or without the addition of 90 mg/kg β -carotene, for life [formulation in the diet unspecified]. After three days, 10 mice of each group were inoculated intramuscularly with 0.1 ml of a suspension of Moloney murine sarcoma virus (M-MuSV; 10^{-1} g eq/ml), and the other 10 mice with 0.1 ml of the same viral suspension diluted 1:10 with buffer (10^{-2} g eq/ml) [study duration unspecified]. Several weeks later, a second experiment was conducted, in which the diet was supplemented with 120 instead of 90 mg/kg β -carotene. In a third experiment, 20 mice were fed the unsupplemented basal diet and were inoculated intramuscularly with a 0.2 ml M-MuSV suspension (10^{-1} g eq/ml) on day 1. By day 7, when the mice had a mean tumour score of 2 (on a scale of 1–4), 10 of the mice were fed the basal diet supplemented with β -carotene [concentration unspecified but probably 90 or 120 mg/kg], while the other 10 mice were continued on the unsupplemented basal diet for another 31 days, after which the experiment was terminated. Tumour incidence and persistence were reduced, the latency was increased, and tumour regression was accelerated in mice fed the β -carotene-supplemented diets before, during or after the inoculation of either the low or the high dose of M-MuSV. The tumour incidences were 20/20 and 13/20 ($p < 0.005$; χ^2 test) with the low inoculum and 17/20 and 9/20 ($p < 0.009$; χ^2 test) with the high inoculum in both unsupplemented and both β -carotene-supplemented groups, respectively. The tumour latencies were (Student's *t* test) 5.8 ± 0.3 and 8.3 ± 0.6 days ($p < 0.005$) with the low inoculum and 7.1 ± 0.4 and 10.5 ± 0.8 days ($p < 0.008$) with the high inoculum in the unsupplemented and 90 mg/kg β -carotene-supplemented diet groups, respectively, and 6.1 ± 0.2 and 7.1 ± 0.2 days ($p < 0.01$) with the low inoculum and 7.9 ± 0.3 and 9.8 ± 1.0 days ($p < 0.05$) with the high inoculum in the unsupplemented and 120 mg/kg β -carotene-supplemented diet groups, respectively. The average numbers of days of tumour persistence were (Student's *t* test) 12.9 ± 1.5 and 7.1 ± 1.1 ($p < 0.01$) with the low inoculum and 12.7

± 2.1 and 5.5 ± 1.0 ($p < 0.03$) with the high inoculum in the unsupplemented and 90 mg/kg β -carotene-supplemented groups, respectively, and 12.3 ± 1.5 and 6.6 ± 0.9 ($p < 0.03$) with the low inoculum and 8.5 ± 1.0 and 5.5 ± 1.0 ($p < 0.1$) with the high inoculum in the unsupplemented and 120 mg/kg β -carotene-supplemented diet groups, respectively. The average times of tumour regression (days from midpoint of maximum tumour size) were (Student's *t* test) 7.1 ± 1.1 and 3.4 ± 1.2 ($p < 0.02$) with the low inoculum and 6.8 ± 0.9 and 2.0 ± 0.0 ($p < 0.006$) with the high inoculum in the unsupplemented and 90 mg/kg β -carotene-supplemented diet groups, respectively, and 7.0 ± 0.9 and 3.2 ± 0.4 ($p < 0.005$) with the low inoculum and 5.1 ± 0.6 and 2.8 ± 0.5 with the high inoculum in the unsupplemented and 120 mg/kg β -carotene-supplemented diet group, respectively. When the β -carotene-supplemented diet was fed after the tumours had developed (third experiment), tumour regression was rapid (all tumours had disappeared by day 38), and none of the mice given the β -carotene supplement died, whereas 3/10 mice fed the unsupplemented diet died between days 28 and 30 and the tumours did not regress at all (Seifter *et al.*, 1982).

4.2.1.2 β -Carotene with other potential inhibitors (Table 36)

(a) Skin

Four groups of 45 female hairless Crl:Skh1 (hr/hr) BR mice, 80 days old, were fed standard mouse chow either as such or fortified with 0.5% (w/w) β -carotene (type 1, all *trans*, synthetic, crystalline), 0.12% (w/w) vitamin E (D- α -tocopheryl succinate) or 0.5% β -carotene plus 0.12% vitamin E for 32 weeks. In week 11, all mice received a single application of 150 mg DMBA in acetone on the dorsal skin; one week later, 5 mg TPA in acetone were applied twice weekly for 11 weeks and once weekly for another nine weeks. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. In the groups fed diets containing β -carotene, its concentrations were significantly increased in liver and skin but remained near the detection limit in serum throughout the study. Skin tumours developed in 97.2% of the mice towards the

end of the study. In weeks 17 and 18, the incidence of skin tumours in mice given β -carotene or β -carotene plus vitamin E was statistically significantly lower than that in the controls ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test [no further details given]). The first skin tumour appeared statistically significantly later in mice fed β -carotene than in controls, and the first to eighth tumours appeared significantly later in mice given β -carotene plus vitamin E than the first 10 tumours in controls ($p < 0.05$; Kruskal-Wallis test [no further details given]). The cumulative numbers of skin tumours in week 27 were 733 in the controls and 500, 551 and 579 in animals given β -carotene, vitamin E or β -carotene plus vitamin E, respectively [statistics unspecified]. Both the cumulative number of skin tumours and the time to their appearance were lower (analysis of variance) in the mice fed β -carotene ($p = 0.03$), vitamin E ($p = 0.06$) or β -carotene plus vitamin E ($p = 0.04$) than in the controls. Overall, the protective effect of dietary β -carotene was not affected by simultaneous administration of vitamin E (Lambert *et al.*, 1994).

(b) Colon

Rat: Three groups of 20 male Fischer 344 rats, five weeks old, were maintained for five weeks on a semipurified diet containing 20% casein, 59% sucrose, 4% cellulose, 0.15% choline, 4% mineral mixture, 1% vitamin mixture and 12% olive oil (9.6% palmitic acid, 2.7% stearic acid, 80.6% oleic acid, 5.8% linoleic acid and 0.6% α -linolenic acid); 9% olive oil plus 3% perilla oil (6.2% palmitic acid, 2.0% stearic acid, 17.7% oleic acid, 15.2% linoleic acid and 56.0% α -linolenic acid) or 12% perilla oil. Three groups of rats fed one of these diets received 50 mg/kg bw per day β -carotene in distilled water orally for five weeks. At six, seven and eight weeks of age, 10 rats in each group were injected subcutaneously with 15 mg/kg bw azoxy-methane, and the other 10 animals in each group served as non-azoxymethane-treated controls. All rats were killed at 10 weeks of age (i.e. for the azoxymethane-treated rats, four weeks after the first administration of the carcinogen). The colons of five azoxymethane-treated rats and five non-azoxymethane-treated controls

Table 36. Effects of combinations of β -carotene and other chemicals or physical agents on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Other agent (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, Crl:Slch2 (hr/hr) BR, female	45	DMBA, 150 mg; TPA, twice weekly, 11 weeks; once weekly, 9 weeks	0.5% in diet	0.12% vitamin E in diet	Before and during	Tumour incidence: β -Carotene: reduced ($p < 0.05$) Vitamin E: reduced ($p < 0.05$) β -Carotene + vitamin E: reduced ($p < 0.05$)	Lambert <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Colon	Rat, Fischer 344, male	5	Azoxymethane, 3 x 15 mg/kg bw, s.c.	50 mg/kg bw, orally in distilled water, daily	Perilla oil, 3 and 12% in diet	Before, during and after	Preneoplasia (aberrant crypt foci): β -Carotene (high dose): 26% ($p < 0.01$) Perilla oil (3%): 58% ($p < 0.01$) Perilla oil (12%): 82% ($p < 0.01$) Combination (3% perilla oil): 87% ($p < 0.01$) Combination (12% perilla oil): 91% ($p < 0.01$)	Komaki <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Colon	Rat, Fischer 344, male	20	Azoxymethane [dose and route unspecified]	1, 10 and 20 mg/kg diet	1 and 8% wheat bran in diet	During and after (?)	Aberrant crypt foci, multiplicity: 1% wheat bran + 20 mg β -carotene: 70% ($p < 0.05$) 8% wheat bran + 20 mg β -carotene: 80% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours, incidence: 1% wheat bran + 20 mg β -carotene: 73% ($p < 0.05$) 8% wheat bran + 20 mg β -carotene: 82% ($p < 0.05$)	Alabaster <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Lung	Mouse, A/J, female	24-28	NNK: total dose, 9.2 mg/mouse; drinking-water	2.14 g/kg diet	0.009 g/kg retinol in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours, combination: Incidence: none (NS) Multiplicity: 19% (NS)	Castonguay <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Respiratory tract	Hamster, male	20	NDEA; 17.8 mg/kg bw, s.c., twice weekly for 20 weeks	Injectable solution, 1.5 mg per injection, s.c., twice weekly for 20 weeks	Oltipraz; 300 mg/kg diet 4-HPR; 98 mg/kg diet	Before, during and after	Carcinoma incidence: β -Carotene alone: 48% reduction (NS) β -Carotene + oltipraz: 90% reduction ($p < 0.005$) β -Carotene + oltipraz + 4 HPR: 100% reduction ($p < 0.001$)	Moon <i>et al.</i> (1994)

Table 36 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/ Group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Other agent (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.5% DMBA (0.6 mg/ painting)	200 or 400 μ g/ animal per day by mouth	200 or 400 μ g α -tocopherol/animal per day	After	Carcinoma burden: β -carotene: none (SU) α -Tocopherol: none (SU) Combination: 87% (SU)	Shklar <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	10	0.5% DMBA, painted thrice weekly	50 μ g/ animal, painted thrice weekly	12.5 μ g β -carotene + 12.5 μ g α -tocopherol + 12.5 μ g glutathione + 12.5 μ g ascorbic acid	During	Carcinoma burden: β -Carotene: 85% ($p < 0.001$) α -Tocopherol: 49% ($p < 0.01$) Glutathione: 85% ($p < 0.01$) Ascorbic acid: none (NS) Combination: 96% ($p < 0.001$)	Shklar <i>et al.</i> (1993)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	15	AcO-NDMA, 2 mg/kg bw/ painting; twice monthly, 6 months	5.8 μ mol/L [?] in drinking-water	α -Tocopherol, 5.8 μ mol/L [?] in drinking-water	Before, during and after	Tumour incidence: β -Carotene or α -tocopherol alone: 93% ($p < 0.01$) Combination: 100% ($p < 0.01$)	Azuine & Bhide (1992)
Pancreas	Rat, Bor(WISW, Cpb)Wistar, female	40	Azaserine, 30 mg/kg bw, i.p., two injections	60 mg/diet	10 g/kg vitamin C, 600 mg/kg vitamin E, 2.5 mg/kg selenium in diet	After	Carcinoma incidence: β -carotene: 71% ($p < 0.05$) Vitamin C: 42% (NS) Vitamin E: 37% (NS) Selenium: 53% ($p < 0.05$) Mixture: 71% ($p < 0.05$)	Appel <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Pancreas	Rats, Wistar, male	15?	Azaserine, 3 x 30 mg/kg bw, i.p.	100 and 1000 mg/kg diet	1 and 2.5 mg/kg selenium in diet	Before and during	Preneoplasia: β -Carotene (high dose): 42% ($p < 0.05$) Selenium (high dose): 23% ($p < 0.05$) Combination (high doses): 19% ($p < 0.05$) Combination (low doses): 36% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours Compounds alone and combined: none (NS)	Appel & Woutersen (1996)
Pancreas	Rats, Wistar, male	15?	Azaserine, 3 x 30 mg/kg bw, i.p.	100 and 1000 mg/kg diet	1 and 2.5 mg/kg selenium in diet	After	Preneoplasia β -Carotene (high dose): 29% ($p < 0.05$) Selenium (high dose): 36% ($p < 0.01$) Combination (high doses): 25% ($p < 0.05$) Combination (low dos): 24% ($p < 0.05$) Tumours Compounds alone and combined: none (NS)	Appel & Woutersen (1996)

Table 36 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/ Group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Other agent (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Pancreas	Hamster, male	40	NBOPA; 3 weekly doses of 20 mg; s.c.	60 mg/kg diet	10 kg/kg vitamin C in diet	After	Preneoplasia: none (NS) Carcinomas: none (NS)	Appel <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Fibro-sarcoma	Mouse, C3H, male	15	FSall, 2 x 10 ⁶ cells, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw; 3 doses, i.p.	150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide, 3 doses i.p. or 15 mg/kg carmustine, 3 doses i.p.	Before and during	Fibrosarcoma growth delay: β -Carotene + cyclophosphamide: 73% (SU) β -Carotene + carmustine: 112% (SU)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Fibro-sarcoma	Mouse, C3H, male	15	FSall, 2 x 10 ⁶ cells, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw; 5 daily doses, i.p.	10 mg/kg bw melphalan, 3 doses i.p.; 40 mg/kg bw 5-fluorouracil, 5 doses, i.p.; 0.8 mg/kg bw methotrexate, 5 doses, i.p.; 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide, 3 doses, i.p.	Before and during	Fibrosarcoma, growth delay: β -Carotene + melphalan: 333% (SU) β -Carotene + cyclophosphamide: 144% (SU) β -Carotene + methotrexate: none (SU) β -Carotene + 5-fluorouracil: none (rather, a significant decrease)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Fibro-sarcoma	Mouse, C3H, male	15	Fsall, 2 x 10 ⁶ cells, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw, 14 daily doses, s.c. plus 10 mg/kg bw minocycline, 14 daily doses, i.p.	10 mg/kg bw melphalan, single dose: i.p.; 10 mg/kg bw CDDP, single dose, i.p.; 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide, 3 doses i.p.; 150 mg/kg bw ifosfamide, 3 doses, i.p.; 40 mg/kg bw 5-fluorouracil, 5 doses, i.p.; 15 mg/kg bw etoposide, 5 doses, i.p.; 1.75 mg/kg bw adriamycin, 5 doses, i.p.	Before and during	Fibrosarcoma, growth delay: β -Carotene + minocycline + melphalan: 259% (SU) β -Carotene + minocycline + CDDP: 24% (SU) β -Carotene + minocycline + cyclophosphamide: 28% (SU) β -Carotene + minocycline + ifosfamide: 40% (SU) β -Carotene + minocycline + etoposide: 243% (SU) β -Carotene + minocycline + adriamycin: 225% (SU) β -Carotene + minocycline + 5-fluorouracil: none (rather, a significant decrease)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)

Table 36 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/ Group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	β -Carotene (dose, route)	Other agent (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Fibro-sarcoma	Mouse, C3H, male	15	SCC VII, 2 x 10 ⁶ cells, s.c.	10 mg/kg bw, 5 daily doses, i.p.	10 mg/kg bw melphalan, single dose, i.p.; 10 mg/kg bw CDDP, single dose, i.p.; 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide, 3 doses, i.p.; 15 mg/kg bw carmustine, 3 doses, i.p.; 40 mg/kg bw 5-fluorouracil, 5 doses, i.p.; 1.75 mg/kg bw adriamycin, 5 doses, i.p.	Before and during	Fibrosarcoma, growth delay β -Carotene + melphalan: 115% (SU) β -Carotene + cyclophosphamide: 38% (SU) β -Carotene + CDDP or carmustine or 5-fluorouracil or adriamycin: none (SU)	Teicher <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Inoculated adeno-carcinoma cells	Mouse, CBA/J, male	10-12	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	30 Gy X-rays	After	Adenocarcinoma β -Carotene: survival of mice, 49% ($p < 0.001$); tumour growth, 75% (SU) Irradiation: survival of mice, 105% ($p < 0.001$); tumour growth, partial regression (SU) Combination: complete tumour regression and no deaths (SU)	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1983)
Inoculated adeno-carcinoma cells	Mouse, CBA/J, male	10-12	2 x 10 ⁵ C3HBA cells	90 mg/kg diet	30 Gy X-rays	After	Adenocarcinoma β -Carotene: survival of mice, 46% ($p < 0.001$); tumour growth, 26% Irradiation: survival of mice, 129% ($p < 0.001$); tumour growth, partial regression (SU) Combination: complete tumour regression and no deaths (SU)	Seifter <i>et al.</i> (1983)

i.p., intraperitoneally; NS, not significant; NBOPA, *N*-nitrosobis(oxopropyl)amine; s.c., subcutaneously; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; 4-HPR, *N*-(4-hydroxyphenyl)retinamide; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene; SU, statistics unspecified; AcO-NDMA, *N*-nitroso(acetoxymethyl)methylamine; NNK, 4-(*N*-nitrosomethylamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone; Fsall, fibrosarcoma cell line; CDDP, *cis*-diamminedichloroplatinum; SCC-VII, squamous-cell carcinoma cell line; C3HBA, adenocarcinoma cell line

in each group were collected to establish the presence of colonic aberrant crypt foci and to count the number of aberrant crypts per colon and the number of aberrant crypts per focus. Mean food intake and mean body weights were not significantly affected by β -carotene or perilla oil. No neoplasms were found. Aberrant crypt foci were found only in the colons of rats treated with azoxymethane. β -Carotene and perilla oil alone and in combination significantly suppressed the development of these preneoplastic colonic changes (Table 37; Komaki *et al.*, 1996).

The effects of β -carotene, incorporated at various concentrations into a high-fat diet with low or high levels of dietary fibre (wheat bran [formulation in the diet unspecified]), on the occurrence of aberrant crypt foci and tumours of the colon were investigated in four-week old male Fischer 344 rats given two subcutaneous injections of 15 mg/kg bw azoxymethane in saline in weeks 3 and 4. Six weeks after the last injection, five animals per group were killed and examined for the presence of aberrant crypt foci; the remaining animals were continued

on their respective diets for an additional 20 weeks. The results (Table 38) show a strong, dose-dependent protective effect of both β -carotene and wheat bran against colon carcinogenesis (Alabaster *et al.*, 1995, 1996). [The Working Group noted discrepancies in the total number of aberrant crypt foci and the incidence of colonic adenomas between the two publications.]

(c) Lung

Mouse: Two groups of female A/J mice [initial number unspecified], six to seven weeks old, were fed powdered AIN-76A diet for 23 weeks; a third group received the same diet supplemented with 2.14 g/kg β -carotene (purity, 65%; 0.012 μ mol/d per mouse [formulation in the diet unspecified]) plus 0.009 g/kg retinol (purity, 70%; 6×10^{-6} μ mol/d per mouse) for 23 weeks. During weeks 2–9, all 24 mice given β -carotene plus retinol and 28 in one of the groups on the unsupplemented diet received 4-(*N*-nitrosomethylamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone (NNK) in the drinking-water, for a total dose of 9.2 mg per mouse. The body weights of mice given β -carotene plus retinol were slightly lower than

Table 37. Incidence and numbers of aberrant crypt foci in the colons of azoxymethane-treated male Fischer 344 rats fed diets containing perilla oil and β -carotene in distilled water

Dietary addition ^a	Incidence	No./colon	No. of aberrant crypts/colon	No. of aberrant crypts/focus
12% olive oil	5/5	217.4 \pm 23.5	381 \pm 38.1	1.76 \pm 0.09
12% olive oil and 50 mg/kg bw β -carotene	5/5	159.8 \pm 16.4 ^b	267 \pm 33.8 ^b	1.67 \pm 0.05
9% olive oil and 3% perilla oil	5/5	91.4 \pm 15.5 ^b	148.6 \pm 29.4 ^b	1.62 \pm 0.08 ^c
9% olive oil, 3% perilla oil and 50 mg/kg bw β -carotene	5/5	28.0 \pm 8.3 ^{b,d,e}	4.3 \pm 11.3 ^{b,d,e}	1.44 \pm 0.09 ^{b,d,f}
12% perilla oil	5/5	40.0 \pm 16.5 ^{b,e}	56.8 \pm 15.0 ^{b,e}	1.47 \pm 0.18 ^b
12% perilla oil and 50 mg/kg bw β -carotene	5/5	19.3 \pm 11.0 ^{b,d}	28.0 \pm 16.5 ^{b,d,g}	1.44 \pm 0.03 ^{b,d}

From Komaki *et al.* (1996); for further details, see text

^a All rats received a subcutaneous injection of 15 mg/kg bw azoxymethane once a week for three weeks.

^b Significantly different from group 1; $p < 0.01$: Dunnett's *t* test

^c Significantly different from group 1; $p < 0.05$: Dunnett's *t* test

^d Significantly different from group 2; $p < 0.01$: Dunnett's *t* test

^e Significantly different from group 3; $p < 0.01$: Dunnett's *t* test

^f Significantly different from group 3; $p < 0.05$: Dunnett's *t* test

^g Significantly different from group 5; $p < 0.05$: Dunnett's *t* test

Table 38. Numbers of aberrant crypt foci (ACF) and incidence of tumours in the colon of azoxymethane-treated Fischer 344 rats fed a high-fat diet containing various concentrations of wheat bran and β -carotene

Group	Treatment		No. of ACF/rat (n = 5)	Incidence of colon tumours (n = 15)		
	Wheat bran (%)	β -Carotene (mg/kg)		Total	Adenoma	Carcinoma
1	1	0	44 \pm 4.2	11/15	12/15 ^a	6/15
2	1	1	25 ^b \pm 3.3	7/15	5/15	3/15
3	1	10	21 \pm 0.7 ^c	3/15 ^e	1/15	2/15
4	1	20	13 \pm 2.9 ^{c,d}	3/15 ^e	2/15	1/15
5	8	0	21 \pm 2.9 ^c	4/15 ^e	2/15	2/15
6	8	1	16 \pm 1.4 ^c	3/15 ^e	1/15	2/15
7	8	10	11 \pm 0.6 ^{c,d}	2/15 ^e	1/15	1/15
8	8	20	9 \pm 0.6 ^{c,d}	2/15 ^e	1/15	1/15

From Alabaster *et al.* (1995, 1996), for further details, see text

^a Given as 53% by Alabaster *et al.* (1995)

^b Given as 35 by Alabaster *et al.* (1995)

^c Statistically significantly different from group 1; $p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test

^d Statistically significantly different from group 5; $p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test

^e Statistically significantly different from group 1; $p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test

those of the untreated controls and comparable to those treated with NNK alone. Six of the 24 untreated controls developed lung tumours, with an average of 0.4 ± 0.1 tumours per surviving mouse. β -Carotene plus retinol did not reduce the incidence of tumours (24/24 versus 28/28 in the NNK-treated controls) or the number of tumours per surviving mouse (12.7 ± 3.1 versus 15.7 ± 2.7 ; not significant; Fisher's exact test) (Castonguay *et al.*, 1991).

Hamster: Male Syrian golden hamsters, five to six weeks of age were given subcutaneous injections twice weekly of 1.5 mg β -carotene (micellar form dispersed in an aqueous solution of 40 mg/ml), oltipraz at 300 mg/kg diet and *N*-(4-hydroxyphenyl)retinamide at 98 mg/kg diet, alone or in combination. After one week of the respective diets, groups of animals were given twice weekly subcutaneous injections of 17.8 mg/kg bw NDEA for 20 weeks; in the groups receiving β -carotene, NDEA was administered 24 h after the carotenoid injection. Vehicle controls received saline. At the termination of the study, after 25 weeks on the test

diets, the entire respiratory tree was removed and the incidences of pulmonary carcinomas and tracheal papillomas were determined. None of agents significantly inhibited tumour formation when given alone, but β -carotene in combination with oltipraz synergistically decreased the incidence of carcinomas by 90% ($p < 0.005$), and β -carotene in combination with oltipraz and *N*-(4-hydroxyphenyl)retinamide resulted in a 100% reduction ($p < 0.001$) (Moon *et al.*, 1994).

(d) Buccal pouch

Hamster: The mucosa of the right buccal pouches of 100 male Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 95–125 g, were painted three times per week with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.6 mg DMBA per painting) for 14 weeks, when all animals had moderate-sized tumours in the right pouch. The animals were then divided into groups of 20 animals and received either no further treatment (controls), 0.2 ml vegetable oil daily by gavage (vehicle control) or the same volume of vegetable oil containing 400 μ g β -carotene, 400

μg α -tocopherol or 200 μg β -carotene plus 200 μg α -tocopherol. At 22 weeks, the animals receiving β -carotene plus α -tocopherol were all alive and in good condition, and their treatment was extended to 28 weeks, whereas the animals in the other groups were weak and cachectic (four died and the others were killed for humane reasons), had significantly higher body weights (138 g) than the animals in the other groups (103 g), had a total buccal pouch tumour burden of about 500 mm^3 as compared with about 3500–4200 mm^3 in the other groups [data presented as diagrams only; no information on statistical analysis] and showed no metastases in the cervical lymph nodes, whereas metastatic spread to cervical lymph nodes was found in many other animals. β -Carotene treatment alone did not result in regression of these tumours, the total tumour burden at 22 weeks being about 3700 mm^3 with β -carotene and 4000 mm^3 in the vehicle controls. All of the tumours appeared to be epidermoid carcinomas, which underwent cellular degeneration only in animals treated with β -carotene plus α -tocopherol. At 28 weeks, no buccal pouch tumours were found grossly in several of the hamsters treated with β -carotene plus α -tocopherol, but some had tumours larger than those found at 14 weeks (Shklar *et al.*, 1989).

The mucosa of the right buccal pouches of 60 male Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 92–123 g, was painted with a 0.5% DMBA solution in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 12 or 14 weeks. Groups of 10 animals received no further treatment (DMBA control group) or were given either a mixture of 12.5 μg β -carotene plus 12.5 μg DL- α -tocopherol acid succinate plus 12.5 μg reduced glutathione plus 12.5 μg L-ascorbic acid or 50 μg β -carotene, 50 μg reduced glutathione, 50 μg DL- α -tocopherol acid succinate or 50 μg L-ascorbic acid in a volume of 0.5 ml mineral oil by mouth [route of administration not further specified] three times per week on alternate days to DMBA, for 12 or 14 weeks. One-half of the animals in each group were killed after 12 weeks, and the other half after 14 weeks. At both times, treatment with the mixture, with β -carotene or with glutathione or α -tocopherol, but not ascorbic acid, appeared to have significantly reduced the inci-

dence of cheek pouch leukoplakia and the incidence, area, volume and total burden of cheek pouch tumours (carcinomas *in situ* and early carcinomas), the mixture being significantly more effective than β -carotene, glutathione or α -tocopherol alone; e.g. the values for the tumour burden after 12 weeks were: $2.89 \pm 0.6 \text{ mm}^3$ for the DMBA control, $0.125 \pm 0.01 \text{ mm}^3$ for animals given the mixture ($p < 0.001$), $0.434 \pm 0.1 \text{ mm}^3$ for those given β -carotene ($p < 0.001$), $0.438 \pm 0.1 \text{ mm}^3$ for those given glutathione ($p < 0.01$), $1.47 \pm 0.25 \text{ mm}^3$ for those given α -tocopherol ($p < 0.01$) and $3.69 \pm 0.62 \text{ mm}^3$ for those given ascorbic acid (p value for difference between the mixture and β -carotene, < 0.01 ; between the mixture and glutathione, < 0.01 and between the mixture and α -tocopherol, < 0.001 ; Student's t test) (Shklar *et al.*, 1993).

Four groups of 15 female inbred Syrian hamsters, eight weeks old, were given drinking-water alone or with β -carotene at 5.8 nmol/L [formulation in the drinking-water unspecified], α -tocopherol at 5.8 nmol/L or β -carotene plus α -tocopherol for 13 months. After two weeks, 2 mg/kg bw AcO-NDMA were applied to the mucosa of the right cheek pouch twice monthly for six months; three additional groups of 15 hamsters were not treated with AcO-NDMA and did not develop cheek pouch tumours. Both β -carotene and α -tocopherol reduced the incidence of cheek pouch tumours induced by AcO-NDMA, from 14/15 to 1/15 ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test), while no cheek pouch tumours were seen at death in hamsters given the combined treatment ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test). The time to appearance of tumours was 5–10 months in hamsters given AcO-NDMA alone, 8–12 months in those given β -carotene, 9 months in those given α -tocopherol and 6 months in those given β -carotene plus α -tocopherol [statistics unspecified] (Azuine & Bhide, 1992).

(e) Pancreas

Rat: Groups of 40 male weanling SPF albino Bor (WISW,Cpb) Wistar rats were fed standard laboratory chow and received two intraperitoneal injections of 30 mg/kg bw azaserine in 0.9% saline, one at 19 days and one at 26 days of age. One week after the second injection, the

animals were allocated randomly to one of eight groups. Each group was switched to an AIN-76 diet with a high concentration of saturated fat (20% lard) either as such (azaserine controls) [use of placebo beadlets unspecified] or supplemented with 60 mg/kg β -carotene (as water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β -carotene), 10 g/kg vitamin C (as ascorbic acid), 60 mg/kg β -carotene plus 10 g/kg vitamin C, 600 mg/kg vitamin E (as 50% DL- α -tocopherol), 2.5 mg/kg selenium (as sodium selenite), 600 mg/kg vitamin E plus 2.5 mg/kg selenium, or 60 mg/kg β -carotene plus 10 g/kg vitamin C plus 600 mg/kg vitamin E plus 2.5 mg/kg selenium (mix). Autopsies were performed 482–485 days after the second injection of azaserine. Of the 27 animals in all groups that died or were killed before the final autopsy, 10 that died after day 380 were included in the final evaluation; five of these rats had pancreatic tumours, five had renal or hepatic failure, and one died with an unspecified head tumour. Food and energy intake were similar among the various groups, but food conversion efficiency was significantly lower in the groups fed diets supplemented with β -carotene plus vitamin C, selenium, selenium plus vitamin E or the mix. The body and pancreatic weights were similar, except that the mean body weight

of the group receiving the mix was significantly lower than that of the controls. β -Carotene, selenium and vitamin C, alone or in combination, reduced azaserine-induced pancreatic carcinogenesis (Table 39; Appel *et al.*, 1991).

The effect of β -carotene alone or in combination with selenium on the initiation or early promotion and late promotion phases of pancreatic carcinogenesis was studied in 96 azaserine-treated female Wistar rats which had been mated one week earlier. Half of the animals were maintained on a high-fat diet (25% fat, 25% casein, 0.37% DL-methionine, 36.79% wheat starch, 6.18% cellulose, 0.25% choline bitartrate, 4.32% AIN76 minerals supplying 0.13 mg selenium per kg diet, 1.24% AIN76 vitamins and 1.85% calcium phosphate); the other 48 rats were divided into six groups and were fed the high-fat diet supplemented with 100 or 1000 mg/kg β -carotene (added as a 30% suspension in corn oil), 1 or 2.5 mg/kg selenium (as sodium selenite), 100 mg/kg β -carotene plus 1 mg/kg selenium or 1000 mg/kg β -carotene plus 2.5 mg/kg selenium. When the pups were born, 14 groups of 20 males were formed and were fed the same diets as their mothers. At 14 and 21 days of age, the pups received a subcutaneous injection of 30 mg/kg bw azaserine in saline, except for those in one of the groups

Table 39. Atypical acinar-cell nodules (AACN) and tumours in the pancreas of azaserine-treated male Wistar rats maintained on a high-fat diet (HF) supplemented with β -carotene (BC), vitamin C (Vit C), vitamin E (Vit E) and/or selenium (Se) for 15 months

Diet	No. of animals	No. of AACN (diameter)		No. of tumour-bearing rats	No. of carcinoma-bearing rats	No. of adenoma-bearing rats
		0.5–1 mm	1–3 mm			
HF	39	338	200	22	15	7
HF + BC	37	194*	146	9*	4*	5
HF + Vit C	37	157**	104**	14	8	6
HF + BC + Vit C	38	128**	106**	14*	9	5
HF + Vit E	37	212	155	19	9	10
HF + Se	38	181***	97***	13**	7*	6
HF + Vit E + Se	39	150***	92***	9**	5*	4
HF + BC + Vit C + Vit E + Se	38	117***	56***	8**	4*	4

From Appel *et al.* (1991); for details, see text

* $p < 0.05$; ** $p < 0.01$; *** $p < 0.001$; generalized linear regression; error is Poisson, link function is log

kept on unsupplemented diet which received subcutaneous injections of saline only. At five weeks of age, six of the seven groups fed the unsupplemented diet were switched to one of the six supplemented diets to study the effects of the supplements on the late promotion phase; the seventh group was continued on the unsupplemented diet. Also at five weeks of age, the six groups fed the various supplemented diets were switched to unsupplemented diet to study the effects of the supplements on the initiation or early promotion phase. The experiment was terminated when the rats were 29 weeks of age. Body and pancreatic weights were similar in all groups, except that the group receiving 100 mg β -carotene and 1 mg/kg selenium had significantly higher body and absolute pancreatic weights [no further details given]. All animals consumed similar amounts of food, resulting in similar calculated energy intakes. β -Carotene and selenium inhibited azaserine-induced pancreatic carcinogenesis, the strongest effects occurring when selenium was given alone or in combination with β -carotene during the late promotion phase (see Table 40). No (putative) preneoplastic or neoplastic pancreatic lesions were found in saline-treated controls (Appel & Woutersen, 1996).

Hamster: Four groups of 40 male Syrian golden hamsters, five to six weeks old, were fed a standard diet and were injected subcutaneously with 20 mg/kg bw NBOPA [vehicle unspecified] at six, seven and eight weeks of age. One week after the last injection, all hamsters were fed a high-fat diet (20% lard) either as such or supplemented with 60 mg/kg β -carotene (as water-dispersible beadlets containing 10% pure β -carotene), 10 g/kg vitamin C or 60 mg/kg β -carotene plus 10 g/kg vitamin C for the rest of the experiment [use of placebo beadlets unspecified]. Survivors were killed 364 or 365 days after the first injection of NBOPA. The body weights of the hamsters fed the diet supplemented with β -carotene were statistically significantly lower than those of the controls ($p < 0.05$; analysis of variance and Dunnett's *t* test, two-sided). The mean number of advanced ductular lesions in the pancreas was consistently lower in hamsters fed the diets supplemented with either vitamin C alone (1.9 ± 0.3) or

with vitamin C plus β -carotene (1.9 ± 0.3) than in controls (2.9 ± 0.5) or in the animals fed the diet supplemented only with β -carotene (2.9 ± 0.5), but the differences were not statistically significant (analysis of variance). Moreover, no statistically significant difference (χ^2 test) in the incidence or in the mean number of carcinomas *in situ* or invasive carcinomas was found between the various groups; e.g. the incidences of advanced ductular lesions were 9/27, 11/34, 16/35 and 19/35 in the controls and animals receiving β -carotene, vitamin C and β -carotene plus vitamin C, respectively, and those of invasive carcinomas were 12/27, 11/34, 11/35 and 9/35, respectively (Appel *et al.*, 1996).

(f) *Inoculated tumours*

C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells: Groups of 10 female C3H/He mice, five weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^5 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the outer aspect of the thigh and were maintained on powdered basal diet containing 15 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 6.5 mg/kg β -carotene. When the tumours reached an average diameter of 7.5 ± 0.2 mm, one group of mice was continued on the basal diet, one group was switched to basal diet supplemented with 90 mg/kg β -carotene, one group received basal diet supplemented with 5 mg/kg ascorbic acid, and one group received basal diet supplemented with both 90 mg/kg β -carotene and 5 mg/kg ascorbic acid. The average survival times of the mice were 36.3 ± 1.3 days without supplement, 58.5 ± 3.5 days with β -carotene ($p < 0.001$; analysis of variance), 38.1 ± 1.6 days with ascorbic acid and 56.7 ± 1.5 days with both supplements ($p < 0.001$; analysis of variance). β -Carotene, but not ascorbic acid alone or in combination with β -carotene, reduced tumour growth but did not cause tumour regression: after 12 days of feeding the various diets, the average tumour diameters were 21.7 mm without supplement, 17.1 mm with β -carotene, 21.5 mm with ascorbic acid and 17.4 mm with both supplements (Student's *t* test [p values unspecified]) (Rettura *et al.*, 1982).

Forty-four male CBA/J mice, six weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^5 C3HBA adenocarcinoma cells in the outer

Table 40. Putatively preneoplastic atypical acinar-cell nodules (AACN), carcinoma *in situ* and atypical acinar-cell foci (AACF) in the pancreas of azaserine-treated male Wistar rats fed a high-fat diet (HF) with β -carotene (BC) and/or selenium (Se) at two phases of the carcinogenesis process

Diet	AACN No./cm ²	Area (mm ²)	No./cm ³	Mean diameter (mm)	Area as % pancreas	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i> Incidence	Multiplicity	Multiplicity of AACF > 1 mm
Initiation or early promotion phase								
HF	46.2	0.21	1521	409	9.5	3/15	7.0 ± 1.5	0.3 ± 0.2
HF + 100 mg/kg BC	40.3	0.20	1281*	430	8.1	3/15	7.6 ± 1.6	0.2 ± 0.1
HF + 1000 mg/kg BC	30.7	0.18	1069*	405	5.5	4/27	4.8 ± 1.4	0.3 ± 0.2
HF + 1 mg/kg Se	36.2	0.18	1280*	384	6.5	5/11	3.1 ± 0.8	0.5 ± 0.2
HF + 2.5 mg/kg Se	35.8	0.18	1178*	407	6.4	2/15	5.0 ± 1.5	0.1 ± 0.1
HF + 100 mg/kg BC + 1 mg/kg Se	29.4	0.19	974*	412	5.5	5/15	6.8 ± 2.4	0.5 ± 0.2
HF + 1000 mg/kg BC + 2.5 mg/kg Se	37.4	0.18	1232*	416	6.9	4/15	6.0 ± 2.4	0.3 ± 0.2
Late promotion phase								
HF	46.2	0.21	1521	409	9.5	3/15	7.0 ± 1.5	0.3 ± 0.2
HF + 100 mg/kg BC	29.8	0.18	1102*	389	5.3*	3/15	4.1 ± 1.6	0.2 ± 0.1
HF + 1000 mg/kg BC	33.9	0.20	1183**	408	6.7*	2/15	5.8 ± 1.4	0.1 ± 0.1
HF + 1 mg/kg Se	25.5**	0.18	986**	392	4.6**	6/15	5.8 ± 1.3	0.4 ± 0.1
HF + 2.5 mg/kg Se	24.8**	0.17	973**	371	4.2**	5/15	2.7 ± 0.5	0.3 ± 0.1
HF + 100 mg/kg BC + 1 mg Se	31.2*	0.18*	1149**	382**	5.5**	3/15	4.7 ± 1.4	0.2 ± 0.1
HF + 1000 mg/kg BC + 2.5 mg/kg Se	26.5*	0.16*	1136**	357**	4.2**	3/15	4.0 ± 1.2	0.2 ± 0.1

From Appel & Woutersen (1996); for details, see text

* $p < 0.05$; ** $p < 0.01$; analysis of variance

aspect of the right thigh and were fed a basal diet containing 15 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 6.4 mg/kg β -carotene. On day 13, when the mean diameter of the tumours was 6.2 ± 0.3 mm, 20 mice were randomly selected and distributed into two groups of 10 animals, one of which was continued on unsupplemented basal diet and the other given basal diet supplemented with 90 mg/kg β -carotene. The tumours of the other 24 tumour-bearing mice received 3000 rad (30 Gy) X-irradiation, and the mice were divided randomly into two groups of 12, one of which was continued on unsupplemented diet, while the other received the supplement of β -carotene. One year after irradiation, five of the 10 surviving mice fed β -carotene were switched back to basal diet, while the other five animals were continued on the β -carotene-supplemented diet. A similar experiment was begun nine weeks after the first, in which the mean tumour diameter on day 13 was 5.6 ± 0.2 mm and the mice were switched back to basal diet 13.5 months after irradiation. In neither experiment was there a significant difference in body weight between groups. Unirradiated mice fed the unsupplemented diet had an average survival time of 41.2 days in experiment 1 and 43.3 days in experiment 2. β -Carotene increased the average survival times to 61.2 and 63.3 days in experiments 1 and 2, respectively ($p < 0.001$ for each experiment; analysis of variance), and slowed tumour growth considerably [statistics unspecified], an average tumour diameter of about 16.8 mm being reached in weeks 12 and 21 in experiment 1 and in weeks 19 and 24 in experiment 2 in the unsupplemented and β -carotene-supplemented animals, respectively. Local irradiation alone increased the average survival time to 84.4 and 99.1 days in experiments 1 and 2, respectively ($p < 0.001$ for both experiments; analysis of variance), and caused partial tumour regression in nearly all mice (one mouse showed tumour regression to an impalpable level, indicating complete regression), but tumour growth resumed after 18 and 24 days in experiment 1 and 2, respectively. Local irradiation combined with feeding of β -carotene led to complete tumour regression within 18 and 12 weeks in experiments 1 and 2, respectively. Twenty-two of the

24 irradiated mice fed the β -carotene-supplemented diet survived for one year, whereas mice that were only irradiated or only fed β -carotene were all dead by three months. Of the six irradiated mice in experiment 1 that were switched back to unsupplemented basal diet after one year, two developed tumours after 133 and 275 days, whereas none of the five irradiated mice continued on the β -carotene-supplemented basal diet redeveloped tumours. In experiment 2, none of the 11 irradiated mice that were switched back to the unsupplemented basal diet after 13.5 months or continued on the β -carotene-supplemented basal diet redeveloped tumours (Seifter *et al.*, 1983).

SCC VII cells: Groups of 15 male C3H mice, eight to ten weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^6 SCC VII carcinoma cells into one leg; one of the groups served as untreated controls. Mice in seven of the groups received five daily intraperitoneal injections of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene (soya-based emulsion) on days 7–11; one of these groups was not further treated, while the other six groups received either one intraperitoneal injection of 10 mg/kg bw melphalan or 10 mg/kg bw *cis*-diamminedichloroplatinum(II) (CDDP) on day 7, immediately after the β -carotene injection; three intraperitoneal injections of 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide or 15 mg/kg bw carmustine on days 7, 9 and 11; or five intraperitoneal injections of 40 mg/kg bw 5-fluorouracil or 1.75 mg/kg bw adriamycin on days 7–11. Six groups that were not treated with β -carotene were similarly treated with melphalan, CDDP, cyclophosphamide, carmustine, 5-fluorouracil or adriamycin alone. Only a minimal delay in tumour growth (number of days required to reach a volume of 500 mm³), 0.3 ± 0.3 day, was seen with β -carotene alone. β -Carotene increased the delay in tumour growth caused by melphalan, from 2.7 ± 0.3 to 5.8 ± 0.6 days, and that due to cyclophosphamide from 13.5 ± 1.5 to 18.6 ± 1.7 days [statistics unspecified]. β -Carotene did not affect the delay in tumour growth caused by CDDP (6.7 ± 0.6 versus 6.8 ± 0.7 days), carmustine (3.2 ± 0.4 versus 3.4 ± 0.5 days), 5-fluorouracil (2.4 ± 0.3 versus 2.2 ± 0.3 days) or adriamycin (1.6 ± 0.3 versus

1.7 ± 0.3 days) [statistics unspecified] (Teicher *et al.*, 1994).

FSaII cells: Groups of 15 male C3H mice, eight to ten weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^6 FSaII fibrosarcoma cells into one leg. One of the groups served as untreated controls. Mice in four other groups received one intraperitoneal injection of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene (soya-based emulsion) on day 7; one of these groups was not further treated, while the other three groups received one intraperitoneal injection of 10 mg/kg bw melphalan, 10 mg/kg bw CDDP or 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide on day 7, immediately after the β -carotene injection. Three groups were similarly treated with melphalan, CDDP or cyclophosphamide alone. β -Carotene alone minimally delayed tumour growth, by 0.3 ± 0.3 day. It increased the delay in tumour growth caused by melphalan from 2.7 ± 0.4 to 3.7 ± 0.5 days, by CDDP from 7.5 ± 0.6 to 9.5 ± 1.1 days and by cyclophosphamide from 4.3 ± 0.5 to 8.0 ± 0.8 days [statistics unspecified]. Mice in three of the groups were injected intraperitoneally with 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene on days 7, 9 and 11; one of the groups was not treated further, while the two other groups received three intraperitoneal injections of 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide or 15 mg/kg bw carmustine on days 7, 9 and 11. Two groups were similarly treated with cyclophosphamide or carmustine alone. β -Carotene delayed tumour growth slightly, by 0.8 ± 0.3 day, but it increased the delay in tumour growth caused by cyclophosphamide from 7.8 ± 0.7 to 13.5 ± 1.5 days and that by carmustine from 2.5 ± 0.4 to 5.3 ± 0.5 days [statistics unspecified]. Mice in five of the groups received an intraperitoneal injection of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene on days 7–11; one of the groups was not treated further, while the four other groups received one intraperitoneal injection of 10 mg/kg bw melphalan on day 7, three intraperitoneal injections of 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide on days 7, 9 and 11, or five intraperitoneal injections of 40 mg/kg bw 5-fluorouracil or 0.8 mg/kg bw methotrexate on days 7–11. Two groups were similarly treated with 5-fluorouracil or methotrexate alone. β -Carotene alone increased the delay in tumour growth by 1.2 ± 0.4 days [statistics unspecified]

and increased the delay in tumour growth due to melphalan from 2.7 ± 0.7 to 11.7 ± 0.9 days and that due to cyclophosphamide from 7.8 ± 0.7 to 19.0 ± 1.8 days [statistics unspecified]. It also decreased the delay in tumour growth caused by 5-fluorouracil from 7.6 ± 0.7 to 2.7 ± 0.5 days but did not affect the delay due to methotrexate (2.2 ± 0.4 versus 2.7 ± 0.5 days) (Teicher *et al.*, 1994).

Groups of five male C3H mice, eight to ten weeks old, were inoculated subcutaneously with 2×10^6 FSaII fibrosarcoma cells into one leg. One of the groups served as an untreated control group, and eight groups received daily intraperitoneal injections of 10 mg/kg bw β -carotene (soya-based emulsion) plus 10 mg/kg bw minocycline on days 4–18. One of these groups was not further treated, while the other seven received one intraperitoneal injection of 10 mg/kg bw melphalan or CDDP on day 7, three intraperitoneal injections of 150 mg/kg bw cyclophosphamide or ifosfamide on days 7, 9 and 11 or five intraperitoneal injections of 40 mg/kg bw 5-fluorouracil, 15 mg/kg bw etoposide or 1.75 mg/kg bw adriamycin on days 7–11. Seven groups were similarly treated with melphalan, CDDP, cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, 5-fluorouracil, etoposide or adriamycin alone. β -Carotene plus minocycline produced only a minimal delay in tumour growth, 0.3 ± 0.3 day [statistics unspecified], but increased the delay in tumour growth caused by melphalan from 2.7 ± 0.4 to 9.7 ± 0.9 days, by CDDP from 7.5 ± 0.6 to 9.3 ± 1.1 days, by cyclophosphamide from 7.8 ± 0.7 to 10 ± 1.2 days, by ifosfamide from 6.3 ± 0.7 to 8.8 ± 1.2 days, by etoposide from 4.9 ± 0.7 to 16.8 ± 1.7 days and by adriamycin from 8.9 ± 1.0 to 28.9 ± 2.7 days [statistics unspecified]. β -Carotene alone decreased the growth delay caused by 5-fluorouracil from 7.6 ± 0.7 to 3.2 ± 0.4 days [statistics unspecified] (Teicher *et al.*, 1994).

4.2.1.3 Canthaxanthin (Table 41)

(a) Skin

Mouse: Four groups of 75 female Swiss albino 955 mice, nine to ten weeks old, were painted on a clipped, mid-dorsal area of the skin with 0.02 ml of a 0.5% solution of benzo[*a*]pyrene in acetone (0.1 mg benzo[*a*]pyrene per painting),

twice a week for 60 weeks. Two of the four groups were kept in the dark except during treatment and observation; the other two groups were also kept in the dark but were exposed to long UV irradiation (300–400 nm; 5890 erg/cm² per s) for 2 h immediately after each skin painting. One of the groups kept in the dark and one of the groups subjected to UV irradiation were fed a normal rodent diet, while the other two groups were fed a diet containing 500 mg/kg canthaxanthin from 10% canthaxanthin-containing beadlets. After one month, the animals fed the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet received an additional dose of 100 mg/kg bw crystalline canthaxanthin as a 1% solution in arachis oil by stomach tube twice a week. Two additional groups of 75 mice fed a normal rodent diet and kept either continuously in the dark or subjected to UV irradiation for 2 h twice a week did not develop any skin tumours, and canthaxanthin had no consistent or significant effect on the incidence of benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced skin tumours in mice kept continuously in the dark during the final half of the experiment; however, during the final 20 weeks of the study, canthaxanthin significantly reduced the incidence of skin tumours in mice kept in the dark, from about 54% to 37% at 48 weeks and from about 67 to 47% at week 60 ($p < 0.01$ [statistics unspecified]). In comparison with benzo[*a*]pyrene alone, the combination with UV irradiation increased the skin tumour incidence by two- to sevenfold at various times. Canthaxanthin reduced the incidence of skin papillomas and epitheliomas induced by benzo[*a*]pyrene plus UV considerably, e.g. from about 12 to 3% at 20 weeks, from about 47 to 24% at 28 weeks, from about 61 to 38% at 38 weeks, from about 86 to 42% at 48 weeks and from about 96 to 43% at 60 weeks [statistics unspecified]. At the end of the study, the skin tumours in the various groups consisted of 10–20% papillomas and 80–90% squamous epitheliomas (Santamaria *et al.*, 1981, 1983a,b, 1988).

Canthaxanthin (33 g/kg diet; 6.68 g/kg bw per day; from canthaxanthin-containing beadlets) was administered in the diet to three groups of 24 female hairless Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr mice, five to eight

weeks of age, for 30–32 weeks. Three groups of mice received placebo beadlets. After 10 weeks on the respective diets, skin tumours were induced by one of three methods, each being applied to one of the canthaxanthin-treated groups and to one of the placebo control groups. In the first method, the mice were irradiated with UV-B (7.2 kJ/m² of total energy, 54% of which was between 280 and 320 nm) three times a week for 22 weeks. In the second method, a 0.5% solution of DMBA in acetone was painted twice at an interval of two weeks onto the entire back of each mouse, followed—three weeks after the second DMBA treatment—by painting two drops of a 0.5% solution of croton oil in acetone on the entire back twice weekly for 16 weeks. In the third method, the DMBA treatment was followed two weeks later by UV-B irradiation (2.7 kJ/m² of total energy, 54% of which was between 280 and 320 nm) three times per week [period of treatment unspecified]. Representative skin tumours from about 30% of the mice were studied histologically. Each method of tumour induction resulted in both squamous-cell carcinomas and papillomas. Canthaxanthin significantly delayed the time to appearance, but not the yield, of skin tumours induced by UV-B irradiation alone, the first tumour > 1 mm³ appearing in weeks 11 and 9 in the mice given canthaxanthin and in controls, respectively ($p < 0.01$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test). The time to appearance of the fifth tumour [unspecified] was also statistically significantly longer in the canthaxanthin-treated group than in those on placebo ($p < 0.05$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test). The yield of skin tumours induced by UV-B irradiation was also significantly reduced by canthaxanthin ($p < 0.005$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test), the average number of tumours per mouse being 0.5 and 1.59 after 11 weeks of treatment and 1.00 and 11.76 after 18 weeks of treatment in those fed canthaxanthin and those fed placebo, respectively. Canthaxanthin had no effect on the skin tumour response to DMBA plus croton oil [no further details given]. The onset of skin tumours induced by DMBA plus UV-B was significantly delayed by canthaxanthin, the first tumour appearing in the mice on placebo six weeks after the start of the treatment and

Table 41. Effects of canthaxanthin on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	Canthaxanthin, dose, route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, Swiss, Albino, female	75	B[a]P, 0.1 mg/skin painting; UV (300–400 nm) 5890 erg/cm ² per s	500 mg/kg diet + 100 mg/kg bw by gavage, twice/week	Before and during	Tumours, incidence B[a]P alone: 34% ($p < 0.01$) B[a]P/UV: 38% (SU)	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1981, 1983a,b,1988)
Skin	Mouse, SKH/hr, female	24	UV-B, (7.2 kJ/m ²)	6.68 g/kg bw per day, diet	Before and during	Onset of skin tumours: 22% ($p < 0.025$) Tumour yield: 69% after 11 weeks ($p < 0.005$); 91% after 18 weeks ($p < 0.005$)	Mathews-Roth (1982)
Skin	Mouse, SKH/hr [sex unspecified]	[about 25]	UV-B, 8 x 10 ⁴ J/m ² , single fluence	33 g/kg diet	Before and after	Papillomas/carcinomas Incidence: 70% (NS) Number: none (NS)	Mathews-Roth (1983)
Skin	Mouse, SKH/hr [sex unspecified]	[about 25]	UV-B, 3.6 kJ/m ² , 3 times/week	33 g/kg diet	After	Papillomas/carcinomas Incidence After 7 weeks: 96% ($p < 0.02$) After 10 weeks: 95% ($p < 0.05$)	Mathews-Roth (1983)
Skin	Mouse, SKH:hr-1, female	24	UV-B, total dose, 10.8 J/cm ²	0.001, 0.07, 3.3% to 2% in diet; beadlets	Before and during	Papillomas/carcinomas Incidence Low dose:none (NS) Mid dose: 39% ($p < 0.025$) High dose: 64% ($p < 0.05$) Multiplicity: Low and mid dose: none (NS) High dose: 49% ($p < 0.05$)	Mathews-Roth & Krinsky (1985)
Skin	Mouse, SKH'hr-1, female	24	UV-B, one dose of 8 x 10 ⁴ J/m ²	0.1% in diet; beadlets	Before or after, or before and after	Papillomas Incidence Before: 79% ($p < 0.0025$) After: 86% ($p < 0.00025$) Before and after: 50% ($p < 0.0025$)	Mathews-Roth & Krinsky (1987)
Skin	Mouse, C3H/HeN	50–120	UV-B; 30 min., 5 days/week; 24 weeks; 9.9 x 10 ⁵ J/m ²	1% in diet; 18 weeks	During and after	Tumours Burden/mouse: 48% ($p = 0.008$) Tumour-free survival: none	Rybski <i>et al.</i> (1991)

Table 41 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	Canthaxanthin, dose route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventative efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, C3H/HeNCrIBR, female	20-30	UV-B; 4.6 J/m ² per s, total dose, 9.9 x 10 ⁵ J/m ²	1% in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours Latency: none (SU) Incidence: none (NS) Burden: 45% ($p=0.0081$)	Gensler <i>et al.</i> (1990)
Skin	Mouse, CD-1, female	10	DMBA [dose unspecified]; dermal application	200 mg/kg bw/day by oral gavage	After	Cumulative papilloma size, after 7 days: 15% ($p < 0.01$); after 14 days: 30% ($p < 0.01$)	Katsumura <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Colon	Rat, Fischer 344, male	28-30	Azoxymethane, 15 mg/kg bw, sc, 3 times	100 and 500 ppm in diet	After	High dose, incidence of adenocarcinoma: 67% ($p < 0.05$)	Tanaka <i>et al.</i> (1995b)
Colon, small bowel	Rat, Holtzman, male	27-28	DMH, 30 mg/kg bw, s.c., total dose, 480 mg/kg bw	1% in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours/cancers in colon and small bowel: none [rather, a clear increase]	Colacchio <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Urinary bladder	Mouse, ICR, male	31-36	250 ppm NBHBA in drinking-water	50 ppm in drinking-water	After	Carcinoma: 33% (NS) Preneoplasia: 25% (NS)	Tanaka <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Urinary bladder	Mouse, B6D2F ₁	24	5 mg NBHBA, gavage, twice weekly	0.1% in diet	Before, during and after	Carcinoma incidence None (NS)	Mathews-Roth <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Liver	Rat, SPF-Wistar, male	9	2-Nitropropane, 6 x 100 mg/kg bw, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: None	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Liver	Rat, SPF-Wistar, male	9-10	NDEA, 100 mg/kg bw, i.p., single dose	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 27% (NS)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Liver	Rat, SPF-Wistar, male	9-10	Aflatoxin B ₁ , 2 x 1 mg/kg bw, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 92% ($p < 0.05$)	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1998)

Table 41 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	Canthaxanthin, dose route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventative efficacy	Reference
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.5% DMBA; 3 times/week	250 µg in MEM, injected into cheek pouch twice weekly	After	Epidermoid carcinomas Regression Complete: 15% (SU) Partial: 85% (SU)	Schwartz & Shklar (1987)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.5% DMBA; 0.4 mg/painting	250 µg/ injection into pouch	After	Carcinoma burden: 94% (SU)	Schwartz & Shklar (1988)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.5% DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting, 3 times/week	0.19 mg in MEM injected into buccal pouch	After	Carcinoma burden: 71% (SU)	Shklar & Schwartz (1988)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.1% DMBA; painted 3 times/week	0.14 mg in mineral oil/painting (1.5 mg/kg bw)	During	Carcinoma: Incidence (gross tumours), 90% (SU) Multiplicity: 86% (SU) Burden: 99% ($p < 0.001$)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1988)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.1% DMBA; 0.4 mg/painting	1.4 mg/kg bw; gavage	During	Carcinoma Incidence: 90% (SU) Burden: 99.6% ($p < 0.001$) Onset: 25% [SU]	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Mammary glands	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	10	MNU, 45 mg/kg bw; single dose, i.v.	1130, 3390 mg/kg in diet	After	Adenocarcinomas ($p < 0.001$) Incidence: none (NS) Multiplicity: none (NS) Latency: none (NS)	Grubbs <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Mammary glands	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	29–30	DMBA, 15 mg/rat, gavage	1130, 3390 mg/kg diet	Before	Adenocarcinoma Incidence: 28% ($p < 0.05$); Average number/rat: 58% ($p < 0.05$)	Grubbs <i>et al.</i> (1991)
Stomach	Mouse, Swiss, female	15–20	B[a]P; 1 mg, twice weekly, 4 weeks; gavage	4.7 µmol/animal per day, gavage	Before, during and after	Tumours Incidence: 80% ($p < 0.001$) Multiplicity: 86% ($p < 0.001$)	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
Small intestine	Rat, Holtzman, male	27–28	DMH; 30 mg/kg bw, s.c.; total dose, 480 mg/kg bw	1% in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours/cancer: none (rather, an increase)	Colacchio <i>et al.</i> (1989)

Table 41 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	Canthaxanthin, dose route	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventative efficacy	Reference
Salivary gland	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, male	30	DMBA, 1 mg injected into submandibular salivary gland	250 ppm in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours Incidence: none (NS) Average weight: 75% (NS) Weight > 10 g: 100% ($p < 0.05$)	Alam <i>et al.</i> (1988)
Tongue	Rat, Fischer 344, male	17-24	20 ppm 4-NQO in drinking-water	0.01% in diet	Before and during	Carcinomas 100% ($p < 0.001$) Severe dysplasia: 90% ($p < 0.001$)	Tanaka <i>et al.</i> (1995a)
Tongue	Rat, Fischer 344, male	19-24	20 ppm 4-NQO in drinking-water	0.01% in diet	After	Carcinomas: 91% Severe dysplasia: 91% ($p < 0.001$)	Tanaka <i>et al.</i> (1995a)
-	Mouse, Balb/c, male and female	60	7 x 10 ⁷ thymoma cells	7 or 14 mg/kg bw per day, gavage	Before, during and after	Tumour appearance Low dose: 70% ($p < 0.05$) High dose: 45% ($p < 0.05$) Survival Low dose: 30% ($p < 0.05$) High dose ($p < 0.05$)	Palozza <i>et al.</i> (1997)
-	Mouse, Balb/c, female	60	7 x 10 ⁷ thymoma cells	14 mg/kg bw per day, gavage	After	Tumour appearance and survival: none	Palozza <i>et al.</i> (1997)

B[a]P, benzo[a]pyrene; UV, ultraviolet irradiation; SU, statistics unspecified; NS, not significant; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea; i.v., intravenously; MEM, minimal essential medium; NBHA, *N*-nitrosobutyl(4-hydroxybutylamine); 4-NQO, 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide; s.c., subcutaneously; DMH, 1,2-dimethylhydrazine; GST-P*, placental glutathione *S*-transferase; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine

in the canthaxanthin-fed group after 13 weeks (appearance of first and tenth tumours, $p < 0.025$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test). Canthaxanthin also significantly reduced the yield of skin tumours induced by DMBA plus UV-B ($p < 0.05$; life-table analyses with χ^2 test), the average numbers of tumours per mouse being 0.25 and 0.85 after 13 weeks of treatment and 0.75 and 2.75 after 20 weeks of treatment in mice fed canthaxanthin and those fed placebo, respectively (Mathews-Roth, 1982).

An unspecified number of Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr mice, five to eight weeks of age, were fed normal mouse chow and were irradiated with UV-B (3.6 kJ/m^2) for 20 min, three times per week for an unspecified period of time [at least 24 weeks]. As soon as a mouse developed a skin tumour $\geq 1 \text{ mm}^3$, it was allocated at random to a canthaxanthin-supplemented diet (33 g/kg diet from canthaxanthin-containing beadlets) or to placebo beadlet-supplemented control diet. Canthaxanthin significantly delayed the appearance of new skin papillomas and carcinomas $\geq 1 \text{ mm}^3$; e.g. the percentage of mice developing the seventh skin tumour after receiving the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet was 1% after seven weeks versus 26% in those on placebo ($p < 0.025$; life-table analysis) and 2% after 10 weeks versus 42% with placebo ($p < 0.05$; life-table analysis [incidences estimated from a figure]). Canthaxanthin also significantly delayed the development of skin tumours $> 4 \text{ mm}^3$ (first subsequent tumour, $p < 0.05$; fifth tumour, $p < 0.001$; seventh tumour, $p < 0.01$; life-table analysis) and $> 50 \text{ mm}^3$ (first tumour, $p < 0.001$; life-table analysis). In a second experiment, groups of mice received the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet (seven mice) or the placebo diet (nine mice) for 34 weeks. After 10 weeks on their respective diets, all mice were subjected to a large single fluence of UV-B irradiation ($8 \times 10^4 \text{ J/m}^2$) and were observed for 43 weeks [apparently, all mice were fed a normal diet during the last nine weeks of this period]. There was no intercurrent mortality. The first skin tumours were seen five weeks after exposure to UV-B, and no new skin tumours developed 21 weeks after exposure. Canthaxanthin did not

significantly reduce the incidence or total number of skin tumours $> 1 \text{ mm}^3$ the incidences being 1/8 and 4/9 and the total numbers seven and five in the mice fed canthaxanthin and placebo, respectively (Mathews-Roth, 1983).

Six groups of 24 female hairless Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr-1 mice, five to seven weeks old, were fed diets supplemented with canthaxanthin or placebo beadlets. Groups 1 and 2 were fed rodent chow supplemented with 3.3% canthaxanthin (3.3 g/kg diet) in beadlets or placebo beadlets for 16 weeks and then 2% canthaxanthin (2 g/kg diet) for another 22 weeks; groups 3 and 4 were fed a diet containing 0.07% canthaxanthin (700 mg/kg diet) or placebo beadlets for 30 weeks; groups 5 and 6 were fed diets containing 0.01% canthaxanthin (100 mg/kg diet) or placebo for 26 weeks and four days. All mice were subjected to UV-B irradiation (total dose, 10.8 J/m^2) for 16 weeks [schedule of irradiation unspecified], starting after 12 weeks on their diets for groups 1 and 2, after one month for groups 3 and 4 and after four days for groups 5 and 6. The animals were killed 10 weeks after irradiation. At the end of the study, the canthaxanthin content of the epidermis was found to be increased in a dose-related manner. Canthaxanthin at dietary concentrations of 3.3/2% and 0.07% prevented or delayed the appearance of UV-B-induced skin tumours; e.g. the percentages of mice with skin tumours 21 weeks after the start of the irradiation were 30% at the high dose and 84% with placebo ($p < 0.025$; Student's t test), 52% at the intermediate dose and 85% with placebo ($p < 0.0125$; Student's t test) and 52% at the low dose and 56% with placebo. The average numbers of tumours per mouse were also lower in animals at the intermediate and high doses than in those on placebo, but the difference was statistically significant only at the high dose; e.g. 21 weeks after the start of the irradiation, 1.34 at the high dose and 2.65 with the placebo ($p < 0.05$; Student's t test), 1.04 at the intermediate dose and 1.70 with the placebo and 1.58 at the low dose and 1.30 with the placebo (Mathews-Roth & Krinsky, 1985).

Groups of 24 female hairless Philadelphia Skin and Cancer Hospital SKH/hr-1 mice, five to seven weeks old, were fed a diet containing

0.1% canthaxanthin in beadlets, and two other groups received the same diet supplemented with placebo beadlets for six weeks. All mice then received a single exposure to 8×10^4 J/m² UV-B radiation for 220 min. Immediately after exposure, one of the groups on the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet was switched to the placebo diet and one of the placebo groups was switched to the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet, while the two other groups were continued on their respective diets. The animals were observed for 24 weeks after treatment. At the end of the study, canthaxanthin was detected in the skin even of animals that received the pigment before irradiation. There was no intercurrent mortality. The first tumours appeared five weeks after irradiation, some growing to 50 mm³ but most measuring 1–4 mm³. When canthaxanthin was fed before or after or only after exposure to UV-B, the incidences of skin tumours (mainly papillomas) were significantly (Fisher's exact test) reduced, being 14/24 for the group continuously fed the placebo diet, 2/24 for the group fed the canthaxanthin diet ($p < 0.00025$) and 3/24 ($p < 0.0025$) for the groups continuously fed the placebo or the canthaxanthin diet or fed the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet only after or only before exposure to UV-B (Mathews-Roth & Krinsky, 1987).

Specific pathogen-free, pigmented female C3H/HeN mice [exact number unspecified but > 105], five weeks old, were fed synthetic 76A basal diet either as such or supplemented with 1% (w/w) canthaxanthin for 18 weeks. The shaved back skin of 50 animals on unsupplemented basal diet and 55 on canthaxanthin-supplemented diet was then exposed to UV-B irradiation for 30 min/d on five days a week for 24 weeks (total dose, 9.9×10^5 J/m²). No relevant difference in body weight was seen between the groups. By 27.5 weeks after the first UV-B irradiation, the average skin tumour burden per mouse given canthaxanthin was about 57 cm², whereas that in mice fed unsupplemented diet was 110 cm² ($p = 0.0081$; Wilcoxon rank sum test); however, the skin tumour-free survival rate was significantly lower in mice fed canthaxanthin (6/55) than in the group fed the unsupplemented diet (21/50; $p = 0.016$; Kaplan-Meier with log-rank

method). None of the unirradiated mice developed skin tumours (Rybski *et al.*, 1991).

Two groups of 20–30 female specific pathogen-free C3H/HeNCrIBR mice, six weeks old, were fed either basal diet (AIN 76A containing 4000 IU/kg retinyl palmitate) supplemented with 1% canthaxanthin from beadlets containing 10% canthaxanthin or basal diet supplemented with 10% placebo beadlets for at least 45.5 weeks [duration of study not further specified]. In weeks 18–42, the shaved back skin was exposed to UV-B irradiation (280–340 nm; 4.6 J/m² per s; total dose, 9.9×10^5 J/m²) for 30 min/d on five days per week. No difference in body weight was seen between the two groups. Canthaxanthin did not affect the latency of skin tumours [no further details given] or reduce the incidence of skin tumours, the incidence at week 45 being 37% in the controls and 36% in those fed canthaxanthin. Canthaxanthin did, however, significantly reduce the mean skin tumour burden per mouse at 45 weeks, from about 105 mm² in the controls to about 58 mm² in the group fed the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet ($p = 0.0081$; analysis of variance) (Gensler *et al.*, 1990).

Two groups of 75 female Swiss albino mice [age unspecified] were painted on a clipped area of the dorsal skin with 10 mg 8-methoxypsoralen in absolute ethanol twice a week for 80 weeks. One of the groups was fed a pelleted diet containing 100 mg/kg bw per day canthaxanthin for 80 weeks; after one month, these mice were given an additional 100 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin dissolved in arachis oil by gavage, twice weekly, 2 h before each painting with 8-methoxypsoralen. Both groups of mice were exposed to 1325×10^4 erg/cm² per s of long UV irradiation (300–400 nm) for 1 h/d for 80 weeks. Two comparable groups of mice similarly treated with 8-methoxypsoralen and canthaxanthin were not exposed to UV light and were kept in the dark. Eight other groups of mice served as vehicle, canthaxanthin and dark controls. Treatment with UV alone or combined with 8-methoxypsoralen resulted in malignant mammary gland tumours (types A, B and C adenocarcinomas, adenocanthomas and papillary carcinomas) and a few carcinomas of other skin appendages, with anaplastic small

and large cells, actinotubular structures, polygonal sebaceous-like cells and carcinosarcomatous growth. Canthaxanthin reduced the incidence of the tumours induced by UV and 8-methoxypsoralen from 29/75 to 14/75 [statistics unspecified] and those induced by UV alone from 8/75 to 0 [statistics unspecified] (Santamaria *et al.*, 1988; Santamaria & Bianchi, 1989).

Skin papillomas were induced in 20 female CD-1 mice, eight weeks old, by dermal application of DMBA for 60 days, until 10–20 papillomas had developed in each mouse. Two groups of 10 mice were then given 200 mg/kg bw per day canthaxanthin in 0.1 ml peanut oil or peanut oil alone. At day 14, the canthaxanthin concentrations were 0.011 $\mu\text{mol/L}$ in serum, 1 nmol/g tissue in liver and 0.11 nmol/g tissue in skin papillomas, whereas no canthaxanthin was detected in controls. Mean food intake and mean body weights were not affected by canthaxanthin. The cumulative skin papilloma size (number of papillomas \times diameter of each papilloma) on day 7 in mice given canthaxanthin was $92.5 \pm 4.9\%$ of the size measured at the start of treatment with canthaxanthin treatment and $81.6 \pm 8.0\%$ on day 14, the respective sizes in the control group being $109 \pm 5.4\%$ and $117.2 \pm 10.9\%$ ($p < 0.01$ at both times; Dunnett's *t* test) (Katsumura *et al.*, 1996).

(b) Colon

Rat: Three groups of 28 or 30 male Fischer 344 rats, four weeks old, were injected subcutaneously with 15 mg/kg bw azoxymethane once a week for three weeks. One group received no further treatment and was fed powdered basal diet CE-2 throughout the study (37 weeks). Starting one week after the last injection of azoxymethane, two further groups were fed the basal diet supplemented with 100 or 500 mg/kg canthaxanthin for 34 weeks, and two additional groups of 15 rats were fed either the unsupplemented basal diet or basal diet supplemented with 500 ppm canthaxanthin throughout the study. The body weights of azoxymethane-treated rats fed the diets containing canthaxanthin were slightly but statistically significantly lower than those of rats treated only with azoxymethane ($p < 0.05$ for the low dose and $p < 0.001$ for the high dose; Student's *t* test). Food

intake was not significantly affected by canthaxanthin supplementation. Canthaxanthin reduced both the incidence and multiplicity of azoxymethane-induced colon tubular adenomas and adenocarcinomas, the incidence and multiplicity of the adenocarcinomas being 4/28 ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test) and 0.14 ± 0.35 at the high dose ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) and 9/29 and 0.31 ± 0.46 at the low dose, in comparison with 13/30 and 0.53 ± 0.72 in the animals given azoxymethane alone. Canthaxanthin reduced the number of aberrant crypt foci per colon: 129 ± 63 at the high dose; $p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test; 169 ± 55 at the low dose, with 193 ± 55 in animals given azoxymethane alone. No tumours of the large intestine or aberrant crypt foci were found in rats fed the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet or in untreated controls (Tanaka *et al.*, 1995b).

Two groups of 28 weanling male Holtzman rats were fed regular chow supplemented with either 1% canthaxanthin (w/w) from beadlets containing 10% canthaxanthin or 10% placebo beadlets for 24 weeks. After four weeks, all rats received 16 weekly subcutaneous injections of 30 mg/kg bw symmetrical DMH dissolved in neutral sodium hydroxide-corrected phosphate-buffered saline, for a total dose of 480 mg/kg bw. At 24 weeks, the animals were killed. All rats had colon tumours, and canthaxanthin clearly increased the numbers; e.g. the number of intestinal tumours was increased from 3.21 in those given placebo to 4.67 ($p < 0.0176$; Student's *t* test) and the number of colon cancers from 2.96 to 4.44 ($p < 0.0145$; Student's *t* test) (Colacchio *et al.*, 1989).

(c) Urinary bladder

Mouse: A group of 67 male ICR mice, six weeks old, were given 250 ppm NBHBA in their drinking-water for 20 weeks; 36 were then given tap water for 21 weeks, while the other 31 mice received tap water for one week and then tap water containing 50 mg/kg canthaxanthin for 20 weeks. A group of 15 mice was untreated, and a further 15 received 50 ppm canthaxanthin in dimethylsulfoxide in their drinking-water for 20 weeks, starting at week 21. Canthaxanthin did not affect the body weights of the mice. The incidence of transitional-cell

and squamous-cell carcinomas of the urinary bladder was slightly lower in the mice receiving NBHBA and canthaxanthin (10/31) than in those given NBHBA alone (15/36; not significant; χ^2 test). Similarly, the incidence of preneoplastic changes (simple and papillary or nodular hyperplasia) was 20/36 in the mice given NBHBA alone and 13/31 in those given NBHBA and canthaxanthin. The incidences of benign transitional-cell papillomas were comparable in the two groups: 2/36 with NBHBA and 3/31 with NBHBA and canthaxanthin. No (pre)neoplastic changes were observed in the urinary bladders of untreated or canthaxanthin-treated controls (Tanaka *et al.*, 1994).

Two groups of 24 male B6D2F₁ mice, five to seven weeks old, were fed powdered rodent chow supplemented with either 10% canthaxanthin-containing beadlets (0.1% canthaxanthin in the diet) or the same amount of placebo beadlets, for about seven months. After five weeks, all mice received 5 mg NBHBA in saline (total dose, 90 mg) by gastric tube twice weekly for nine weeks. The mice were killed six months after the first instillation of NBHBA. In a comparable study, the urinary bladder was found to contain canthaxanthin at 542 $\mu\text{g}/100$ g (range, 133–1000 $\mu\text{g}/100$ g). Canthaxanthin did not affect body weights and did not reduce the incidence of carcinoma *in situ* or transitional-cell carcinoma, the incidences in both groups being 15/24 (Mathews-Roth *et al.*, 1991).

(d) Liver

Rat: Two groups of 10 male SPF Wistar rats, 24–27 days old, were fed a semiliquid purified diet containing 10% corn oil and 6000 IU/kg vitamin A and supplemented with 300 mg/kg canthaxanthin from a 10% dispersible powder or the same diet supplemented with placebo powder for 21 days, followed by the same diet with no supplement for 21 days. On day 15, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 200 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline. 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 42–56. On day 49, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. From day 56 to the end of the experiment (day 70), the diets were supplemented with 500 ppm phenobarbital. There was no significant difference in body

weight between the two groups. Canthaxanthin accumulated in the liver (478 \pm 148 $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$ liver on day 15), and its concentration was still high on day 49 (82 \pm 14 $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$ liver) and at the end of the experiment (13 \pm 2 $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$ liver). Canthaxanthin did not significantly (one-sided Dunnett's test and one-sided *t* test) inhibit the number of GGT⁺ liver foci (24.4 \pm 2.5 versus 28.4 \pm 2.3 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (60.2 \pm 3.8 versus 51.4 \pm 7.6 in controls), the mean area of GGT⁺ foci (0.131 \pm 0.01 mm² versus 0.145 \pm 0.017 mm² in controls), the area occupied by GGT⁺ foci (3.39 \pm 0.43% versus 4.39 \pm 0.82% in controls) or the area occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (6.59 \pm 0.69% versus 7.49 \pm 1.45% in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1996).

Wistar rats, 24–27 days old, were fed either a semiliquid purified diet containing 10% corn oil and 6000 IU/kg vitamin A supplemented with 300 mg/kg canthaxanthin from a 10% dispersible powder or the same diet supplemented with placebo powder for 28 days, followed by the same diet with no supplement for 21 days. On days 14, 16, 18, 21, 23 and 25, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 100 mg/kg bw 2-nitropropane in 2% Tween 20. 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 49–63. On day 56, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. From day 63 to the end of the experiment (day 70), the rats received unsupplemented diet. The canthaxanthin content of the livers of rats fed this carotenoid was still 26.2 \pm 4.7 $\mu\text{g}/\text{g}$ liver at the time of partial hepatectomy, i.e. four weeks after cessation of canthaxanthin feeding. Canthaxanthin did not significantly inhibit the onset of preneoplastic foci in the liver, as seen from the number of GGT⁺ foci per cm³ liver (424 \pm 74 versus 371 \pm 53 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (926 \pm 144 versus 703 \pm 120 in controls), the mean volume (10⁻³ mm³) of GGT⁺ foci (57.3 \pm 14.3 versus 62.4 \pm 20.6 in controls), the mean volume of GST-P⁺ foci (89.7 \pm 37.3 versus 59.9 \pm 13.5 in controls), the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GGT⁺ foci (17.4 \pm 5.1 versus 15.7 \pm 5.5 in controls) or the fraction of the liver volume occupied by GST⁺ foci (49.8 \pm 13.9 versus 33.4 \pm 8.6 in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1996).

In a similar study, the animals were fed the same diets for 21 days, followed by the diet with no supplement for 21 days. On day 14, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 100 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline; 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 42–56; all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy on day 49; and the rats received unsupplemented diet from day 56 to the end of the experiment on day 63. Canthaxanthin did not significantly inhibit the number of GGT⁺ foci/cm³ liver (224 ± 29 versus 205 ± 40 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (2632 ± 222 versus 1853 ± 327 in controls), the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GGT⁺ foci (66.1 ± 17.9 versus 61.0 ± 14.1 in controls), the mean volume of GST⁺ foci (15.0 ± 2.2 versus 27.1 ± 8.4 in controls), the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GGT⁺ foci (9.6 ± 2.0 versus 10.8 ± 3.6 in controls) or the fraction of the liver volume occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (36.8 ± 6.5 versus 50.7 ± 17.3 in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1996).

In a further study of similar design, all rats were injected intraperitoneally on days 13 and 19 with 1 mg/kg bw aflatoxin B₁ in 50% dimethylsulfoxide in water; 50 mg/kg 2-AAF were added to the diet on days 42–56; all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy on day 49; and the rats received unsupplemented diet on days 56–63 (end of the study). The canthaxanthin content of the livers of rats receiving the compound was still 20.0 ± 4.4 µg/g liver at the time of partial hepatectomy, i.e. four weeks after cessation of canthaxanthin feeding. Canthaxanthin significantly inhibited the onset of liver preneoplastic foci, i.e. the number of GST-P⁺ foci (275 ± 49 versus 773 ± 169 in controls), the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GST-P⁺ foci (13.3 ± 2.1 versus 107.8 ± 46.8 in controls) and the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (4.2 ± 1.2 versus 55.4 ± 17.6 in controls) (Gradelet *et al.*, 1998).

(e) Buccal pouch

Hamster: Epidermoid carcinomas were produced in the right buccal pouches of three groups of 20 adult male Syrian golden hamsters [age not further specified] by painting with a

0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 13 weeks. Then, the right buccal pouches were injected with 0.1 ml of a solution of about 250 µg canthaxanthin in solvent added to minimal essential medium or with 0.1 ml the medium alone (sham-injected controls); 20 hamsters were not further treated. The experiment was terminated at 17 weeks. No tumour regression was seen in sham-injected or uninjected hamsters, all of which had multiple, large cheek pouch tumours; two uninjected controls and one sham-injected animal died intercurrently with very large tumours and infection. Canthaxanthin caused complete gross tumour regression in 3/20 hamsters and partial regression in 17/20. In general, the regression of large and multiple tumours tended to be incomplete, whereas total regression was usually seen for small or moderate tumours. The tumours in regression showed degeneration and infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages, which often contained tumour necrosis factor. Stratified squamous epithelium adjacent to the carcinomas with severe destruction was relatively unaffected and appeared essentially normal (Schwartz & Shklar, 1987).

Sixty randomly bred male Syrian hamsters, two to three months old, were painted on the right buccal pouch with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.4 mg DMBA per painting) three times per week for 14 weeks, when each hamster appeared to have well-to-moderately differentiated epidermoid carcinomas of the buccal pouch. Then, the animals were divided randomly into three groups of 20 animals each; the tumour-bearing pouch was injected twice weekly with 0 or 250 µg canthaxanthin in 0.1 ml minimal essential medium or was not injected. After four weeks, all of the hamsters were killed, and the numbers and sizes of the buccal pouch tumours were recorded. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. Canthaxanthin reduced the buccal pouch tumour burden (average tumour volume \times number of tumours) from 2258.9 ± 5.6 mm³ (sham controls) or 2150.4 ± 5.0 mm³ (uninjected controls) to 136.4 ± 1.4 mm³ [number and size of tumours unspecified; no

information on statistical analysis]. In the canthaxanthin-treated hamsters but not the controls, many buccal pouch tumours showed cellular degeneration and dense infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages (Schwartz & Shklar, 1988).

The right buccal pouches of 60 male Syrian hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 95–125 g, were painted with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.6 mg DMBA per painting) three times a week for 14 weeks, when all hamsters had obvious gross cheek pouch tumours of variable size and number. They were then divided into three groups of 20 animals each, which were either not further treated or received injections into the right cheek pouch of 0.1 ml solvent plus minimal essential medium alone or containing 0.19 mg canthaxanthin, three times per week for four weeks. Canthaxanthin reduced the total burden of the moderate papillary epidermoid carcinomas from 1400 mm³ in the hamsters given DMBA or sham-injected with DMBA to 100 mm³ in those given canthaxanthin [no information on statistics]. In addition, a clearly elevated number of tumour necrosis factor- α -positive macrophages was found in the tumours and adjacent to regressing tumours in hamsters treated with canthaxanthin (Shklar & Schwartz, 1988).

Sixty non-inbred adult male hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 96–120 g, were fed standard laboratory pellets, and their right buccal pouches were painted with a 0.1% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 28 weeks. The animals were divided into three groups of 20 hamsters each and were given either 0.14 mg canthaxanthin (1.5 mg/kg bw) in 0.4 ml mineral oil three times per week on alternate days to DMBA, mineral oil only or no further treatment. All hamsters were killed after 28 weeks, when obvious, moderately large buccal pouch tumours were seen in untreated controls. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups. All control hamsters and a few of those given canthaxanthin had gross cheek pouch tumours: 20/20, 20/20 and 2/20 in the untreated control, the vehicle control and the canthaxanthin groups, respectively; mean

numbers of tumours per animal: 3.5, 3.7 and 0.5; mean tumour burden: 85.5, 114.9 and 1.5 ($p < 0.001$; Student's t test). The control animals had proliferative epidermoid carcinomas that invaded the underlying connective tissue, numerous foci of hyperkeratosis with dysplasia and carcinoma *in situ* and lymphocyte infiltration into areas of tumour infiltration and carcinoma *in situ*. Canthaxanthin-treated animals had no carcinomas; however, scattered foci of dysplasia and carcinoma *in situ* undergoing degeneration and cellular destruction were seen, with dense accumulations of lymphocytes and histiocytes in the underlying connective tissue, often close to areas of dysplasia and sometimes so dense that the area resembled lymphoid tissue (Schwartz *et al.*, 1988).

The mucosa of the right buccal pouch of three groups of 20 male Syrian hamsters [age unspecified], fed a normal hamster diet containing 22% protein and the required concentrations of vitamin A and E, was painted with 0.1% DMBA in heavy mineral oil (0.4 mg DMBA per painting) three times a week for 28 weeks. One group received no further treatment; the other two groups were given 0.4 ml of heavy mineral oil containing 0 or 1.4 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin (crystalline form, type IV) by gavage three times a week on alternate days to DMBA, for 28 weeks. A fourth group served as untreated controls. There was no significant difference in body weight between the groups, and there was no intercurrent mortality. Ingestion of canthaxanthin significantly inhibited the formation of buccal pouch squamous-cell carcinomas, as shown by the later onset of tumours (month 5 versus month 4 in both DMBA control groups), fewer tumour-bearing hamsters (2 versus 20 in both DMBA control groups), fewer tumours (30 versus 135 in the DMBA/vehicle control and 150 in the DMBA control group) and a significant decrease in the tumour burden after six months of treatment (14 mm³ versus 3675 mm³ in the DMBA/vehicle control and 2450 mm³ in the DMBA control group; $p < 0.001$, Student's t test). At the end of the treatment period, the average number of areas of cheek pouch with epithelial dysplasia was 3 in the group given canthaxanthin and 6 in both DMBA-treated groups. No buccal pouch

tumours or sites of epithelial dysplasia were found in untreated controls. Canthaxanthin ingestion resulted in an inflammatory reaction of the cheek pouches not seen in DMBA-treated or DMBA/vehicle controls: a dense mixed inflammatory infiltrate consisting predominantly of cytotoxic lymphocytes and macrophages containing tumour necrosis factor- α and localized areas of mast cells in the deep dermis adjacent to areas of dysplasia, carcinomas *in situ* and small foci of squamous-cell carcinoma (Schwartz *et al.*, 1989).

The mucosa of the right buccal pouches of three groups of 10 male Syrian golden hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 95–125 g, was painted with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (0.6 mg DMBA per painting) three times per week for 14 weeks. One of the groups also received oral applications of 10 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin in 0.5 ml mineral oil three times per week on alternate days to DMBA. Two other groups either were not further treated or were treated with mineral oil only. An additional group of 10 hamsters was treated with canthaxanthin only; no buccal pouch tumours were seen in these animals. Canthaxanthin reduced the number of animals with buccal pouch tumours, which were well-to-moderately differentiated epidermoid carcinomas, from 10 in both control groups to 8, the total numbers of cheek pouch tumours from 125 in controls and 130 in the vehicle controls to 30 [statistics unspecified] and the cheek pouch tumour burden from 174 200 mm³ (mean of the two control groups) to 116 100 mm³ ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) (Schwartz & Shklar, 1997).

(f) Mammary gland

Rat: One group of 60 and two groups of 45 female Sprague-Dawley rats, 34 days of age, were fed rodent diet supplemented with 0 (placebo beadlets), 1130 or 3390 mg/kg canthaxanthin (in the form of beadlets) for 21 days. At 55 days of age, one day after dietary canthaxanthin supplementation was stopped, groups of 30 rats were each given 15 mg DMBA in sesame oil by gavage. The study was terminated 180 days after DMBA treatment. Only one rat receiving sesame oil alone died, after three

weeks. After three weeks, the concentration of canthaxanthin in the liver was much higher (high dose, 610 $\mu\text{g/g}$; low dose, 416 $\mu\text{g/g}$) than in the mammary glands (high dose, 3.5 $\mu\text{g/g}$; low dose, 2.5 $\mu\text{g/g}$); it was not detected in either organ in vehicle controls. The incidences of mammary gland adenocarcinomas were [27/29] in the controls, [24/30] in rats given the low dose of canthaxanthin and [20/30] in those given the high dose ($p < 0.05$; Fisher's exact test), and the average numbers of adenocarcinomas per rat in the respective groups were 5.4, 2.0 ($p < 0.05$) and 1.9 ($p < 0.05$; Wilcoxon's rank sum test). Canthaxanthin had no effect on the latency of the mammary gland carcinomas [not further specified]. The incidences of benign mammary tumours (fibromas, adenomas and fibroadenomas; 28–40% in the groups treated with DMBA) were not affected by canthaxanthin pretreatment. Two rats treated with the high dose of canthaxanthin but not with DMBA had benign mammary tumours (Grubbs *et al.*, 1991).

Four groups of 10 female Sprague-Dawley rats, 50 days of age, received an intravenous injection of 45 mg/kg bw MNU in saline (adjusted to pH 5.0 with 3% acetic acid), and two days later their diet was supplemented with 0 (placebo beadlets), 1130 or 3390 mg/kg canthaxanthin as beadlets or with 328 mg/kg retinyl acetate (positive control group). The study was terminated 90 days after MNU administration. After three months, the concentrations of canthaxanthin in the liver (high dose, 1690 $\mu\text{g/g}$; low dose, 1040 $\mu\text{g/g}$) were much higher than those in the mammary gland (high dose, 16 $\mu\text{g/g}$; low dose, 11 $\mu\text{g/g}$), but none was detected in either organ in vehicle controls. The incidences of mammary gland adenocarcinomas were 100% in the controls, 100% in rats at the low dose of canthaxanthin, 90% in those at the high dose and 80% in the positive controls; and the average numbers of carcinomas per rat were 2.7, 2.0, 2.3 and 0.8, respectively ($p < 0.05$; Wilcoxon's rank sum test). The latency of the mammary carcinomas was not affected by canthaxanthin. No benign mammary gland tumours were found (Grubbs *et al.*, 1991).

(g) *Stomach*

Mouse: Groups of 20 inbred female Swiss mice, six to eight weeks old, and weighing 20–25 g, were given canthaxanthin (4.7 $\mu\text{mol/d}$ per animal) in 0.1 ml palm oil by gavage or only palm oil for eight weeks (15 animals). From week 3, a fourth group of 20 mice and 20 mice receiving canthaxanthin were given 1 mg benzo[*a*]pyrene in 0.1 ml palm oil by gavage twice a week for four weeks. After completion of treatment at eight weeks, the animals were observed up to 180 days, when they were killed. The mean body-weight gain was similar in all groups. Canthaxanthin reduced the incidence of gross forestomach tumours from 20/20 to 4/20 ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test) and the mean number of forestomach tumours per mouse from 7.0 ± 0.3 to 1.0 ± 0.0 ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). No forestomach tumours were found in the groups treated with canthaxanthin or palm oil alone (Azuine *et al.*, 1992).

(h) *Small intestine*

Rat: Two groups of 28 weanling male Holtzman rats were fed regular chow supplemented with either 1% canthaxanthin (w/w) from beadlets containing 10% canthaxanthin or 10% placebo beadlets for 24 weeks. After four weeks, all rats received 16 weekly subcutaneous injections of 30 mg/kg bw symmetrical DMH dissolved in neutral sodium hydroxide-corrected phosphate-buffered saline, for a total dose of 480 mg/kg bw. At 24 weeks, the animals were killed. All rats had intestinal tumours. Canthaxanthin slightly enhanced small-bowel carcinogenesis; e.g. the incidence was increased from 15/28 in rats on placebo to 20/28 in those given canthaxanthin ($p < 0.0352$; χ^2 test), and the number of tumours of the small intestines per rat was 0.75 in rats on placebo and 1.22 in those fed canthaxanthin (not significant; Student's *t* test) (Colacchio *et al.*, 1989).

(i) *Salivary glands*

Rat: Two groups of 30 male weanling Sprague-Dawley rats, weighing 73 ± 1.0 g, were fed either basal diet AIN-76A (containing 4000 IU vitamin A) or basal diet supplemented with 250 mg/kg of diet canthaxanthin (10% stabilized gelatin beadlets). After six weeks, one of the

submandibular salivary glands of each rat was injected with 1 mg DMBA in 0.02 ml olive oil, while the contralateral gland was injected with 0.02 ml olive oil alone. Rats were killed 21–22 weeks after the DMBA injection, when more than 50% of the animals had developed submandibular salivary gland tumours, some of which were very large. There was no significant difference in body-weight gain between the two groups. The incidence of partially to fully differentiated squamous-cell carcinomas and undifferentiated spindle-cell submandibular salivary gland tumours was closely similar: all tumours, 20/28 in controls and 21/30 in rats given canthaxanthin; malignant tumours, 11/28 in controls and 14/30 in rats given canthaxanthin. The mean tumour weight was slightly lower in rats fed the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet (1.8 ± 0.5 g) than in rats fed the unsupplemented diet (7.0 ± 3.3 g). Two of 20 tumour-bearing control animals had submandibular salivary gland tumours weighing more than 40 g, whereas none of the rats given canthaxanthin had such large tumours. In addition, 4/20 tumour-bearing controls and 0/21 given canthaxanthin had tumours weighing more than 10 g ($p < 0.05$; χ^2 test) (Alam *et al.*, 1988).

(j) *Tongue*

Rat: Three groups of 17–24 male Fischer 344 rats, four weeks old, received 20 ppm 4-NQO in their drinking-water for eight weeks. A group of 24 rats received no further treatment and was fed powdered basal diet CE-2 throughout the study; the two other groups were fed the basal diet supplemented with 0.01% canthaxanthin for 10 weeks starting just before the 4-NQO treatment (17 rats) or for 22 weeks starting one week after cessation of the 4-NQO treatment (19 rats). An additional group of 11 rats was fed the basal diet supplemented with 0.01% canthaxanthin throughout the study (32 weeks), and 12 rats served as untreated controls. Drinking-water containing 4-NQO was freshly prepared every two days, and diets containing canthaxanthin were prepared every week or every two weeks in a dark room and were stored in a dark, cold room (< 4 °C) until use. No relevant differences in body weight were

seen between the groups. Canthaxanthin significantly reduced the incidence of tongue neoplasms ($p < 0.001$ or $p < 0.005$; Fisher's exact test): no squamous-cell carcinomas or papillomas of the tongue were found in the group fed canthaxanthin before and during treatment with 4-NQO, while 1/19 animals fed this diet after 4-NQO treatment had a squamous-cell carcinoma and 1/19 had a squamous-cell papilloma, whereas 13/24 squamous-cell carcinomas and 4/19 squamous-cell papillomas were seen in the group treated with 4-NQO only. Canthaxanthin also significantly reduced the incidence of squamous-cell hyperplasia and dysplasia of the tongue epithelium (Fisher's exact test): the incidences of hyperplasia were 24/24, 8/17 ($p < 0.05$) and 12/19 ($p < 0.005$) and those of severe dysplasia, 14/24, 1/17 ($p < 0.001$) and 1/19 ($p < 0.001$) in the animals treated with 4-NQO, those fed canthaxanthin before and during 4-NQO treatment and those fed canthaxanthin after 4-NQO treatment, respectively. No such lesions were seen in untreated controls or in rats fed the canthaxanthin-supplemented diet (Tanaka *et al.*, 1995a).

(k) *Inoculated tumours*

Mouse: Four groups of 60 female inbred Balb/c mice, six weeks old and weighing 22.5 ± 1.0 g, were fed an unpurified commercial diet and received olive oil alone, 7 or 14 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin in olive oil throughout the study or 14 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin in olive oil daily by gavage from day 15 of the study. Two groups of 60 male mice of the same strain and age and weighing 23.3 ± 2.0 g were kept on the same diet and received olive oil alone or 14 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin in olive oil daily by gavage throughout the study. At day 15, all mice were inoculated with 7×10^7 malignant Balb/c mouse thymoma cells of lymphatic origin. On days 15, 20 and 22, 10 mice from each group were killed for interim observations. No significant difference in food intake or body weight was observed between the groups. The weight of the thymus in the group receiving 14 mg/kg bw canthaxanthin throughout the study was higher than in the other groups. After 15 days of treatment, the concentrations of canthaxanthin in the livers of mice fed this carotenoid were

300 $\mu\text{g/g}$ in females at the high dose, 150 $\mu\text{g/g}$ in females at the low dose and 175 $\mu\text{g/g}$ in the males, whereas no canthaxanthin was found in the livers of the controls. Treatment with canthaxanthin throughout the study delayed the appearance of macroscopic ascites and prolonged survival, the effects being dose-dependent and more pronounced in females than in males. The differences from controls in the appearance of ascites and in survival, expressed as percents [no further details given] were statistically significant ($p < 0.05$; analysis of variance). Canthaxanthin had no protective effect when administered only after inoculation of tumour cells (Palozza *et al.*, 1997).

4.2.1.4 *Canthaxanthin with other potential inhibitors (Table 42)*

Mouse: Four groups of 20–30 female specific pathogen-free C3H/HeNCR1BR mice, six weeks old, were fed basal diet (AIN 76A containing 4000 IU/kg retinyl palmitate) supplemented with 1% canthaxanthin (from beadlets containing 10% canthaxanthin), basal diet supplemented with 120 000 IU/kg retinyl palmitate plus 10% placebo beadlets, basal diet supplemented with 1% canthaxanthin plus 120 000 IU retinyl palmitate plus 10% placebo beadlets, or basal diet only supplemented with 10% placebo beadlets, for at least 45.5 weeks [duration of study not further specified]. During weeks 18–42, the shaven back skin of the animals was irradiated with UV-B (280–340 nm; 4.6 J/m^2 per s; total UVB dose, $9.9 \times 10^5 \text{ J/m}^2$) for 30 min/d on five days per week. The only difference in body weight between the groups was seen in mice fed the diet supplemented with canthaxanthin plus retinyl palmitate, which was on average 1.5 g lower than those of the controls. Canthaxanthin accumulated in the skin (86 $\mu\text{g/g}$ wet tissue), and this accumulation was not affected by the presence of retinyl palmitate in the diet. Canthaxanthin and retinyl palmitate separately or in combination did not affect the latency of skin tumours [no further details given] or reduce the skin tumour incidence, the incidences at week 45 being 37% in controls, 36% in mice fed canthaxanthin, 32% in those fed retinyl

Table 42. Effects of canthaxanthin and retinyl palmitate on tumorigenesis in mouse skin

Strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	Canthaxanthin (dose, route)	Other chemical(s) (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
C3H/HeNcrIBR, female	20–30	UV-B; total dose, 9.9×10^5 J/m ²	1% in diet	12 000 IU retinyl palmitate in diet	Before, during and after	Tumours Incidence (NS) and latency (SU): none Burden/mouse: Canthaxanthin: 45% ($p = 0.0081$) Retinyl palmitate: 41% ($p = 0.0081$) Combination: 68% (significant [p value unspecified])	Gensler <i>et al.</i> (1990)
C3H/HeN, female	50–120	UV-B; 30 min, 5 days/week, 9.9×10^5 J/m ²	1% in diet, 18 weeks	120 IU retinyl palmitate in diet	During and after	Tumours Burden/mouse: Canthaxanthin alone: 48% ($p = 0.008$) Retinyl palmitate alone: 46% ($p = 0.0135$) Combination: 65% (SU) Tumour-free survival None (rather, some decrease for canthaxanthin alone + the combination)	Rybski <i>et al.</i> (1991)

UV-B, ultraviolet B radiation; NS, not significant; SU, statistics unspecified

palmitate and 31% in those given canthaxanthin plus retinyl palmitate. Canthaxanthin and retinyl palmitate alone and in combination did, however, significantly reduce the mean skin tumour burden per mouse (analysis of variance): at 45 weeks, the tumour burden was about 105 mm² in the controls, about 58 mm² in the mice given canthaxanthin ($p = 0.0081$), 62 mm² in those given retinyl palmitate ($p = 0.0135$) and 34 mm² in those given the combination [p value unspecified] (Gensler *et al.*, 1990).

Specific pathogen-free, pigmented female C3H/HeN mice [exact number unspecified but > 220], five weeks old, were fed synthetic 76A basal diet either as such or supplemented with 1% (w/w) canthaxanthin, 120 IU/g retinyl palmitate or 1% canthaxanthin plus 120 IU/g retinyl palmitate. The shaven back skin of 50 animals on unsupplemented diet, 55 given canthaxanthin, 120 given retinyl palmitate and 60 given canthaxanthin plus retinyl palmitate

was exposed to UV-B irradiation for 30 min/d on five days a week for 24 weeks (total dose, 9.9×10^5 J/m²). In comparison with irradiated controls, irradiated mice fed canthaxanthin plus retinyl palmitate had significantly lower body weights (average difference, 1.5 g; analysis of variance [p value unspecified]). None of the unirradiated mice [number unspecified] developed skin tumours. By 27.5 weeks after the first UV-B irradiation, the average skin tumour burden per mouse was about 110 cm² for animals on basal diet, 57 cm² for those on canthaxanthin ($p = 0.0081$; Wilcoxon rank-sum test), 59 cm² for those on retinyl palmitate ($p = 0.0135$; Wilcoxon rank-sum test) and 38 cm² for those on canthaxanthin plus retinyl palmitate [p value unspecified]. Canthaxanthin significantly reduced the rate of survival without a skin tumour (6/55) in comparison with mice fed the unsupplemented diet (21/55; $p = 0.016$; Kaplan-Meier with log-rank), while the

skin tumour-free survival of animals fed canthaxanthin plus retinyl palmitate was 14/60 ($p = 0.231$; Kaplan-Meier with log-rank) [skin tumour-free survival of mice fed retinyl palmitate unspecified] (Rybski *et al.*, 1991).

4.2.1.5 Lycopene (Table 43)

(a) Colon

Rat: Twenty-four female Sprague-Dawley rats, seven weeks old, received three intrarectal instillations of 4 mg MNU in 0.5 ml distilled water in week 1 and were then divided into groups of six animals, which received 0.2 ml corn oil containing 0, 0.24, 1.2 or 6 mg lycopene by intragastric gavage daily during weeks 2 and 5. In week 6, all rats were killed and their colons were examined for aberrant crypt foci. The numbers of aberrant crypt foci per colon, in comparison with controls (62.7 ± 7.2), were similar in the rats at the high dose (63.5 ± 10.4) and slightly, not significantly (Student's *t* test) lower in those at the intermediate (45.7 ± 7.5) and low doses (40.4 ± 8.2). A similar study was carried out in which two lower doses and one identical dose of lycopene were used: 0, 0.06, 0.12 and 0.24 mg. The numbers of aberrant crypt foci per colon, in comparison with controls (69.3 ± 6.2) were statistically significantly lower in the animals at the high (42.7 ± 5.3) and intermediate doses (34.3 ± 6.5) ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test), but not in those at the low dose (50.7 ± 6.3) (Narisawa *et al.*, 1996).

(b) Lung

Mouse: Groups of 16 male and 16 female B6C3F₁ mice received combined treatment with 10 mg/kg bw NDEA by intraperitoneal injection, 120 mg/kg MNU in the drinking-water for five weeks and 29 mg/kg bw DMH by subcutaneous injection twice weekly for five weeks from day 11 after birth to week 9, or the vehicles. One group on the combined treatment then received 25 or 50 mg/kg synthetic lycopene from tomatoes in drinking-water [formulation unspecified] for 21 weeks (weeks 11–32), the other group on the combined treatment received no further compounds, and the third group was given only lycopene. At week 32, the mice were killed and examined histologically.

The incidences and multiplicity of lung adenomas and carcinomas in male mice in the group receiving the combined carcinogens and 50 ppm lycopene were significantly lower than those in the group receiving only the carcinogens: 12/16 versus 3/16 ($p < 0.02$) and 0.94 ± 0.17 versus 0.25 ± 0.14 ($p < 0.001$), respectively; no such effect was observed in females (Kim *et al.*, 1997).

(c) Liver

Mouse: Two groups of C3H/H3 mice, six weeks old, were given drinking-water with or without 0.005% lycopene (93% pure, of natural origin, dispersed as an emulsion) for 40 weeks. Lycopene suppressed spontaneous liver carcinogenesis, with a 56% reduction in incidence ($p < 0.05$) and an 88% reduction in multiplicity ($p < 0.01$) (Nishino, 1998).

Rat: Groups of nine Wistar rats, 24–27 days old, were fed either a semiliquid purified diet containing 10% corn oil and 6000 IU/kg vitamin A supplemented with 300 mg/kg lycopene (from a 5% oleoresin from tomato in vegetable oil) or the same diet with no supplement for 28 days, both followed by the same diet with no supplement for 21 days. On days 14, 16, 18, 21, 23 and 25, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 100 mg/kg bw 2-nitropropane in 2% Tween 20. 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 49–63. On day 56, all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy. From day 63 to the end of the experiment (day 70), the rats received unsupplemented diet. The lycopene content of the livers of rats fed this carotenoid was still 16.3 ± 1.9 µg/g liver at the time of partial hepatectomy, i.e. four weeks after cessation of lycopene feeding. Lycopene did not significantly inhibit the onset of preneoplastic foci in the liver, as seen from the number of GGT⁺ foci per cm³ liver (185 ± 35 versus 371 ± 53 in controls), the number of GST-P⁺ foci (814 ± 203 versus 703 ± 120 in controls), the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GGT⁺ foci (44.7 ± 5.9 versus 62.4 ± 20.6 in controls), the mean volume of GST-P⁺ foci (53.9 ± 17.7 versus 59.9 ± 13.5 in controls), the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GGT⁺ foci (6.2 ± 1.7 versus 15.7 ± 5.5 in controls) or the fraction of the liver volume occupied by GST⁺ foci (24.1 ± 6.0 versus 33.4 ± 8.6 in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1997).

In a similar study, the animals were fed the same diets for 21 days, followed by the diet with no supplement for 21 days. On day 14, all rats were injected intraperitoneally with 100 mg/kg bw NDEA in 0.9% saline; 2-AAF was added to the diet at 50 mg/kg on days 42–56; all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy on day 49; and the rats received unsupplemented diet from day 56 to the end of the experiment on day 63. Lycopene did not significantly inhibit the number of GGT⁺ foci/cm³ liver (163 ± 71 versus 205 ± 40 in controls) or the number of GST-P⁺ foci (1952 ± 303 versus 1853 ± 327 in controls); it significantly decreased the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GGT⁺ foci (21.8 ± 7.3 versus 61.0 ± 14.1 in controls), the mean volume of GST⁺ foci (7.8 ± 1.8 versus 27.1 ± 8.4 in controls), the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GGT⁺ foci (1.7 ± 0.6 versus 10.8 ± 3.6 in controls) and the fraction of the liver volume occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (10.6 ± 2.2 versus 50.7 ± 17.3 in controls) (Astorg *et al.*, 1997).

In a study of similar design, all rats were injected intraperitoneally on days 13 and 19 with 1 mg/kg bw aflatoxin B₁ in 50% dimethylsulfoxide in water; 50 mg/kg 2-AAF were added to the diet on days 42–56; all rats were subjected to a two-thirds hepatectomy on day 49; and the rats received unsupplemented diet on days 56–63 (end of the study). The lycopene content of the livers of rats receiving the compound was still significant at the time of partial hepatectomy, i.e. four weeks after cessation of lycopene feeding. Lycopene did not significantly inhibit the onset of liver pre-neoplastic foci; i.e. the number of GST-P⁺ foci (711 ± 116 versus 773 ± 169 in controls), the mean volume (10^{-3} mm³) of GST-P⁺ foci (56.7 ± 25.8 versus 107.8 ± 46.8 in controls) or the fraction of the liver volume (mm³/cm³) occupied by GST-P⁺ foci (31.5 ± 10.6 versus 55.4 ± 17.6 in controls) (Gradelet *et al.*, 1998).

(d) Mammary gland

Mouse: Two groups of female SHN/Mei mice, 40 days old, received AIN-76 TM diet either as such (21 animals) or supplemented with 0.00005% lycopene (27 animals). After 10 months, 11 controls and 14 lycopene-fed mice that had not

developed palpable mammary gland tumours were killed, while the remaining mice were observed for another four months. No significant difference in body weight was seen between the two groups. Lycopene significantly suppressed the development of spontaneous mammary gland tumours: the incidences after 10 months were 8% in the lycopene-fed group and 24% in the controls, and after 13 months, 46% in the lycopene-fed group and 82% in the controls; the first mammary tumours occurred in the controls at seven months and in the lycopene-fed group and 82% in the controls; the first mammary tumours occurred in the controls at seven months and in the lycopene-fed group at nine months ($p < 0.01$, incidence and onset of tumours considered simultaneously; analysis of variance). The mean number of hyperplastic alveolar nodules in the mammary glands was, however, higher in the lycopene-fed group than in the controls: in mice bearing no palpable tumours at 10 months, 2.9 ± 1.2 in nine controls and 7.9 ± 2.2 in 14 lycopene-fed animals (not significant; analysis of variance); in mice bearing palpable mammary tumours at 8–13 months, 15.7 ± 3.7 in six controls and 28.6 ± 4.7 in five mice fed lycopene ($p < 0.05$; analysis of variance) (Nagasawa *et al.*, 1995).

(e) Inoculated tumours

Rat C-6 glioma cells: Two groups of six male Wistar rats, three to four weeks old, were fed normal rodent chow and were given intraperitoneal injections of either 10 mg/kg bw lycopene in 0.06% dimethylsulfoxide (v/v; 2 mg/ml) or dimethylsulfoxide alone on five consecutive days. Then, 10^6 C-6 glioma cells were inoculated subcutaneously into the right scapula. Eight to 10 weeks later, the animals were killed and the tumours were removed and weighed. In a second, similar experiment, lycopene was administered intraperitoneally two weeks after tumour-cell inoculation. In the first experiment, lycopene prolonged the time to 50% tumour incidence from 14 days in controls to 21 days in those given lycopene [statistics unspecified] and reduced the mean tumour weight by 57%, from 67.0 ± 18.1 g in controls to 28.7 ± 26.9 g in animals given lycopene ($p < 0.02$ [statistical test unspecified]). In the second experiment,

Table 43. Effects of lycopene on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals	Carcinogen (dose, route)	Lycopene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Colon	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	6	MNU, 4 mg, 3 doses, intrarectally	0.24, 1.2 and 6 mg; gavage, daily for 2 weeks	After	Aberrant crypt foci number/colon: Low dose: 36% (NS) Mid dose: 27% (NS) High dose: none (NS)	Narisawa <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Colon	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	6	MNU, 4 mg, 3 doses intrarectally	0.06, 0.12 and 0.24 mg; gavage, daily for 2 weeks	After	Aberrant crypt foci number/colon: Low dose: 27% (NS) Mid dose: 51% ($p < 0.05$) High dose: 38% ($p < 0.05$)	Narisawa <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Lung	Mouse, B6C3F ₁ , male and female	16	NDEA, 10 mg/kg bw, i.p., two doses at days 11 and 32 after birth; MNU; 120 ppm in drinking-water, from weeks 4 to 9; DMH; 20 mg/kg bw, s.c., two doses a week, from weeks 4 to 9	25 or 50 ppm in drinking-water	After	Tumours (adenoma + carcinoma) Incidence: 75% ($p < 0.02$) Multiplicity: 73% ($p < 0.001$)	Kim <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Liver	Mouse C3H/He, male	17-18	Spontaneous liver tumours	0.05% in drinking-water	Throughout	Liver tumours Incidence: 56% reduction ($p < 0.05$) Multiplicity: 88% reduction ($p < 0.01$)	Nishino (1998)
Liver	Rat, SPF-Wistar, male	9	2-Nitropropane, 6 x 100 mg/kg bw, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 28% (NS)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Liver	Rat, SPF-Wistar, male	9	NDEA, 100 mg/kg bw, single dose, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 79% ($p < 0.05$)	Astorg <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Liver	Rat, SPF-Wistar, male	10	Aflatoxin B ₁ , 2 x 1 mg/kg bw, i.p.	300 mg/kg diet	Before and during	Fraction of liver volume occupied by GST-P ⁺ foci: 57% (NS)	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1998)

Table 43 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals	Carcinogen (dose, route)	Lycopene (dose, route)	Treatment relative to tumour cells	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Mammary gland	Mouse, SHN/Mei	21-27	-	0.00005% in diet	-	Tumours Incidence: at 10 months, 67%; at 13 months, 44% Onset: 22% ($p < 0.01$; incidence and onset combined) Preneoplasia Number: none; rather, a significant increase	Nagasawa <i>et al.</i> (1995)
-	Rat, Wistar, male	6	10 ⁶ C-6 glioma cells	10 mg/kg bw, i.p.	Before and during	Gliomas Latency: 29% [SU] Weight: 57% ($p < 0.02$)	Wang <i>et al.</i> (1989)
-	Rat, Wistar, male	6	10 ⁶ C-glioma cells	10 mg/kg bw, i.p.	After	Gliomas Latency: 34% [SU] Weight: 30% ($p < 0.05$)	Wang <i>et al.</i> (1989)

MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea; NS, not significant; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; GST-P⁺, placental glutathione *S*-transferase-positive; SPF, specific pathogen-free; DMH, 1,2-dimethylhydrazine; i.p., intraperitoneally; s.c., subcutaneously; SU, statistics unspecified

lycopene prolonged survival (at week 10, 3/6 controls and 5/6 animals given lycopene were still alive), reduced the number of rats with tumours (6/6 in controls and 4/6 in those on lycopene) and reduced the mean tumour weight by 30%, from 147.1 ± 73.4 g in controls to 102.8 ± 61.0 g in those given lycopene ($p < 0.05$ [statistical test unspecified]) (Wang *et al.*, 1989).

4.2.1.6 Lutein (Table 44)

(a) Skin

Mouse: Female ICR mice were shaved at the age of six weeks. One week after initiation by topical application of 100 µg DMBA in 100 ml acetone, TPA at 10 nmol/100 ml of acetone was applied once and then mezerein at 3 nmol for 15 weeks and 6 nmol for the subsequent 15 weeks, in 100 ml of acetone, twice a week.

Table 44. Effects of lutein on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	Lutein (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, ICR, female	15	DMBA; 100 µg, topical application, once TPA, as first stage promoter 10 nmol, topical application once Mezerein as second-stage promoter, 3 nmol for 15 weeks and 6 nmol for subsequent 15 weeks, topical application twice weekly	Lutein, 1 mmol, in 100 ml acetone, topical application, twice (45 min before and 16 h after TPA application)	Before and after first-stage promoter application	Skin tumours Multiplicity; 65% reduction at week 30 of promotion ($p < 0.05$)	Nishino (1998)
Colon	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	6	MNU, 4 mg, 3 doses intra-rectally	0.24, 1.2 and 6 mg; gavage, daily for 2 weeks		No. of aberrant crypt foci/colon: Low dose: 42% ($p < 0.050$) Mid-dose; 25% ($p < 0.05$) High dose: 32% ($p < 0.05$)	Narisawa <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Mammary gland	Mouse, Balb/c, female	20	WAZ-2T (SA) cells, s.c.	0.1 and 0.4% in diet	After	Tumour incidence at 28 days: Low dose: 45% (NS) High dose: 40% (NS) Tumour weight Low dose: 2.6 ± 0.2 ($p < 0.01$) High dose: 2.2 ± 0.2 ($p < 0.01$)	Chew <i>et al.</i> (1996)

DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; TPA, 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate

Lutein at 1 mmol/100 ml acetone (molar ratio to TPA, 100) was then applied twice, 45 min before and 16 h after TPA application. Lutein suppressed skin tumour promotion by 65% at week 30 of promotion ($p < 0.005$) (Nishino, 1998).

(b) *Colon*

Rat: Twenty-four female Sprague-Dawley rats, seven weeks old, received three intrarectal instillations of 4 mg MNU in 0.5 ml distilled water in week 1 and were then divided into groups of six animals, which received 0.2 ml corn oil containing 0, 0.24, 1.2 or 6 mg lutein, by intragastric gavage daily during weeks 2 and 5. In week 6, all rats were killed and their colons were examined for aberrant crypt foci. The numbers of aberrant crypt foci per colon were statistically significantly lower at all three doses of lutein: 40.2 ± 4.3 at the low dose, 52.2 ± 4.0 at the intermediate dose and 46.8 ± 5.6 at the high dose, in comparison with 69.3 ± 6.2 in controls ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test) (Narisawa *et al.*, 1996).

(c) *Inoculated tumours*

WAZ-2T (-SA) cells: Three groups of 20 female Balb/c mice, eight weeks old, were fed a semi-purified diet (AIN-76A) containing 0, 0.1 or 0.4% lutein from marigold extract (37% lutein esters, 0.5% zeaxanthin esters, 56% other marigold extractives, mainly fatty acid esters of high-molecular-mass alcohols; lutein mono-myristate) mixed with the oil portion of the diet, throughout the experiment. After three weeks, each mouse was injected with 10^6 WAZ-2T (SA) murine mammary tumour cells suspended in Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% newborn bovine serum and 5% insulin, into the right inguinal mammary fat pad. All mice were sacrificed 45 days after inoculation. No significant difference in food intake or body-weight gain was seen between the groups. The concentrations of lutein in plasma were increased ($p < 0.01$; Student's *t* test) by dietary lutein, but mice fed 0.4% lutein had a lower plasma lutein concentration (about $1.2 \mu\text{mol/L}$) than those fed 0.1% lutein (about $1.7 \mu\text{mol/L}$). The tumour incidence was not significantly reduced by lutein, being 100% in each group at the end of the study and 13/20 in the controls, 9/20

at the low dose and 8/20 at the high dose 28 days after inoculation. The final tumour weight was lower, however, in the mice fed lutein: 2.6 ± 0.2 g at the low dose and 2.2 ± 0.2 g at the high dose ($p < 0.01$; split-plot model) than in the control group (3.4 ± 0.4 g; $p < 0.02$; split-plot model, *t* test); the tumour latency in mice at the high dose (32.1 ± 0.4) was longer than that in controls (30.1 ± 0.4 days), whereas that of mice at the low dose (30.5 ± 0.4 days) was comparable (Chew *et al.*, 1996).

4.2.1.7 α -Carotene (Table 45)

(a) *Skin*

Mouse: The backs of 48 ICR mice [sex unspecified], seven weeks old, were shaved, and two days later the animals received a single application of 0.1 mg DMBA [vehicle unspecified] on the shaven skin. One week later, $1 \mu\text{g}$ (1.62 nmol) TPA was applied twice weekly for 20 weeks. Groups of 16 animals received 200 or 400 nmol α -carotene in 0.2 ml acetone simultaneously with each application of TPA, and the third group was treated with the vehicle in acetone. There was no significant difference in body weight among the groups. The first skin tumour (a papilloma) appeared in a control within nine weeks after the start of TPA applications, whereas in both α -carotene-treated groups the first skin tumour was seen after 13 weeks of TPA application. At 20 weeks, the percentages of mice bearing skin papillomas were 69, 25 and 13 [statistics unspecified], and the average numbers of skin tumours were 3.73, 0.27 ($p < 0.01$; Student's *t* test) and 0.13 ($p < 0.01$ [method of statistical analysis and standard deviations unspecified]) in the controls and those at the low and high doses of α -carotene, respectively. The tumours in α -carotene-treated animals were smaller than those in the controls; e.g. the average numbers of tumours 1–2 mm in diameter per mouse were 2.20 in controls, 0.20 at the low dose and 0.13 at the high dose [standard deviations unspecified]; furthermore, there were no tumours > 3 mm in diameter in the α -carotene-treated mice but 0.46/mouse [standard deviation unspecified] in controls [statistics unspecified]. The study was repeated with almost the same results [no further details

Table 45. Effects of α -carotene on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, strain, sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	α -Carotene, (dose, route)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, ICR [sex unspecified]	16	DMBA, 100 μ g, single application; TPA, 1 μ g twice weekly	200 and 400 nmol, skin application, twice weekly	After	Papillomas Incidence: high dose, 81% (SU); low dose, 64% (SU) Multiplicity: high dose, 97% ($p < 0.01$); low dose 93% ($p < 0.01$) Latency: both doses, 44% (SU)	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992); Nishino (1995)
Colon	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	6	MNU, 4 mg, 3 doses intrarectally	0.24, 1.2 and 6 mg; gavage, daily for 2 weeks	After	No. of aberrant crypt foci/colon Low dose: 7% (NS) Mid dose: 18% (NS) High dose: 32% ($p < 0.05$)	Narisawa <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Lung	Mouse, ddY, male	16	4-NQO, 10 mg/kg bw, single, s.c. Glycerol (10%) in drinking-water	0.05% in drinking-water (3.27 mg/mouse per day)	During and after	Type II adenoma Incidence: 22% (NS) Multiplicity: 67% ($p < 0.001$)	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992); Nishino (1995)
Liver	Mouse, C3H/He male	17	—	0.005% or 0.05% in drinking-water (0.25, 2.41 mg/mouse per day)	—	Liver carcinomas Incidence; high dose, 6% (NS), low dose, none (NS) Multiplicity: high dose, 52% ($p < 0.001$); low dose, 20% (NS)	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992)

NS, not significant; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene; TPA, 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate; SU, statistics unspecified; 4-NQO, 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide; s.c., subcutaneously; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea

presented] (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992; Nishino, 1995).

(b) Colon

Rat: Twenty-four female Sprague-Dawley rats, seven weeks old, received three intrarectal instillations of 4 mg MNU in 0.5 ml distilled water in week 1 and were then divided into groups of six animals which received 0.2 ml corn oil containing 0, 0.24, 1.2 or 6 mg α -carotene by intragastric gavage daily during weeks 2 and 5. In week 6, all rats were killed and their colons were examined for aberrant crypt foci. The numbers of aberrant crypt foci per colon were lower in the animals given α -carotene (58.4 ± 4.9 at the low dose, 55.9 ± 5.3 at the intermediate dose and 42.4 ± 2.4 at the high dose) than in the controls (62.7 ± 7.2), but the difference was statistically significant only for the high dose ($p < 0.005$; Student's *t* test) (Narisawa *et al.*, 1996).

(c) Lung

Mouse: Two groups of 16 male, specific pathogen-free ddY mice, six weeks old, received drinking-water containing either 0.05% α -carotene (as an emulsion containing 0.5% sucrose ester P-1750, 1.0% Sansoft 8000, 0.2% L-ascorbyl stearate and 4% peanut oil; mean α -carotene intake, 3.27 mg/d per mouse) or the emulsion without α -carotene for four weeks. On the first day, all mice received a single subcutaneous injection of 10 mg/kg bw 4-NQO dissolved in a mixture of olive oil and cholesterol (20:1), providing about 0.3 mg 4-NQO per mouse. During weeks 5–25, the drinking-water of all mice was supplemented with 10% glycerol. The mice were killed at week 30. No significant difference in water intake or body weight was seen between the two groups. There was no significant difference in the number of mice with lung tumours (type II adenoma), 94 and 73%, but the mean number of lung tumours per mouse was significantly reduced, from 4.06 ± 0.18 in controls to 1.33 ± 0.08 in animals given α -carotene ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). The lung tumours were of similar size [not further specified] in the two groups. The study was repeated with similar results [no further details presented] (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992; Nishino, 1995).

(d) Liver

Mouse: Groups of 17 eight-week-old male C3H/He mice, which have a high spontaneous incidence of liver tumours, received 0.005 or 0.05% α -carotene mixed with the drinking-water as an emulsion containing 0.5% sucrose ester P-1750, 1% Sansoft 8000, 0.2% L-ascorbyl stearate and 4% peanut oil, to give mean α -carotene intakes of 0.25 and 2.41 mg/d per mouse, or the emulsion without α -carotene for 40 weeks, at the end of which the mice were killed. There was no significant difference in body weight or water intake between the groups. The numbers of animals with liver tumours (well-differentiated hepatocellular carcinomas) were 16/16 in controls, 15/15 at the low dose and 16/17 at the high dose, but the mean numbers of liver tumours per mouse were decreased, from 6.31 ± 0.62 in the controls to 5.07 ± 0.49 at the low dose and 3.00 ± 0.36 at the high dose ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). There were no differences among the groups in the size [not further specified] or histological appearance of the tumours (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992).

4.2.1.8 Fucoxanthin (Table 46)

(a) Skin

Mouse: Two groups of 15 female ICR mice [age unspecified] received a single application of 0.1 mg DMBA on their shaved backs. One week later, 1.62 nmol TPA were applied twice weekly for 20 weeks. One of the groups received an application of 0.6 μ mol fucoxanthin (prepared from the brown algae *Hijikia fusiforme*, a common edible seaweed in Japan) in 0.2 ml acetone simultaneously with each application of TPA; the other group was treated with 0.2 ml acetone only. In the latter group, 8/15 animals developed skin tumours, with an average of 2.20 tumours per mouse, whereas no skin tumours were found in fucoxanthin-treated mice (Nishino, 1995).

(b) Small intestine

Mouse: Thirty-eight male C57Bl/6 mice [age unspecified] were given drinking-water containing 0.01% *N*-ethyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine (ENNG) for four weeks. During weeks 5–20, 20 mice received drinking-water containing 0.005% fucoxanthin (prepared

Table 46. Effects of fucoxanthin on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, Strain sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	Fucoxanthin, (dose, route)	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, ICR, female	15	DMBA, 0.1 mg; single application	0.6 mmol; twice weekly, 19 weeks	Tumours: 100% (SU)	Nishino (1995)
Small intestine	Mouse, C57Bl/6, male	18–20	ENNG, 0.01% in drinking-water, 4 weeks	0.005% in drinking-water, 11 weeks	Tumours Incidence: 61% ($p < 0.05$) Multiplicity: 57% ($p < 0.05$)	Okazumi <i>et al.</i> (1993); Nishino (1995)

DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; SU, statistics unspecified; ENNG, *N*-ethyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine

from *Hijikia fusiforme* and added as an emulsion [vehicle unspecified]), while the other 18 mice received drinking-water supplemented with the fucoxanthin vehicle only. The mice were killed at week 20. Fucoxanthin reduced the incidence of duodenal tumour-bearing mice [type of tumour unspecified] from 14/18 to 6/20 ($p < 0.005$ [method of statistical analysis unspecified]) and the mean number of duodenal tumours per mouse from 1.28 to 0.55 ($p < 0.05$ [method of statistical analysis unspecified]) (Okuzumi *et al.*, 1993; Nishino, 1995).

4.2.1.9 Astaxanthin

(a) Small intestine and colon

Rat: Azoxymethane was used to induce carcinogenesis in the small intestine and colon of male Fischer 344 rats by subcutaneous injection at a dose of 15 mg/kg bw once a week for three weeks. One week after the last dose, the diets of two groups of rats were supplemented with 100 or 500 mg/kg astaxanthin for 34 weeks; another group received only azoxymethane; one received only 500 mg/kg astaxanthin for 37 weeks; and one served as untreated controls. The incidence of intestinal adenocarcinomas and signet ring-cell carcinomas was 50% with azoxymethane alone; the incidence was reduced to 34% after supplementation with 100 ppm astaxanthin and to 28% with 500 ppm. Controls and rats given astaxanthin alone had no tumours (Tanaka *et al.*, 1995a).

(b) Oral cavity

Rat: A total of 133 male Fischer 344 rats were given 4-NQO for eight weeks to induce oral tumours. One group was fed a diet containing 0.01% astaxanthin for 10 weeks before exposure to 4-NQO; one was fed a diet with 0.01% astaxanthin for 22 weeks starting one week after exposure to 4-NQO; one received only astaxanthin throughout the study (32 weeks); one received a normal rat diet after 4-NQO administration; and one served as untreated controls. 4-NQO alone induced squamous-cell papillomas and carcinomas of the tongue in 54% of the rats, but no oral neoplasms developed in the rats that received astaxanthin before, during or after exposure to 4-NQO (Tanaka *et al.*, 1995a).

(c) Urinary bladder

Mouse: Urinary bladder tumours were induced in 144 male ICR mice by giving them drinking-water containing NBHBA. One group of mice received NBHBA alone for 20 weeks and then tap water for 21 weeks; one group received 50 mg/kg astaxanthin (a xanthophyll present in crustaceae, fish, shellfish and some fruits and vegetables but lacking provitamin A activity) in tap water one week after the end of exposure to NBHBA for 20 weeks; one group received 50 mg/kg astaxanthin only for 20 weeks after drinking tap water for the first 21 weeks of the experiment; and one group served as untreated controls. The incidence of transitional or

squamous-cell carcinomas of the bladder was 42% with NBHBA alone and 0% with astaxanthin alone and in the controls. Astaxanthin reduced the incidence of transitional-cell carcinomas from 31% with NBHBA alone to 3%, but had no effect on the incidence of squamous-cell carcinomas (Tanaka *et al.*, 1994).

4.2.1.10 Crocetin

(a) Skin

The skin of groups of 15 female CD-1 mice was treated topically with benzo[*a*]pyrene once a week for 10 weeks; after a one-week pause, mice were treated topically with 15 nmol TPA alone or in combination with 0.2 or 1.0 μ mol crocetin (a carotenoid with no provitamin A activity which is present in *Gardenia fructus* and is widely used in Chinese herbal medicine) twice weekly for 20 weeks. Crocetin inhibited the number of tumours per mouse by 69% and reduced the proportion of mice with tumours by 81% (Wang, C.-J. *et al.*, 1996).

(b) Inoculated tumours

Rat C-6 glioma cells: Crocetin was given by intraperitoneal injection at 0 or 10 mg/kg bw to Wistar rats for five consecutive days, and on the sixth day, C-6 glioma cells were inoculated subcutaneously. In comparison with treatment only with glioma cells, crocetin prolonged the latency to 50% tumour incidence and caused a 60% reduction in mean tumour weight, from 67.0 to 26.6 g. In another group of rats that received the same dose of crocetin two weeks after tumour-cell inoculation, a significant reduction in mean tumour weight was seen, from 147.1 to 94.6 g (Wang *et al.*, 1989).

4.2.1.11 Mixtures of carotenoids (see Table 47)

(a) Skin

Mouse: Forty female ICR mice [age unspecified] received a single application of 0.1 mg DMBA on their shaven backs, and one week later received applications of 0.81 nmol TPA twice weekly for 16 weeks. Ten of the mice received simultaneous applications of 162 nmol palm-oil carotene (60% β -carotene, 30% α -carotene and 10% other natural carotenoids including γ -carotene and lycopene) in 0.2 ml acetone; the other 30 mice were similarly treated with 0.2 ml

acetone only. In these animals, the first tumour appeared within six weeks, and at the end of the experiment 29/30 of the mice in this group had developed skin tumours, with an average of 2.63 tumours per mouse. Palm-oil carotene treatment completely suppressed the skin tumour formation (Nishino, 1995).

(b) Colon

Rat: Twelve female Sprague-Dawley rats, seven weeks old, received three intrarectal instillations of 4 mg MNU in 0.5 ml distilled water in week 1 and were then divided into groups of six animals which received 0.2 ml corn oil containing 0 or 6 mg palm-oil carotene (an oleoresin from natural palm oil which consisted of a mixture of α -carotene, β -carotene and lycopene) by intragastric gavage, daily during weeks 2 and 5. In week 6, all rats were killed and their colons were examined for aberrant crypt foci. The number of foci per colon was 69.3 ± 6.2 in the controls and 51.3 ± 8.3 in the animals given palm-oil carotene, but the difference was not significant (Student's *t* test) (Narisawa *et al.*, 1996).

(c) Respiratory tract

Mouse: Twenty-six male ddY mice [age unspecified] received a single subcutaneous injection of 10 μ g/kg bw 4NQO dissolved in a 20:1 mixture of olive oil and cholesterol. During weeks 5–30, 12 of these mice received drinking-water containing 10% glycerol plus 0.005% palm-oil carotene (60% β -carotene, 30% α -carotene and 10% other natural carotenoids including γ -carotene and lycopene, added as an emulsion [vehicle unspecified]), while the other 14 mice received drinking-water containing 10% glycerol plus the palm-oil carotene vehicle. Palm-oil carotene reduced the lung tumour incidence [tumour type unspecified] from [14/14] to [4/12] ($p < 0.05$ [method of analysis unspecified]) and the mean number of lung tumours per mouse from 3.06 to 0.58 ($p < 0.001$ [standard deviation and method of statistical analysis unspecified]) (Nishino, 1995).

(d) Liver

Mouse: Groups of 17 eight-week-old male C3H/He mice, which have a high spontaneous incidence of liver tumours, received drinking-

water containing 0.005 or 0.05% palm oil carotene (30% α -carotene, 60% β -carotene and 3% γ -carotene, 4% lycopene and 3% other [unspecified] carotenes, as an emulsion containing 0.5% sucrose ester P-1750, 1.0% Sansoft 8000, 0.2% L-ascorbyl stearate and 4% peanut oil), to give mean intakes of palm-oil carotene of 0.25 and 2.57 mg/d per mouse, or the emulsion without palm-oil carotene for 40 weeks, when the mice were killed. There was no significant difference in body weight or water intake between the groups. The numbers of animals with liver tumours (well-differentiated hepatocellular carcinomas) were 16/16 in controls, 15/15 at the low dose and 13/16 at the high dose, and the mean numbers of liver tumours per mouse were 6.31 ± 0.62 in the controls, 3.60 ± 0.40 at the low dose ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) and 2.06 ± 0.37 at the high dose ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). There was no difference among the groups in the size [not further specified] or histological appearance of the tumours (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1992; Nishino, 1995).

(e) *Buccal pouch*

Hamster: Epidermoid carcinomas were produced in the right buccal pouches of three groups of 20 adult male Syrian golden hamsters [age not further specified] by painting the pouches with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 13 weeks. The pouches were then injected with 0.1 ml of minimal essential medium containing about 250 μ g phycotene extracted from *Spirulina* and *Dunaliella* algae (chemical composition, 7% water, 9% ash, 71% proteins, 0.9% crude fibre, 1.8 g/kg xanthophylls, 1.9 g/kg carotene, chlorophylls a and b, α -carotene, neoxanthin and other xanthophylls [not further specified]) or with 0.1 ml of the medium (sham-injected controls); 20 hamsters were not further treated. The experiment was terminated at 17 weeks. The body weights of the sham-injected DMBA controls (about 85 g) were consistently lower than those of hamsters given phycotene (140 g) and the uninjected animals (100 g). No tumour regression was seen in sham-injected or uninjected hamsters, all of which had multiple, large cheek pouch tumours; two uninjected controls and one

sham-injected animal died intercurrently with very large tumours and infection. Phycotene caused complete gross tumour regression in 6/20 hamsters and partial regression in 14/20. In general, regression of the large and multiple tumours tended to be incomplete, whereas total regression was usually seen for small or moderate tumours. The tumours in regression showed degeneration and infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages, which often contained tumour necrosis factor. Stratified squamous epithelium adjacent to the carcinomas with severe destruction was relatively unaffected and appeared essentially normal (Schwartz & Shklar, 1987).

Sixty male Syrian hamsters, two to three months old and weighing 95–125 g, were painted on the right buccal pouch with a 0.5% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil (about 0.6 mg DMBA per painting) three times per week for 14 weeks, when each hamster had obvious gross tumours of various sizes and numbers. Then, the animals were divided into groups of 20, and the tumour-bearing pouch was injected twice weekly with 0.1 ml minimal essential medium, alone or containing 0.19 mg of an extract of *Spirulina* and *Dunaliella* algae, three times weekly for four weeks. The algae extract reduced the total burden of cheek pouch tumours (moderately sized papillary epidermoid carcinomas) from 1400 mm³ in the DMBA and sham-injected DMBA control groups to about 20 mm³ in the animals given the algal extract [no information on statistics]. Both degeneration and a clearly increased number of tumour necrosis factor- α -positive macrophages were found in the tumours and adjacent to the regressing tumours in hamsters treated with the algal extract (Shklar & Schwartz, 1988).

Sixty non-inbred adult male hamsters, 60–90 days old and weighing 96–120 g, were fed standard laboratory pellets, and their right buccal pouches were painted with a 0.1% solution of DMBA in heavy mineral oil three times per week for 28 weeks. The animals were divided into three groups of 20 hamsters each and were given either 0.14 mg of an extract of *Spirulina* and *Dunaliella* algae (containing 20–25% zeaxanthin, 10–15% myxanthophyll,

15–30% β -carotene, 10–15% echinenone, 20–25% β -cryptoxanthin and at least 10 other carotenoids; 1.5 mg/kg bw) in 0.4 ml mineral oil three times per week on alternate days to DMBA, mineral oil only or no further treatment. All hamsters were killed after 28 weeks, when obvious, moderately large buccal pouch tumours were seen in untreated controls. The body weights of the hamsters treated with the algal extract were higher (192 ± 38 g) than those of untreated controls (143 ± 20.0 g) or vehicle controls (152 ± 21 g). All control hamsters but none of those given the algal extract had cheek-pouch tumours ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test). The control animals had proliferative epidermoid carcinomas that invaded the underlying connective tissue, numerous foci of hyperkeratosis with dysplasia and carcinoma *in situ* and lymphocytic infiltration into areas of tumour infiltration and carcinoma *in situ*. The animals given the algal extract had no frank carcinomas, but scattered foci of dysplasia and carcinoma *in situ* undergoing degeneration and cellular destruction were seen. There were also dense accumulations of lymphocytes and histiocytes in the underlying connective tissue, often close to the areas of dysplasia and sometimes so dense that they resembled lymphoid tissue. When the lymphocyte infiltrate was light, it often had a perivascular distribution (Schwartz *et al.*, 1988).

The mucosa of the right cheek pouch of three groups of 20 male Syrian hamsters [age unspecified] fed a normal hamster diet containing 22% protein and the required concentrations of vitamin A and E, was painted with 0.1% DMBA in heavy mineral oil (0.4 mg DMBA per painting) three times a week for 28 weeks. One group received no further treatment; the other two groups were given 0.4 ml of heavy mineral oil containing 0 or 1.4 mg/kg bw of a mixture of at least 15 carotenoids (the main ones were zeaxanthin, 25–35%; myxoxanthophyl, 13–17%; β -carotene, 10–15%; echinenone, 11–13%; and β -cryptoxanthin, 6–23%), by gavage three times a week on alternate days to DMBA, for 28 weeks. A fourth group served as untreated controls. The mean body weight of the DMBA controls (85 g) was lower than that of the animals receiving the

carotenoid mixture (125 g). Ingestion of the mixture prevented the formation of buccal pouch squamous-cell carcinomas completely, whereas all DMBA-treated controls had already developed such tumours after four months of treatment. At the end of treatment, the average number of areas of cheek pouch with epithelial dysplasia was 3 in the group given the carotenoid mixture and 6 in both DMBA-treated groups. No buccal pouch tumours or sites of dysplasia were found in untreated controls. Ingestion of the the carotenoid mixture resulted in a histologically unique picture not seen in DMBA-treated controls: a dense, mixed, inflammatory infiltrate consisting predominantly of cytotoxic lymphocytes and macrophages producing tumour necrosis factor- α and localized areas of mast cells in the deep dermis adjacent to areas of epithelial dysplasia (Schwartz *et al.*, 1989).

(f) *Mammary gland*

Mouse: Three groups of 15 litter-mate SHN/Mci mice, about two months old, were fed AIN-76TM diet containing 0.00022% retinyl palmitate or vitamin A-deficient AIN-76TM diet supplemented with either spray-dried *Dunaliella bardawil* powder, in which the β -carotene content of 0.000051% was increased to 0.03% after eight months, or an oily solution of an extract of *D. salina* Teod. (β -carotene content, 0.03%). These mice were designated 'breeders'. The female litters of these mice, designated 'virgins', were fed the same diets as their mothers, with 27 controls, 33 on the *D. bardawil* diet and 29 on the *D. salina* diet. All three groups of breeders developed the first mammary tumour [not further specified] at six months of age and showed the same incidence of mammary tumours (about 50%) at eight months of age; however, the incidence and age at onset of tumours in groups fed the *Dunaliella*-supplemented diets was slightly but statistically significantly lower than in the controls ($p < 0.05$; analysis of variance [no further details given]). Among the virgins, the first mammary tumours appeared at five months of age in controls, one month later in the group given *D. bardawil* and two months later in the group given *D. salina*. Moreover, the incidence of mammary tumours among virgins given *Dunaliella* supplements

was lower than that in controls at 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11 months of age ($p < 0.05$; analysis of variance). No significant difference in mammary tumorigenesis was found between the groups given *D. bardawil* and *D. salina*. *Dunaliella* had no significant effect on the normal growth of the mammary glands, preneoplastic growth (number and size of hyperplastic alveolar nodules) or neoplastic growth (number of tumours per mouse; growth rate per tumour) (Nagasawa *et al.*, 1989).

(g) *Forestomach*

Mouse: Groups of 15 female Haffkine Swiss mice, six to eight weeks old and weighing 20–25 g, were maintained on standard diet, on standard diet without 0.75% (w/w) sesame oil or on sesame oil-free standard diet supplemented with 0.75 or 1.5% (w/w) palm oil. From week 3, all mice on the standard diet and all mice in one of two groups receiving sesame oil-free diet or diets supplemented with palm oil were given 1 mg benzo[*a*]pyrene in 0.1 ml peanut oil by gavage, twice a week for four weeks. At eight weeks, the animals were kept under observation, and all were killed at the age of 180 days. The mean body-weight gain was increased by 21% in mice on the 1.5% palm-oil diet [probably due to the higher oil content of this diet] but was similar in the other groups. Forestomach tumours developed in 13/15 mice on standard diet and treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene and in none of the mice not treated with benzo[*a*]pyrene. Palm oil reduced the incidence of forestomach tumours from 12/15 in the oil control group to 4/15 in mice given the low dose ($p < 0.001$; χ^2 test) and to 0/15 in those at the high dose [statistics unspecified], and the mean number of forestomach tumours per mouse from 1.7 ± 0.3 to 1.0 ± 0.0 at the low dose ($p < 0.001$; Student's *t* test) (Azuine *et al.*, 1992).

(h) *Small intestine*

Mouse: Fifty male C57B1/6 mice [age unspecified] were given drinking-water containing 0.01% ENNG for four weeks. During weeks 5–20, 28 mice received drinking-water containing 0.05% palm-oil carotene (60% β -carotene, 30% α -carotene and 10% other natural

carotenoids including γ -carotene and lycopene, added as an emulsion [vehicle unspecified]), while the other 27 mice received drinking-water supplemented with the palm-oil carotene vehicle only. All surviving animals were killed at week 20. Palm-oil carotene decreased the incidence of duodenal tumours [type unspecified] from [18/27] to [13/28] ($p < 0.05$ [method of analysis unspecified]) and the mean number of duodenal tumours per mouse from 0.93 to 0.64 (not significant) (Nishino, 1995).

4.2.1.12 *Other end-points*

Various biological activities other than the end-points described above may be used as markers for the anticarcinogenic activity of carotenoids, including immuno-potentiating activity, modification of enzymatic activities and alterations in markers of differentiation and proliferation. Although these activities are mechanistic aspects of anticarcinogenesis, they are discussed in this section because surrogate end-points are needed for rapid evaluation of the anticarcinogenic activity of carotenoids.

(a) *Modulation of the immune system*

The ability of carotenoids to modulate the immune system may play an important role in cancer prevention (reviewed by Bendich, 1989, 1990a,b,c). For example, they have been shown to enhance the responses of splenocytes to lymphocyte mitogens, modulate radiation-induced thymic involution and augment tumour immunity.

Dietary β -carotene and canthaxanthin enhanced the proliferative responses of T and B lymphocytes in male weanling Wistar Kyoto rats given diets supplemented with beadlets containing these carotenoids at a dose of 0.2% (w/w), as determined by the immune responses of splenocytes to the T-lymphocyte mitogens concanavalin A and phytohaemagglutinin and the B-lymphocyte mitogen lipopolysaccharide *in vitro*. The lymphocyte responses were consistently enhanced in groups fed β -carotene or canthaxanthin, although the only significant difference was seen in the response to concanavalin A after β -carotene administration and in the response to lipopolysaccharide after

Table 47. Effects of mixtures of carotenoids on tumorigenesis in experimental animals

Organ	Species, strain sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose, route)	Mixture of carotenoids	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Skin	Mouse, ICR, female	10–30	DMBA, 0.1 mg; single application	Palm carotene; 162 nmol, twice weekly, 15 weeks	After	Tumours: 100% (SU)	Nishino (1995)
Colon	Rat, Sprague-Dawley, female	6	MNU, 4 mg, 3 doses intrarectally	Palm carotene; 6 mg, gavage, daily for 2 weeks	After	No. of aberrant crypt foci/colon: 26% (NS)	Narisawa <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Lung	Mouse, ddY, male	12–14	4-NQO, 10 mg; single, s.c.; 10% glycerol in drinking-water	Palm carotene; 0.005% in drinking-water	After	Tumours Incidence: 67% ($p < 0.05$)	Nishino (1995)
Liver	Mouse, C3H/He, male	17	–	Palm-oil carotene; 0.25 and 2.57 mg/mouse per day in drinking-water	–	Carcinomas Incidence: high dose, 19% (NS) Multiplicity: high dose, 67% ($p < 0.001$)	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1992); Nishino (1995)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.5% DMBA; 3 times/week	Phycotene, 250 µg, injected into cheek pouch 3 times/week	After	Epidermoid carcinomas, regression Complete: 30% (SU) Partial: 70% (SU)	Schwartz & Shklar (1987)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.5% DMBA; 0.6 mg/painting, 3 times/week	0.19 mg in <i>Spirulina Dulaliella</i> extracts injected into buccal pouch	After	Carcinoma, regression Burden: 99% (SU)	Shklar & Schwartz (1988)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.1% DMBA; painted 3 times/week	<i>Spirulina–Dunaliella</i> extract; 0.14 mg/painting, 3 times/week	During	Carcinomas Incidence (gross tumours): 100% (SU)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1988)
Buccal pouch	Hamster, male	20	0.1% DMBA; 0.4 mg/painting	Phycotene: 1.4 mg/kg bw; gavage	During	Carcinomas Regression: 100% (SU)	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1989)

Table 47 (contd)

Organ	Species, strain sex	No. of animals/group	Carcinogen (dose)	Mixture of carotenoids	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Preventive efficacy	Reference
Mammary gland	Mouse, SHN/Mci female	15 breeders 27-33 virgins	-	<i>Dunaliella bardawil</i> powder; <i>Dunaliella-Salina</i> Teod. extract	-	Tumours Breeders: Incidence + latency: slight ($p < 0.05$) Virgins: Latency <i>Bardawil</i> powder: 20% (SU) Saline extract: 40% (SU) Incidence Both preparations: slight (SU)	Nagasawa <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Stomach	Mouse, Haffkine Swiss, female	15	B[a]P; 1 mg, twice weekly, gavage, 4 weeks	Palm oil; 0.75 or 1.5% in diet; 8 weeks	Before, during and after	Tumours Incidence: low dose, 66% ($p < 0.001$); high dose, 100% (SU) Multiplicity: low dose, 41% ($p < 0.001$)	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
Small intestine	Mouse, C57Bl/6, male	27-28	ENNG; 0.01% in drinking-water, 16 weeks	Palm carotene; 0.05% in drinking-water	After	Tumours Incidence: 41% ($p < 0.05$) Multiplicity 69% (NS)	Nishino (1995)

DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; SU, statistics unspecified; NS, not significant; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea; 4-NQO, 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide; ENNG, *N*-ethyl-*N'*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; B[a]P, benzo[a]pyrene

canthaxanthin administration at week 20 (Bendich & Shapiro, 1986).

β -Carotene delayed radiation-induced thymic involution, which is one sign of immune system suppression. Five-week-old male CBA mice were maintained on basal diet containing 15 000 IU/kg vitamin A and 6.4 mg/kg β -carotene for one week before testing [formulation of the diet unspecified] and then received total-body γ -irradiation (600 rad). Supplementation of the basal diet with β -carotene at a dose of 90 mg/kg moderated thymic involution, the weights being 35.2 ± 1.0 g in unirradiated control mice ($p < 0.001$), 24.2 ± 1.0 g in irradiated mice and 33.2 ± 0.8 g in β -carotene-supplemented irradiated mice ($p < 0.005$) (Seifter *et al.*, 1984).

β -Carotene was reported to augment immunity to syngeneic tumours. Female Balb/c mice aged eight weeks were injected subcutaneously with 10^7 syngeneic Balb/c Meth A fibrosarcoma cells. Oral administration of β -carotene dissolved in ethanol and then diluted to a final concentration of 600 μ g/ml with phosphate-buffered saline, given at a dose of 0.2 ml/d per mouse for nine days, led to a 47% reduction in the tumour response after rechallenge with Meth A fibrosarcoma cells implanted subcutaneously on day 10. The tumour response to Meth 1, another syngeneic tumour of Balb/c origin, was unaffected by β -carotene, however, suggesting that β -carotene specifically augments the rejection of tumours through tumour-specific antigens. The immune lymph node cells responsible for the augmented rejection of tumour growth were found to be Thy-1-positive, Lyt-1-negative and Lyt-2-positive lymphocytes, which are presumably cytotoxic T lymphocytes (Tomita *et al.*, 1987).

Immune-enhancing activity of carotenoids was also reported by Temple and Basu (1987) and by Basu *et al.* (1988).

(b) *Alterations in cell differentiation and proliferation*

Alterations in the pattern of expression of keratin, a differentiation-specific marker, might be used as an intermediate biomarker of the anti-carcinogenic activity of carotenoids in squamous epithelia. Loss of high-molecular-mass

(> 60 kDa) keratins, which are specific for and characteristic of normal keratinized squamous epithelia, has been observed in adenocarcinomas and squamous-cell carcinomas. The loss of 67-kDa keratins and reductions in 66- and 63-kDa keratins induced by DMBA in hamster cheek pouches was reversed by treatment with β -carotene. This modulatory effect correlated with a preventive effect against DMBA-induced carcinogenesis (Gijare *et al.*, 1990).

The levels of polyamine, the labelling index of bromodeoxyuridine and the number and area of silver-stained nucleolar organizer region proteins, which are markers of proliferation, may also be useful as intermediate biomarkers, as the chemopreventive effect of carotenoids against 4-NQO-induced oral carcinogenesis was associated with suppression of the expression of these markers (Tanaka *et al.*, 1994, 1995a).

4.2.2 Cells

4.2.2.1 Mammalian cells in vitro

(a) *Carotenoid delivery methods*

As most carotenoids of interest are highly lipophilic and are virtually insoluble in water, supplying these molecules in a bioavailable form has been a major problem. This has been achieved in several ways. Tetrahydrofuran has been widely used as a solvent since its introduction for this purpose in 1991 (Bertram *et al.*, 1991). If suitable precautions are taken, this solvent is not toxic and produces a pseudo-emulsion with high bioavailability (Cooney *et al.*, 1993). The second successful method of delivery involves incorporating carotenoids into liposomes. Here too, adequate uptake of carotenoids into cells has been demonstrated (Muto *et al.*, 1995). [The Working Group noted that considerable caution must be employed in interpreting results obtained with carotenoids in solvents such as hexane and ethanol which, when added to an aqueous solution and then evaporated (hexane) or solubilized (ethanol), cause precipitation of the carotenoid, often on the sides of the culture dish. In such situations, physical effects due to carotenoid crystals may contribute to any observed effects.]

Two carotenoids, β -carotene and canthaxanthin, are available commercially in the

form of beadlets composed of a protein and carbohydrate matrix containing micro-dispersed carotenoid in oil. Control beadlets are also available, containing all of the packaging but no carotenoid. [The Working Group noted that the principal disadvantage of these beadlets, apart from the restriction to only the two carotenoids, is that they contain 90% packaging material that includes antioxidants.] This formulation has been successfully used both *in vitro* and *in vivo* (Pung *et al.*, 1988; Mayne & Parker, 1989). The concentrations of carotenoids reported in Tables 48–53 are those to which the cells were exposed. The concentrations that had biological effects were generally in the range 10^{-5} – 10^{-7} mol/L, which are within those reported in human serum after and before supplementation, respectively (see Table 57).

(b) *Effects on carcinogen-induced neoplastic transformation (see also Table 48)*

Neoplastically transformed foci can be produced in cultured C3H 10T/1/2 cells by application of methylcholanthrene or by exposure to ionizing radiation. Various carotenoids have been shown to reduce the incidence of such foci. Complete inhibition of transformation was achieved when carotenoids (10^{-5} mol/L) were applied seven days after removal of carcinogen and continued for four weeks, indicating that the activity did not affect metabolic activation of the carcinogen or repair of precarcinogenic lesions. Moreover, the inhibition was reversible upon withdrawal of the carotenoid, indicating that the activity was not due to direct cytotoxicity (Pung *et al.*, 1988). Dose–response relationships in the reduction in focus formation were seen in the range of 10^{-5} to 3×10^{-7} mol/L, and activity was observed with both provitamin A carotenoids, such as β -carotene, and non-provitamin A carotenoids, such as canthaxanthin and lycopene (Bertram *et al.*, 1991). β -Carotene and canthaxanthin were shown by the above protocol to be capable of inhibiting X-ray-induced transformation; however, only marginal inhibition was observed when the cultures were treated before, during and immediately after irradiation (Pung

et al., 1988). The studies indicate that carotenoids have little effect on initiation processes in cells. Cellular uptake and inhibition of transformation induced by β -carotene and canthaxanthin were comparable when they were applied in beadlets or as solutions in tetrahydrofuran. The chemopreventive activity of carotenoids did not correlate with their activity as antioxidants, as shown by decreases in thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances; methyl-bixin, the carotenoid with the highest antioxidant activity tested, was inactive as a chemopreventive agent (Zhang *et al.*, 1992). Of two synthetic carotenoids tested, a C_{22} compound was active whereas a C_{28} compound was not active in the 10T/1/2 assay system. Interestingly, the C_{28} compound had been reported to have greater antioxidant activity and was shown to achieve higher cellular levels than the C_{22} compound in this assay system (Pung *et al.*, 1993). When tested in the same system for their ability to inhibit benzo[*a*]pyrene-induced transformation, crocetin, a C_{20} diapocarotenoid, also prevented focus formation at concentrations between 10^{-4} and 3×10^{-5} mol/L. At the highest dose, it reduced focus formation by 75% in comparison with controls. Cells were treated with the carcinogen and the carotenoid simultaneously, and the carotenoid was maintained for an additional seven days followed by seven weeks with no treatment. Simultaneous treatment by a different protocol was shown to reduce the extent of covalent binding of benzo[*a*]pyrene to DNA (Chang *et al.*, 1996).

Treatment of normal mouse mammary cells with DMBA produces nodule-like alveolar lesions, which it has been suggested are pre-malignant (Table 49). β -Carotene at 10^{-6} mol/L in hexane reduced the incidence of these lesions by up to 60% (Som *et al.*, 1984). β -Carotene has also been shown to reduce the excess incidence of sister chromatid exchange produced in mouse mammary cells by exposure to DMBA or NDEA by up to 96%, when applied in hexane with simultaneous carcinogen treatment (Manoharan & Banerjee, 1985). For both end-points, the most effective reduction occurred when the

Table 48. Inhibition by carotenoids of carcinogen-induced neoplastic transformation

Cell line: end-point	Carcinogen (dose)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Carotenoid (vehicle) ^a	Concentration (mol/L)	No. of foci/ no. of dishes	Preventive efficacy (% of vehicle control)	Comments	Reference	
C3H 10T1/2: induction of neo- plastically trans- formed foci	MCA, 1 µg/ml, 24 h	7 days after then weekly	<i>All-trans</i> β-carotene (beadlets)	10 ⁻⁵	0/24	0	$p < 0.001$	β-Carotene less active than canthaxanthin across dose range 3 × 10 ⁻⁶ –10 ⁻⁶ mol/L ($p < 0.01$). Vehicle control (beadlets) did not differ from carcino- gen-only groups ($p = 0.78$)	Pung <i>et al.</i> (1988)
				3 × 10 ⁻⁶	3/24	21.9	$p < 0.001$		
				10 ⁻⁶	16/36	39.8	$p < 0.001$		
				3 × 10 ⁻⁷	23/24	84.4			
				10 ⁻⁷	21/24	102.5			
			3 × 10 ⁻⁸	22/24	103.0				
			Canthaxanthin (beadlets)	3 × 10 ⁻⁶	0/21	0	$p < 0.01$		
				10 ⁻⁶	14/47	24.9	$p < 0.01$		
				3 × 10 ⁻⁷	14/48	31.1	$p < 0.01$		
				10 ⁻⁷	20/24	75.3			
3 × 10 ⁻⁸	20/24	88.9							
No treatment	0	67/84							
	0	0/48							
C3H 10T1/2	X-ray 300 KPV 1.38 Gy/min	24 h prior and 1 h after radiation	<i>All-trans</i> β-carotene (beadlets)	10 ⁻⁵	28/20	84	NS	Pung <i>et al.</i> (1988)	
				10 ⁻⁶	20/19	70	NS		
			Canthaxanthin (beadlets)	10 ⁻⁵	26/20	72	NS		
				10 ⁻⁶	22/20	58	NS		
			0	49/40					
C3H 10T1/2	X-ray, 6 Gy 300 KPV, 1.38 Gy/min	7 days after radiation then weekly	<i>All-trans</i> β-carotene (beadlets)	10 ⁻⁵	4/20	6.0	$p < 0.01$	β-Carotene less active than cantha- xanthin at 3 × 10 ⁻⁶ mol/L ($p < 0.01$)	Pung <i>et al.</i> (1988)
				3 × 10 ⁻⁶	23/20	40.0	$p < 0.01$		
				10 ⁻⁶	35/20	64.0	$p < 0.03$		
			Canthaxanthin (beadlets)	3 × 10 ⁻⁶	5/20	9.2	$p < 0.01$		
				10 ⁻⁶	21/20	64.0	$p < 0.01$		
			3 × 10 ⁻⁷	38/20	100				
No treatment	0	223/80							
	0	4/20							

Table 48 (contd)

Cell line: end-point	Carcinogen (dose)	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Carotenoid (vehicle) ^a	Concentration (mol/L)	No. of foci/ no. of dishes	Preventive efficacy (% of vehicle control)	Comments	Reference
C3H 10T1/2	MCA, 3 µg/ml	7 days after MCA then weekly	Lycopene (solvent THF)	10 ⁻⁵	16/24	45.3	<i>p</i> < 0.01	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
				3 x 10 ⁻⁶	38/24	108.0	NS	
				10 ⁻⁶	31/24	87.8		
				3 x 10 ⁻⁷	64/24	181.2		
			α-Carotene (solvent THF)	10 ⁻⁵	0/24	0	<i>p</i> < 0.001 for range	
				3 x 10 ⁻⁶	19/24	53.8		
				10 ⁻⁶	43/24	127.0		
				3 x 10 ⁻⁶	44/24	124.0		
			Lutein (solvent THF)	10 ⁻⁵	8.24	30	<i>p</i> < 0.05	
				3 x 10 ⁻⁶	44/24	102		
		0	65/36					
C3H 10T1/2	Benzo[a]pyrene, 250 µg/ml	Simultaneously for 7 days	Crocetin (solvent DMSO)	10 ⁻⁴	5/12		Dose-response increase in GST activity	Chang <i>et al.</i> (1996)
				5 x 10 ⁻⁵	6/12			
				10 ⁻⁵	15/12			
				0	21/12			

MCA, 3-methylcholanthrene; THF, tetrahydrofuran; DMSO, dimethylsulfoxide; NS, not significant; GST, glutathione S-transferase

^a Beadlets: 10% carotenoid beadlets from Hoffmann-La Roche

Table 49. Inhibition by carotenoids of carcinogen-induced intermediate markers of response

Cell line: end-point	Carcinogen	Treatment relative to carcinogen	Carotenoid (vehicle)	Marker of response	Preventive efficacy	Reference	
Mouse mammary cells: induction of nodule-like alveolar lesions	DMBA in DMSO, 7.8 µmol/L for 1 day on day 3-4 of culture	0-3 days	β-Carotene (solvent hexane), 10 ⁻⁶ mol/L	Lesions/glands	% reduction	Som <i>et al.</i> (1984)	
		3-4 days		16/32	26		
		0-4 days		8/31	68		
	4-10 days	9/36		53	57		
	DMSO	0-10 days		10/33			26
				27/34			58
		0/28	0				
Mouse mammary cells: induction of sister chromatid exchange	For 1 day on 3-4 of culture	3-4 days	β-Carotene/hexane Hexane control	Exchanges/ chromosome	% reduction	Manoharan & Banerjee (1985)	
							DMBA, 7.8 µmol/L
	NDEA, 14.6 µmol/L	3-4 days		β-Carotene/hexane Hexane control	0.29		62
					0.38		
	MNU, 1 µmol/L	3-4 days		β-Carotene/hexane Hexane control	0.27		93
					0.75		
	DMSO	No treatment		0.24			

carotenoids were added simultaneously with the carcinogen. [The Working Group noted that hexane was used as the solvent in both studies.]

(c) *Effects on cell proliferation (see also Table 50)*

Various carotenoids have been shown to reduce proliferation in a variety of cell lines. This action may be significant mechanistically in view of the role of proliferation in carcinogenesis and tumour progression (Ames *et al.*, 1993). β -Carotene and canthaxanthin caused small reductions in the logarithmic growth rates of mouse fibroblast 10T1/2 cells. Effective concentrations in transformation assays reduced the doubling time from 39 h in controls to 42 and 45 h in treated cell cultures, respectively. In carcinogen-initiated cells, these carotenoids caused 13 and 20% reductions in saturation density, respectively (Pung *et al.*, 1988). This reduction was not considered to contribute materially to the suppression of transformation. Reductions in proliferation have not been reported consistently: no effects were reported in normal or neoplastic mouse lung cells, whereas the same authors found decreased proliferation in 10T1/2 cells (Banoub *et al.*, 1996). In human cervical dysplastic and neoplastic cell lines, β -carotene at 10^{-5} mol/L caused an up to twofold increase in doubling time in dysplastic but not in cancer cells and reduced the expression of the epidermal growth factor receptor (Muto *et al.*, 1995). In human GOTO neuroblastoma cells, an interesting differential effect of α -carotene versus β -carotene was reported: while both compounds suppressed proliferation, α -carotene was about 10 times more active than the β -carotene and was cytostatic at 5×10^{-6} mol/L and cytotoxic at 10^{-5} mol/L. Cells were arrested in G_1 or G_0 and expressed less *N-myc* mRNA (Murakoshi *et al.*, 1989). Other carotenoids are also effective. Lycopene strongly inhibited proliferation of human endometrial (Ishikawa), mammary (MCF-7) and lung (NCI-H226) cancer cells, but α -carotene and β -carotene were far less effective. In contrast to cancer cells, normal human fibroblasts were less sensitive to lycopene (Levy *et al.*, 1995). The effects of β -

carotene on human embryo fibroblasts was analysed by flow cytometry; a concentration of 2×10^{-5} mol/L for three days caused a 30% reduction in cell number and a 66% reduction in S-phase cells (Stivala *et al.*, 1996).

β -Carotene inhibited the growth of both nontumorigenic and tumorigenic human parotid acinar cells *in vitro*. The tumorigenic cells were clearly more sensitive to this effect, resulting in extensive morphological changes. Some dose-response relationship was seen (10 mg/ml versus 20 mg/ml). A mixture of β -carotene and α -tocopherol inhibited growth even more, but addition of vitamin C and/or retinoic acid did not increase the effect (Prasad & Kumar, 1996). In contrast, 1 μ mol/L β -carotene stimulated the proliferation of mouse 3T3 cells, and the effect was more pronounced in the presence of higher serum concentrations; thus, at 10% serum, β -carotene almost doubled the incorporation of radiolabelled thymidine. The proliferative response to TPA was also statistically significantly increased ($p < 0.05$; Student's *t* test), and the levels of ornithine decarboxylase in β -carotene-treated cultures were increased (Okai *et al.*, 1996a). [The Working Group noted that the method of supplying the carotenoid to the cells was not described, and cellular uptake was not demonstrated.]

(d) *Effects on tumour promotion (see also Table 50)*

The ability of carotenoids to interfere with tumour promotion has been examined in two studies. In one, crocetin at 10^{-5} mol/L inhibited the translocation of protein kinase C from the cytoplasm to the membrane and reduced TPA-induced protein phosphorylation (Wang, C.-J. *et al.*, 1996). In a second study, β -carotene at 10^{-4} – 10^{-5} mol/L inhibited protein phosphorylation induced by microcystin in mouse hepatocytes and also suppressed the morphological changes (Matsushima-Nishiwaki *et al.*, 1995). The ability of a large series of carotenoids to inhibit the ability of TPA to activate Epstein-Barr virus in human Raji cells was examined. Simultaneous exposure of cells to TPA and carotenoids (at 16 μ mol/L), both dissolved in dimethylsulfoxide, reduced activation of the

Table 50. Effects of carotenoids on cell proliferation, differentiation and tumour promotion

Cell line: end-point	Carotenoid (vehicle)	Concentration	Response	Comments	Reference
Human GOTO neuroblastoma cells: proliferation	α -Carotene	10 ⁻⁵ mol/L for 5 days 5 x 10 ⁻⁶ mol/L 2 x 10 ⁻⁶ mol/L for 5 days	Cytotoxic Cytostatic Partial growth arrest	Rapid cell loss	Murakoshi <i>et al.</i> (1989)
	β -Carotene (emulsion)	2 x 10 ⁻⁵ mol/L	Partial growth arrest	Comparable to 2 x 10 ⁻⁶ mol/L α -carotene	
Human embryonic fibroblasts: proliferation	β -Carotene (liposomes)	2.1 x 10 ⁻⁵ mol/L for 3 days	30% reduction in cell number, 66% reduction in S-phase cells	Decrease in S-phase cells	Stivala <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Human cervical cancer and dysplastic cell lines: proliferation; EGF receptor	β -Carotene (liposomes)	10 ⁻⁵ mol/L for 7 days	Reduction in growth rate for dysplastic but not cancer lines	Reduction in EGF binding and receptors in dysplastic lines	Muto <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Human normal keratinocytes, squamous-cell carcinoma, lung carcinoma lines: viability	β -Carotene or canthaxanthin (liposomes)	7 x 10 ⁻⁵ mol/L 3 x 10 ⁻⁴ mol/L for 5 h	Increased viability in normal cells, decreased in tumour cells (25%) versus controls	Little evidence for a dose-response relationship	Schwartz <i>et al.</i> (1990)
Human endometrial, mammary and lung cancer cell lines, normal human fibroblasts: proliferation	Lycopene, α - and β -carotene (THF)	< 2 x 10 ⁻⁶ mol/L for 1-4 days	Lycopene inhibited cell proliferation more effectively than α - or β -carotene	4-10 fold higher concentrations needed for α - and β -carotene effects	Levy <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Mouse normal and neoplastic lung cells C3H 10T/1/2 cells: proliferation	β -Carotene (dimethylformamide)	10 ⁻⁶ -10 ⁻⁵ mol/L for 1-5 days	No effect on proliferation Decreased proliferation	Bioavailability in dimethylformamide not assessed	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
F9 Embryonal cells: <i>RAR</i> - β reporter gene: differentiation; morphology; collagen expression	β -Carotene, canthaxanthin (THF)	10 ⁻⁵ mol/L for 5 days	Both carotenoids increased reporter gene expression and markers of differentiation	Carotenoids 10-fold less active than retinoic acid	Nikawa <i>et al.</i> (1995)

Table 50 (contd)

Cell line: end-point	Carotenoid (vehicle)	Concentration	Response	Comments	Reference
Human keratinocytes in organotypic culture: expression of markers of differentiation	β -Carotene, canthaxanthin (THF)	10^{-5} mol/L; 10^{-6} mol/L for 7 days	Both decreased expression of the 'mature' genes <i>keratin 10</i> and <i>fillagrin</i> No effect on basal keratin 14	Similar response seen with 10^{-6} mol/L retinoic acid	Bertram & Borkiewicz (1995)
Mouse fibroblasts: induction of gap-junctional communication	Cathaxanthin, β -carotene lutein, α -carotene, lycopene (THF)	10^{-6} – 10^{-5} mol/L	Increased communication	Activity in order listed: correlated with inhibition of carcinogenesis. Similar activity on <i>connexin 43</i> expression	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1992)
Human HL-60 cells: induction of markers of differentiation	β -Carotene, lutein (ethanol)	10^{-5} mol/L	Increased granulocyte differentiation	Equally active but much less active than retinoic acid	Gross <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Mouse Balb/c 3T3 cells: protein kinase C translocation	Crocetin (solvent not stated)	10^{-5} mol/L	Inhibited TPA-induced translocation and protein phosphorylation		Wang, C.-J. <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Mouse hepatocytes: inhibition of microcystin-induced protein phosphorylation	β -Carotene (liposomes)	10^{-5} – 10^{-4} mol/L	Dose–response relationship in reduction in protein phosphorylation	Induction of morphological changes also suppressed	Matsushima-Nishiwaki <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Mouse Balb/c 3T3 cells: proliferation	β -Carotene (hexane)	10^{-6} mol/L	Increased cell numbers and TdR incorporation	Also increased ODC activity	Okai <i>et al.</i> (1996a)
Human Raji cells: expression of HPV antigen	β -Carotene (DMSO) α -Carotene Lutein Lycopene	16 μ mol/L 16 μ mol/L 16 μ mol/L 16 μ mol/L	25% reduction in expression 7.5% 11.8% 32.5%		Tsushima <i>et al.</i> (1995)

EGF, epidermal growth factor, THF, tetrahydrofuran; TPA, 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate; ODC, ornithine decarboxylase; HPV, human papillomavirus; DMSO, dimethylsulfoxide

virus by TPA, the order of potency being α -carotene (1.5%), β -carotene (25%), lycopene (32%) and canthaxanthin (47%), in comparison with TPA-treated controls (Tsushima *et al.*, 1995). [The Working Group noted that the effects on tumour promoters may be significant since carotenoids appear to inhibit post-initiation events.]

(e) *Effects on cell differentiation (see also Table 50)*

The human promyelocytic cell line HL-60 has been used widely in studies of differentiating agents. β -Carotene and lutein, supplied in ethanol at a concentration of 10^{-5} mol/L, have both been shown to induce granulocyte differentiation (Gross *et al.*, 1997). These compounds were, however, much less active than retinoic acid, which is now used clinically to induce differentiation in promyelocytic leukaemia. β -Carotene and canthaxanthin also modified the differentiation profile of human keratinocytes grown in organotypic culture. Concentrations of 10^{-6} – 10^{-5} mol/L decreased the expression of mature *keratin 1* and increased the expression of the gap junction gene *connexin 43*, both expressed in suprabasal cells. Similar changes were produced by retinoic acid, but at lower concentrations. No effects were seen on basally expressed keratin (Bertram & Bortkiewicz, 1995). Thus, carotenoids appear to express many of the activities of retinoic acid but must be added at higher concentrations. Two studies have addressed the molecular basis of this activity by discerning whether conversion to retinoids is involved: in one, canthaxanthin was shown to up-regulate the expression of *connexin 43* but not *RAR- β* , a gene driven by a known retinoid-responsive element. In 10T1/2 and F9 cells, retinoic acid up-regulated the expression of both genes, which suggests that carotenoids act independently (Zhang *et al.*, 1992). Other investigators examined the ability of canthaxanthin to increase the expression of a reporter gene driven by the *RAR- β* promoter. The gene was activated, and an active retinoid (4-oxoretinoic acid) was shown chemically to be produced from canthaxanthin (Nikawa *et al.*, 1995).

(f) *Protection from oxidative damage (see also Table 51)*

An action shared by most, if not all, carotenoids, but to different degrees, is the ability to protect biological membranes from oxidative damage. In general, the ability of carotenoids to protect against exogenous free radical-initiated damage has been examined. This activity has been described for synthetic liposomes, in which β -carotene and canthaxanthin were equally active in preventing damage (Krinsky & Deneke, 1982); for lipid extracted from rat liver microsomes, in which the addition of β -carotene in hexane prevented damage (Palozza & Krinsky, 1991); and in rat liver microsomes themselves, in which addition of β -carotene in a chloroform–methanol solution prevented the formation of oxidation products. The activity of β -carotene appears to be synergistic with that of α -tocopherol (Palozza & Krinsky, 1992b).

Few investigators have examined the effects of carotenoids under more physiological conditions. In one study, feeding canthaxanthin as a beadlet formulation to vitamin E- and selenium-deficient chicks resulted in fewer oxidation products in liver membranes; however, this study was complicated by an increased concentration of α -tocopherol in the membranes which appeared to confer more protection than that afforded by canthaxanthin (Mayne & Parker, 1989). In a second study, conducted in cultured mouse fibroblasts, the addition of diverse carotenoids in tetrahydrofuran decreased the spontaneous production of membrane oxidation products, measured as thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances. While all carotenoids tested decreased production, the activity did not correlate with their ability to protect against neoplastic transformation or to increase the expression of *connexin 43* (Zhang *et al.*, 1991). In a clinical study, formation of thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances in plasma correlated negatively with total carotenoid serum concentrations; the effect was also found in cell cultures (Franke *et al.*, 1994).

(g) *Effects on immune function in vitro (see also Table 52)*

Carotenoids have been shown to enhance immune responsiveness. Incubation of human

Table 51. Effects of carotenoids on lipid oxidation *in vitro*

Test system	Carotenoid (solvent)	Concentration	Response	Comments	Reference
Synthetic liposomes: free radical-initiated damage	β -Carotene (lipid) Canthaxanthin (lipid)	5.5 mmol/mol 6.35 mmol/mol	Decreased oxidation products	Equal activity	Krinsky & Deneke (1982)
Rat liver microsome lipids: free radical-initiated damage	β -Carotene (hexane); cell-free	2–10 μ mol/L	Decreased oxidation products	Additive with α -tocopherol	Palozza & Krinsky (1991)
Oxidation of methyl-linoleate: free radical-initiated damage	β -Carotene (chlorobenzene)	0.05–5 mmol/L	Decreased oxidation	More efficient at low pO_2	Burton & Ingold (1984)
Rat liver microsomes: free radical-initiated damage	β -Carotene (chloroform: methanol) cell-free	10 μ mol/mg protein	Decreased oxidation products	Apparent synergy with α -tocopherol	Palozza & Krinsky (1992a)
Vitamin E- and selenium-deficient chicks: oxidation of liver membranes	Canthaxanthin (beadlets)	5 g/kg diet	Decreased oxidation products	Main protection due to increased vitamin E	Mayne & Parker (1989)
Mouse fibroblasts: membrane oxidation	β -Carotene (THF)	10^{-5} mol/L	Decreased oxidation products		Franke <i>et al.</i> (1994)
Mouse fibroblasts: membrane oxidation	Lutein, lycopene, methyl-bixin canthaxanthin, β -carotene, α -carotene (THF)	3×10^{-6} mol/L	Decreased oxidation products	Activity in order listed: not correlated with inhibition of carcinogenesis	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1991)

THF, tetrahydrofuran

Table 52. Effects of carotenoids on immune function *in vitro*

Test system: end-point	Carotenoid	Concentration (mol/L)	Response	Magnitude	Comments	Reference
Expression of Fcγ receptors on human monocytes	β-Carotene	3 x 10 ⁻⁶ , 1 day	Inhibition of suppression induced by retinoic acid and by tumour extract	No increase in control expression of Fc receptors		Geisen <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Human T lympho- cytes: activation markers	Ethanol β-Carotene Canthaxanthin	10 ⁻⁸	Increase in NK cells and cells with activation markers	5% 40% 60%	Response differed qualitatively from 13- <i>cis</i> -retinoic acid	Prabhala <i>et al.</i> (1989)
Mouse spleen cells: antibody production; cytokine secretion	Astaxanthin Zeaxanthin Lutein Lycopene Canthaxanthin Ethanol:hexane, 49:1	10 ⁻⁸ , 3 days	Increased reactivity No consistent response	2–3-fold increase over controls		Jyonouchi <i>et al.</i> (1996)
Mouse spleen cells: antibody production	Astaxanthin Lutein β-Carotene Ethanol:hexane, 49:1	10 ⁻⁸	Increased reactivity Increased reactivity No consistent response	2–5-fold increase over controls		Lin <i>et al.</i> (1997)
Mouse spleen cells: response to antigen <i>in vitro</i> and <i>in vivo</i>	Astaxanthin β-Carotene Ethanol:hexane, 49:1	10 ⁻⁸ 10 ⁻⁸ 5 days	Astaxanthin but not β- carotene increased response to suboptimal antigen	2–5-fold increase over controls		Jyonouchi <i>et al.</i> (1995)
Human leukocytes: cytotoxic cytokine secretion	α-Carotene, β-carotene (ethanol)	10 ⁻⁹ –0.5 x 10 ⁻¹⁰ , 2 days	Increased secretion	60% decrease in proliferation		Abril <i>et al.</i> (1989)

peripheral blood mononuclear cells for 72 h with β -carotene or canthaxanthin at 10^{-8} mol/L in ethanol increased the number of cells expressing markers for natural killer cells, from about 5% to 40 and 60%, respectively, while the percentage of cells expressing the IL-2 receptor increased from about 5 to 20%. Similar changes were seen after exposure to retinoids (Prabhala *et al.*, 1989). Increased antibody production in response to challenge was reported in mouse spleen cells after treatment with carotenoids, including astaxanthin, lutein and β -carotene, all at 10^{-8} mol/L. This response appeared to depend upon T-lymphocyte activation. In the numerous assays evaluated, astaxanthin was generally the most potent carotenoid tested (Jyonouchi *et al.*, 1995, 1996; Lin *et al.*, 1997). [The Working Group noted that these authors used a methanol-hexane mixture to deliver the carotenoids to the cell cultures, and the bioavailability of the carotenoids was not determined.] Exposure of human mononuclear cells to β -carotene dissolved in methanol at 10^{-10} mol/L induced the secretion of a novel cytotoxic cytokine into the culture medium. This cytokine inhibited the growth of some human tumour cells but stimulated the growth of others. This activity was not seen with several retinoids that were tested (Abril *et al.*, 1989). [The Working Group noted that this effect, seen at an extremely low concentration, has not been replicated.] In other studies, β -carotene at 3×10^{-6} mol/L in chloroform inhibited the suppressive activity of retinoids on interferon secretion by human macrophages. Thus, in this system, carotenoids appear to antagonize the action of retinoids; no explanation was proposed for this unusual finding (Geisen *et al.*, 1997).

4.2.2.2 Antimutagenicity in short-term tests

Many studies have addressed the antimutagenic effects of carotenoids in short-term tests with prokaryotes and eukaryotes *in vitro*, and these have been reviewed (Krinsky, 1993a,b, 1994; Odin, 1997). Antimutagenicity profiles have been prepared for a limited number of assays of β -carotene (Waters *et al.*, 1990; Brockman *et al.*, 1992); these are shown graphically in Figure 7.

The results of studies with prokaryotes are summarized in Table 53.

umu C gene expression induced by the heterocyclic amine 3-amino-3,4-dimethyl-5H-pyrido[4,3-*b*]indole (Trp-P-1) in the TA1535/pSK strain 1002 of *Salmonella typhimurium* was inhibited by both β -carotene and canthaxanthin, with 50% inhibitory doses of 4.0×10^{-2} and 1.5×10^{-3} mmol/L, respectively. β -Carotene was ineffective when *umu C* expression was induced by the directly acting mutagens adriamycin and mitomycin C (Okai *et al.*, 1996b).

In Ames' *Salmonella*/microsome test, carotenoids appear in general to inhibit the mutagenicity of promutagens and to be ineffective against directly acting mutagens; however, conflicting data were generated in various laboratories with various mutagens. Thus, with regard to directly acting mutagens, β -carotene and canthaxanthin had no effect on the mutagenicity of MNNG in strains TA1535 and TA100 in one study (Santamaria *et al.*, 1988), whereas in another, β -carotene, canthaxanthin, 8'-apo- β -carotenal and 8'-apo- β -carotenoyl methyl-ester [The Working Group noted that the authors reported this carotenoid as '...carotene methylester'.] were found to inhibit the mutagenicity of the same compound in strain TA100, with dose-related effects (Azuine *et al.*, 1992). β -Carotene did not affect the direct mutagenicity of 4-NQO in strain TA100 (Camoirano *et al.*, 1994) and had a negligible or poor effect on the mutagenicity in TA100 of four directly acting complex mixtures, i.e. coal dust, diesel emission particles, tobacco snuff and airborne particles, with maximum inhibition of 11, 16, 16 and 39%, respectively (Ong *et al.*, 1989). β -Carotene did not affect the direct mutagenicity of 2-nitrofluorene in strain TA98, but decreased those of 1-nitropyrene and 3-nitrofluoranthene (Tang & Edenharder, 1997). The mutagenicity of 1-nitropyrene in strain YG1024 was also inhibited by lutein and by the xanthophylls (largely lutein) extracted from Aztec marigold (*Tagetes erecta*). Lutein had no effect on the DNA repair system of 1-nitropyrene-treated YG1024 (González de Mejía *et al.*, 1997a).

β -Carotene and canthaxanthin inhibited the mutagenicity induced in strain TA102 by 8-methoxypsoralen after UV-A irradiation in a

ERRATUM

IARC Handbooks of Cancer Prevention Volume 2 – Carotenoids

The Legend following Figure 7 on page 234 was incorrect. Please replace it by the attached legend.

The editors apologise for any inconvenience that this may have caused.

IARC Handbooks of Cancer Prevention

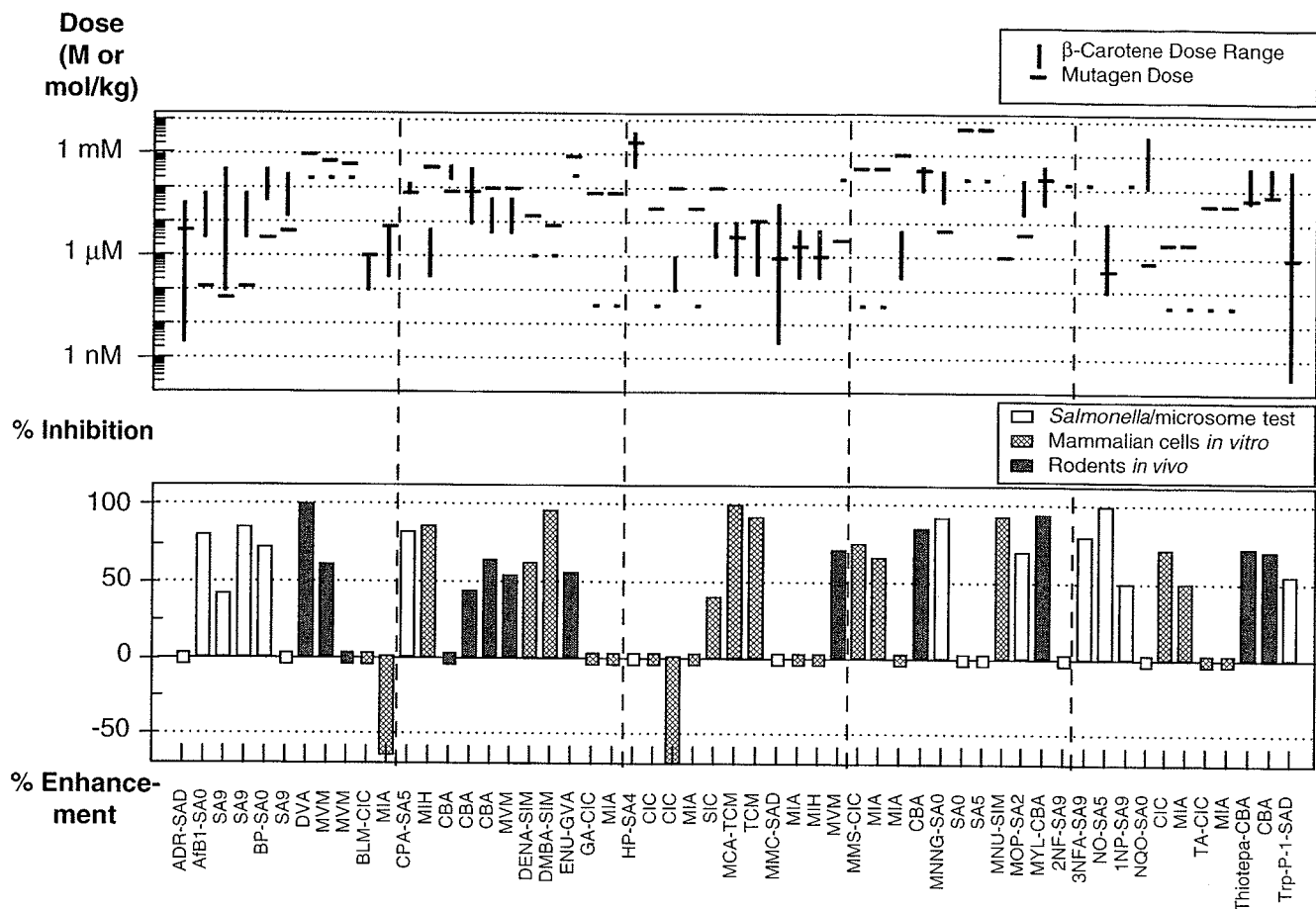
Volume 2

Carotenoids

Erratum

Please replace the legend following Figure 7 on page 234 by the following:

Figure 7. The antimutagenicity profile displays the performance of β -carotene to modulate mutagen-induced genetic and related effects. The profile contains quantitative results from the data in Tables 53-55 and is organized using chemical abbreviations and test codes to identify each item on the profile. The abbreviations mark the initial occurrence of each mutagen and all tests as labeled across the x-axis. In the upper panel doses are plotted in molar units for both the mutagens and β -carotene. In the lower panel positive values are the maximum percent inhibition of the mutagen-induced effects, negative values are the maximum percent enhancement of the effects, and values equal to zero indicate that no significant differences were observed relative to the mutagen-induced effects. A brief description of the anti-mutagenicity profile methodology and test code definitions are given in the appendices. Chemicals abbreviated here are: ADR, adriamycin; AfB₁, aflatoxin B₁; BP, benzo[a]pyrene; BLM, bleomycin; CPA, cyclophosphamide; DENA, diethyl-nitrosamine; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[a]anthracene; ENU, *N*-ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea; GA, gallic acid; HP, hydrogen peroxide; MCA, 3-methylcholanthrene; MMC mitomycin C; MMS, methylmethane sulfonate; MNNG, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea; MOP, 8-methoxypsoralen + UV-A; MYL, myleran; 2NF, 2-nitrofluorene; 3NFA, 3-nitrofluoranthene; NO, nitric oxide; 1NP, 1-nitropyrene; NQO, 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide; TA, tannic acid; Trp-P-1, 3-Amino-3,4-dimethyl-5H-pyrido[4,3-b]indole.

Figure 7. Antimutagenicity profile of β -carotene

For definitions of test codes, see Appendix 2.

AFB₁, aflatoxin B₁; BP, benzo[*a*]pyrene; MNNG, *N*-methyl-*N*'-nitro-*N*-nitrosoguanidine; NDEA, *N*-nitrosodiethylamine; DMBA, 7,12-dimethylbenz[*a*]anthracene; MNU, *N*-methyl-*N*-nitrosourea; 4NQO, 4-nitroquinoline 1-oxide; BLM, bleomycin; GA, gallic acid; H₂O₂, hydrogen peroxide; MMC, mitomycin C; MMS, methylmethane sulfonate; TA, tannic acid; MCA, 3-methylcholanthrene; CPA, cyclophosphamide; ENU, *N*-ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea; Myl, myleran; TT, thio-TEPA

normal atmosphere. In a nitrogen atmosphere, the photomutagenicity was decreased by 65%, and the two carotenoids had no protective effect (Santamaria *et al.*, 1988). β -Carotene, preincubated with bacterial broth cultures, inhibited the mutagenicity induced by nitric oxide or a mixture of nitric oxide plus nitrogen dioxide in strain TA1535 (Arroyo *et al.*, 1992). β -Carotene did not decrease the mutagenicity of hydrogen peroxide in strain TA104 (Han, 1992).

Most assays of promutagens in Ames' test showed protective effects of carotenoids. β -Carotene inhibited the mutagenicity of cyclophosphamide mediated by an exogenous metabolic system derived from a 9000 x *g* supernatant of rat liver (S9) in strain TA1535. Moreover, the mutagenicity of urine in the

same strain was inhibited when the rats were treated simultaneously with cyclophosphamide and β -carotene, but not when β -carotene was added to the urine of cyclophosphamide-treated rats (Belisario *et al.*, 1985). The mutagenicity of aflatoxin B₁ in TA98 was decreased in the presence of β -carotene, with a maximum inhibition of 45% (Whong *et al.*, 1988), and by β -carotene, canthaxanthin, cryptoxanthin (extracted from orange juice) and a chloroform extract of carrot (51% β -carotene, 32% α -carotene and 17% other carotenoids). The doses of these compounds required to inhibit mutagenicity by 65% were 22, 37, 3 and 16 μ g/plate in TA98, and 42, 44, 1 and 23 μ g/plate in TA100, respectively. Inhibition by β -carotene and canthaxanthin was stronger during the metabolic

Table 53. Inhibition by carotenoids of standard mutagens in the *Salmonella*/microsome test

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Mutagen (tested doses)	<i>S. typhimurium</i> strain	S9 mix	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
D	SAD	β-Carotene (0.0003–300 μmol/plate)	3-Amino-3,4-dimethyl-5 <i>H</i> -pyrido[4,3- <i>b</i>]indole (Trp-P-1) (0.2 μg/ml)	TA1535/pSK1002	+	+	40 μmol/plate (ID ₅₀)	Okai <i>et al.</i> (1996b)
D	SAD	Canthaxanthin (0.0003–300 μmol/plate)	3-Amino-3,4-dimethyl-5 <i>H</i> -pyrido[4,3- <i>b</i>]indole (Trp-P-1) (0.2 μg/ml)	TA1535/pSK1002	+	+	1.5 μmol/plate (ID ₈₀)	Okai <i>et al.</i> (1996b)
D	SAD	β-Carotene (0.003–30 μmol/plate)	Adriamycin (3 μg/ml)	TA1535/pSK1002	–	–	30 μmol/plate	Okai <i>et al.</i> (1996b)
D	SAD	β-Carotene (0.003–30 μmol/plate)	Mitomycin C (0.3 μg/ml)	TA1535/pSK1002	–	–	30 μmol/plate	Okai <i>et al.</i> (1996b)
G	SA5	β-Carotene (100–200 μg/plate)	Cyclophosphamide (50–300 μg/plate)	TA1535	+	+	200 μg/plate (ID ₇₄)	Belisario <i>et al.</i> (1985)
G	SA5	β-Carotene (0.1–10 μmol/plate)	Nitric oxide (10 ppm) or nitric oxide (8 ppm) plus nitrogen dioxide (5 ppm)	TA1535	–	+	1.0 μmol/plate	Arroyo <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA9	β-Carotene (31.25–500 μg/plate)	Cigarette smoke condensate (0.01 cigarette equivalent/plate)	TA98	+	–	500 μg/plate	Terwel & van der Hoeven (1985)
G	SA9	β-Carotene (31.25–500 μg/plate)	Benzo[<i>a</i>]pyrene (5 μg/plate)	TA98	+	–	500 μg/plate	Terwel & van der Hoeven (1985)
G	SA2	β-Carotene (18.6 and 186 μmol/plate)	8-Methoxypsoralen (4.6 μmol/plate) + UV-A (3–9 × 10 ³ erg/cm ²)	TA102	–	+	18.6 μmol/plate	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1988)
G	SA2	Canthaxanthin (dose unspecified)	8-Methoxypsoralen (4.6 μmol/plate) + UV-A (3–9 × 10 ³ ergs/cm ²)	TA102	–	+	(dose unspecified)	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1988)
G	SA4	β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	Hydrogen peroxide (5 μmol/plate)	TA104	–	–	10 μmol/plate	Han (1992)

Table 53 (contd)

End-point Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Mutagen (tested doses) ^a	<i>S. typhimurium</i> strain	S9 mix	Result ^b	LED/HID ^c	Reference	
G	SA9	β-Carotene (≤0.4 μmol/plate)	2-Nitrofluorene (dose unspecified)	TA98	-	-	0.4 μmol/plate	Tang & Edenharder (1997)
G	SA9	β-Carotene (≤0.4 μmol/plate)	1-Nitropyrene (dose unspecified)	TA98	-	+	0.4 μmol/plate (ID ₈₀)	Tang & Edenharder (1997)
G	SA9	β-Carotene (≤0.4 μmol/plate)	3-Nitrofluoranthene (dose unspecified)	TA98	-	+	0.4 μmol/plate (ID ₈₀)	Tang & Edenharder (1997)
G	SAS	Lutein (0.002–10 μg/plate)	1-Nitropyrene (0.06 μg/plate)	YG1024	-	+	0.2 μg/plate (ID ₅₇)	González de Mejía <i>et al.</i> (1997a)
G	SAS	Oleoresin (0.002–10 μg equivalents lutein/plate)	1-Nitropyrene (0.06 μg/plate)	YG1024	-	+	2 μg/plate (ID ₈₃)	González de Mejía <i>et al.</i> (1997a)
G	SAS	Xanthophyll (0.002–10 μg equivalents lutein/plate)	1-Nitropyrene (0.06 μg/plate)	YG1024	-	+	0.2 μg/plate (ID ₅₂)	González de Mejía <i>et al.</i> (1997a)
G	SA0	β-Carotene (186 μmol/plate)	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N'</i> -nitro- <i>N</i> -nitrosoguanidine (3.4–13.6 μmol/plate)	TA100	-	-	186 μmol/plate	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1988)
G	SA5	β-Carotene (186 μmol/plate)	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N'</i> -nitro- <i>N</i> -nitrosoguanidine (3.4–13.6 μmol/plate)	TA1535	-	-	186 μmol/plate	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1988)
G	SA0	Canthaxanthin (182 μmol/plate)	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N'</i> -nitro- <i>N</i> -nitrosoguanidine (3.4–13.6 μmol/plate)	TA100	-	-	182 μmol/plate	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1988)
G	SA5	Canthaxanthin (182 μmol/plate)	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N'</i> -nitro- <i>N</i> -nitrosoguanidine (3.4–13.6 μmol/plate)	TA1535	-	-	182 μmol/plate	Santamaria <i>et al.</i> (1988)
G	SA9	β-Carotene (type III) (0.00026–0.86 μmol/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (50 ng/plate)	TA98	+	+	0.86 μmol/plate (ID ₄₂)	Whong <i>et al.</i> (1988)

Table 53 (contd)

End-point Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Mutagen(tested doses) ^a	<i>S. typhimurium</i> strain	S9 mix	Result ^b	LED/HID ^c	Reference
G SA9	β-Carotene (type III) (0.43–3.45 μmol/plate)	Fried beef (750 mg/plate)	TA98	+	–	3.45 μmol/plate	Ong <i>et al.</i> (1989)
G SA9	β-Carotene (type III) (0.43–3.45 μmol/plate)	Coal dust (75 mg/plate)	TA98	–	–	3.45 μmol/plate	Ong <i>et al.</i> (1989)
G SA9	β-Carotene (type III) (0.43–3.45 μmol/plate)	Diesel emission particles (2 mg/plate)	TA98	–	–	3.45 μmol/plate	Ong <i>et al.</i> (1989)
G SA9	β-Carotene (type III) (0.43–3.45 μmol/plate)	Tobacco snuff (85 mg/plate)	TA98	–	–	3.45 μmol/plate	Ong <i>et al.</i> (1989)
G SA9	β-Carotene (type III) (0.43–3.45 μmol/plate)	Airborne particles (4 mg/plate)	TA98	–	(+)	3.45 μmol/plate (ID ₃₉)	Ong <i>et al.</i> (1989)
G SA0	β-Carotene (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA100	+	+	42 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G SA9	β-Carotene (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA98	+	+	22 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G SA0	Canthaxanthin (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA100	+	+	44 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G SA9	Canthaxanthin (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA98	+	+	37 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G SA0	Cryptoxanthin (extracted from orange juice) (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA100	+	+	1 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G SA9	Cryptoxanthin (extracted from orange juice) (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA98	+	+	3 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G SA0	Carrot carotenoids (51% β-carotene, 32% β-carotene, 17% other carotenoids) (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA100	+	+	23 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)

Table 53 (contd)

End-point Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Mutagen(tested doses) ^a	<i>S. typhimurium</i> strain	S9 mix	Result ^b	LED/HID ^c	Reference	
G	SA9	Carrot carotenoids (51% β-carotene, 32% β-carotene, 17% other carotenoids) (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA98	+	+	16 μg/plate (ID ₆₅)	He & Campbell (1990)
G	SA0	Lycopene (extracted from tomato paste) (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA100	+	–	100 μg/plate	He & Campbell (1990)
G	SA9	Lycopene (extracted from tomato paste) (5–100 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (100 ng/plate)	TA98	+	–	100 μg/plate	He & Campbell (1990)
G	SAS	Lutein (0.002–10 μg/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (0.5 μg/plate)	YG1024	+	+	10 μg/plate (ID ₄₉)	González de Mejía <i>et al.</i> (1997b)
G	SAS	Oleoresin (0.002–10 μg equivalents lutein/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (0.5 μg/plate)	YG1024	+	+	2 μg/plate (ID ₆₆)	González de Mejía <i>et al.</i> (1997b)
G	SAS	Xanthophyll plus (0.002–2 μg equivalents lutein/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (0.5 μg/plate)	YG1024	+	+	0.002 μg/plate (ID ₅₂)	González de Mejía <i>et al.</i> (1997b)
G	SA0	β-Carotene (50–800 nmol/plate [?]) ^c	1-Methyl-3-nitro-1-nitrosoguanidine (13.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	–	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	Canthaxanthin (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	1-Methyl-3-nitro-1-nitrosoguanidine (13.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	–	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	8'-Apo-β-carotenal (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	1-Methyl-3-nitro-1-nitrosoguanidine (13.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	–	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)

Table 53 (contd)

End-point Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Mutagen(tested doses) ^a	<i>S. typhimurium</i> strain	S9 mix	Result ^b	LED/HID ^c	Reference	
G	SA0	8'-Apo-β-carotenoyl methylester (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	1-Methyl-3-nitro-1-nitrosoguanidine (13.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	–	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	β-Carotene (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	Benzo[a]pyrene (7.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	+	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	Canthaxanthin (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	Benzo[a]pyrene (7.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	+	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	8'-Apo-β-carotenol (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	Benzo[a]pyrene (7.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	+	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	8'-Apo-β-carotenoyl methylester (50–800 nmol/plate [?])	Benzo[a]pyrene (7.6 nmol/plate [?])	TA100	+	+	50 nmol/plate [?]	Azuine <i>et al.</i> (1992)
G	SA0	<i>trans</i> -β-Carotene (0.33–10 μmol/plate)	4-Nitroquinoline 1-oxide (2 nmol/plate)	TA100	–	–	10 μmol/plate	Camoirano <i>et al.</i> (1994)
G	SA9	<i>trans</i> -β-Carotene (0.33–10 μmol/plate)	Cigarette smoke (0.5 cigarettes smoked in a 20-L chamber)	TA98	+	+	4.3 μmol/plate (ID ₅₀)	Camoirano <i>et al.</i> (1994)
G	SA0	β-Carotene (62–2000 μg/plate)	Cigarette smoke condensate (0.4 mg/plate)	TA100	+	–	2000 μg/plate	Romert <i>et al.</i> (1994)
G	SA9	β-Carotene (62–2000 μg/plate)	Cigarette smoke condensate (0.4 mg/plate)	TA98	+	–	2000 μg/plate	Romert <i>et al.</i> (1994)

S9 mix, 9000 x g microsomal fraction used as exogenous metabolic system; UV, ultraviolet radiation; [?] The Working Group noted a probable mistake in the unit of concentration.

^a +, inhibition of genotoxicity; (+), weak inhibition of genotoxicity; –, no inhibition of genotoxicity

^b LED, lowest effective (inhibitory) dose; HID, highest ineffective dose; ID_x, dose inhibiting the mutagenicity by x%, as indicated by the authors

^c Reported as '8'-Apo-β-carotene methylester'

activation phase, whereas cryptoxanthin was more effective during the subsequent phenotypic expression phase. In the same study, lycopene extracted from tomato paste did not affect the mutagenicity of aflatoxin B₁ (He & Campbell, 1990). The S9-mediated mutagenicity of aflatoxin B₁ in strain YG1024 was inhibited by lutein and marigold extract. Lutein had a modest effect on the DNA repair system of aflatoxin B₁-pretreated YG1024 (González de Mejía *et al.*, 1997b). Azuine *et al.* (1992) reported dose-dependent inhibition of the mutagenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene in TA100 by β -carotene, canthaxanthin, 8'-apo- β -carotenal and 8'-apo- β -carotenoyl methylester [reported as '...carotene methylester']. In contrast, Terwel and van der Hoeven (1985) found no inhibition of the mutagenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene in TA98 by β -carotene.

No effect of β -carotene was found on the S9-mediated mutagenicity of a cigarette-smoke condensate in strain TA98 (Terwel & van der Hoeven, 1985), but dose-related inhibition of the mutagenicity of mainstream cigarette smoke was reported, the dose that inhibited 50% of mutagenicity being 4.3 μ mol/plate (Camoirano *et al.*, 1994). β -Carotene decreased the mutagenicity of a cigarette-smoke condensate in strain TA98 but was ineffective and even enhanced mutagenicity in strain TA100 (Romert *et al.*, 1994). It had no effect on the S9-mediated mutagenicity of a fried beef extract (Ong *et al.*, 1989).

The results of studies on cultured mammalian cells are summarized in Table 54. A few studies were conducted on the anticlastogenic properties of carotenoids in animal cells by evaluating inhibition of sister chromatid exchange, micronuclei or chromosomal aberrations. β -Carotene inhibited the induction of sister chromatid exchange in Chinese hamster ovary cells subjected to oxidative stress. Reactive oxygen species were generated either by reaction of hypoxanthine with xanthine oxidase or by stimulating human leukocytes with TPA (Weitberg *et al.*, 1985). In the same cells, β -carotene inhibited the induction of sister chromatid exchange by hydrogen peroxide but increased the frequency of chromosomal aberrations induced by the same oxidizing agent and did not affect the frequency of bleomycin-induced chromosomal aberrations

(Cozzi *et al.*, 1997). β -Carotene also inhibited sister chromatid exchange induced by DMBA, NDEA or MNU in cultured Balb/c mouse mammary glands (Manoharan & Banerjee, 1985). Chinese hamster ovary cells were pretreated with β -carotene and, before challenge with clastogens, were washed in such a way that protection could occur only at the cell membrane or within the cells. Under these conditions, β -carotene significantly decreased the frequency of micronuclei and chromosomal aberrations induced by either methyl methanesulfonate or 4-NQO but had no protective effect against hydrogen peroxide, tannic acid or gallic acid. β -Carotene also failed to modulate the chromosomal aberrations induced by an extract of areca (betel) nut (Stich & Dunn, 1986). Both β -carotene and canthaxanthin inhibited the intrinsic chromosome instability, measured in terms of frequency of chromatid bridges and fragments, in strains of C127 mouse cells that had been transformed by bovine papillomavirus DNA and carried 20–165 copies of viral DNA per cell (Stich *et al.*, 1990b). The effect of β -carotene on the frequency of chemically induced micronuclei in cytochalasin-blocked binucleate Chinese hamster ovary cells was evaluated with four different procedures for combining β -carotene and clastogens—pretreatment, simultaneous treatment, pretreatment plus simultaneous treatment or post-treatment. Irrespective of the procedure used, β -carotene did not significantly affect the frequency of micronuclei induced by the alkylating agents methyl methanesulfonate and mitomycin C. In the case of the radiomimetic agent bleo-mycin, β -carotene even enhanced the frequency of micronuclei when assayed by all of the procedures except after treatment (Salvadori *et al.*, 1994).

Both β -carotene and canthaxanthin, added one week after removal of the transforming agent, inhibited the development of transformed foci induced by 3-methylcholanthrene in C3H 10T1/2 mouse fibroblasts. Neither carotenoid inhibited X-ray-induced transformation when the cells were treated before and during irradiation, but they inhibited the subsequent development of transformed foci when the drugs were added one week after X-irradiation (Pung *et al.*, 1988). These results

were confirmed and expanded by the same group (Bertram *et al.*, 1991), who showed that, when carotenoids were continuously administered to methylcholanthrene-treated fibroblasts one week after removal of the carcinogen, some inhibited the production of transformed foci in a dose-dependent manner. In order of potency, this effect was produced by canthaxanthin, β -carotene, α -carotene and lycopene. Lutein was inhibitory at one dose only; renierapurpurin and bixin were inactive. Treatment of mammary epithelial cells from whole female Balb/c mouse mammary glands cultivated in a hormone-supplemented medium with DMBA resulted in the appearance of nodule-like alveolar lesions, which were assumed to be morphological markers of preneoplasia. β -Carotene caused a 68% inhibition of these lesions when added during exposure to the carcinogen and a 49% inhibition when added after exposure. The authors interpreted these data as suggesting an effect of β -carotene at both the initiation and the promotion stages (Som *et al.*, 1984).

β -Carotene induced morphological differentiation in mouse B-16 melanoma cells, as shown by the enlargement of cells with two or more cytoplasmic processes, growth inhibition and reduced survival of cells. Although less effective than β -carotene, α -carotene significantly reduced the growth of melanoma cells (Hazuka *et al.*, 1990).

Several carotenoids have been shown to enhance gap-junctional intercellular communication and to up-regulate the expression of *connexin 43*, a gene that encodes a major gap-junction protein. β -Carotene, α -carotene, canthaxanthin, lutein and lycopene increased gap-junctional intercellular communication in C3H 10T1/2 mouse fibroblasts; only methyl-bixin was ineffective. All of the carotenoids inhibited lipid peroxidation; however, this did not correlate with their ability to inhibit transport (Zhang *et al.*, 1991). A significant correlation was found between enhancement of junctional communication and inhibition of the development of 3-methylcholanthrene-induced transformed foci (Bertram *et al.*, 1991). The same group showed that β -carotene, canthaxanthin and lycopene up-regulate *connexin 43* expression at the mRNA and protein levels in the

same cellular system; again methyl-bixin was ineffective. Canthaxanthin did not induce the vitamin A-inducible gene *RAR- β* , indicating that the effect of carotenoids on *connexin 43* is independent of their classical provitamin A role (Zhang *et al.*, 1992). Whether canthaxanthin acts *per se* or via the formation of breakdown products such as 4-oxoretinoic acid is still unclear. β -Carotene and canthaxanthin also increased *connexin 43* expression in cultured human fibroblasts (Zhang *et al.*, 1992). The effects of β -carotene on C3H 10T1/2 cells and *connexin 43* expression have been confirmed, but no such effect was observed in non-transformed (C10) or neoplastic (E9 and 82-132) murine lung epithelial cells (Banoub *et al.*, 1996). In a study of 12 carotenoids on gap-junctional intercellular communication in C3H 10T1/2 mouse fibroblasts, all of the carotenoids containing a six-membered β ring, i.e. β -carotene, echinenone, canthaxanthin, 4-hydroxy- β -carotene, β -cryptoxanthin and retrodehydro- β -carotene, increased intercellular communication, whereas those with a five-membered-ring end group, namely dinor-canthaxanthin and violerythrin, had a weak effect, and capsorubin had none. Acyclic carotenoids of different chain lengths, i.e. crocetin (C_{20}), 4,4'-diapocarotene-4,4'-diol (C_{30}) and 3,4,3',4'-tetrahydro- ψ,ψ -carotene-16,16'-diol (C_{40}), also had no effect (Stahl *et al.*, 1997). The effect of carotenoids on gap-junctional intercellular communication was independent of their ability to quench singlet oxygen. [The Working Group noted that increased gap-junctional communication may be mechanistically significant, since transfection of *connexin 43*, leading to its overexpression, has been reported to suppress the neoplastic phenotype in transformed human and mouse cells (Zhu *et al.*, 1991; Rose *et al.*, 1993).]

^3H -Aflatoxin B_1 was found to bind the DNA of cultured C3H 10T1/2 mouse cells in the presence of S9 fractions from Aroclor-pretreated Sprague-Dawley rats. Binding of aflatoxin B_1 to DNA was inhibited by crocetin (Table 54). In parallel, an increase was observed in cytosolic reduced glutathione and in the activities of glutathione *S*-transferase and glutathione peroxidase. In the same study, crocetin inhibited the

Table 54. Inhibition by carotenoids of genetic and related effects in cultured mammalian cells

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Genotoxic agent (tested doses) ^a	Cells	Investigated effect	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
<i>Animal cells</i>								
S	SIC	β-Carotene (0.1 μmol/plate)	Hypoxanthine (7 μg/ml) + xanthine oxidase (15 μg/ml)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Sister chromatid exchange	+	0.1 μmol/plate	Weitberg <i>et al.</i> (1985)
S	SIC	β-Carotene (5–10 μmol/plate)	Human white blood cells (10 ⁷ cells) + 12-O-tetradecanoylphorbol 13-acetate (0.1 μg/ml)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Sister chromatid exchange	+	5 μmol/plate	Weitberg <i>et al.</i> (1985)
S	SIC	β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	Hydrogen peroxide (100 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Sister chromatid exchange	+	1 μmol/plate	Cozzi <i>et al.</i> (1997)
S	SIM	β-Carotene (1 μmol/plate)	7,12-Dimethylbenz[a]-anthracene (7.8 μmol/plate)	BALB/c mouse mammary organ cultures	Sister chromatid exchange	+	1 μmol/plate	Manoharan & Banerjee (1985)
S	SIM	β-Carotene (1 μmol/plate)	<i>N</i> -Nitrosodiethylamine (14.6 μ/plate)	BALB/c mouse mammary organ cultures	Sister chromatid exchange	+	1 μmol/plate	Manoharan & Banerjee (1985)
S	SIM	β-Carotene (1 μmol/plate)	<i>N</i> -Methyl- <i>N</i> -nitrosourea (1 μmol/plate)	BALB/c mouse mammary organ cultures	Sister chromatid exchange	+	1 μmol/plate	Manoharan & Banerjee (1985)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Methyl methanesulfonate (400 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei	+	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	4-Nitroquinoline 1-oxide (2.5 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei	+	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Hydrogen peroxide (25 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei	–	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Tannic acid (60 μg/mL)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei	–	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Gallic acid (12 μg/mL)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei	–	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Methyl methanesulfonate (400 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	+	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)

Table 54 (contd)

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Genotoxic agent (tested doses) ^a	Cells	Investigated effect	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	4-Nitroquinoline 1-oxide (2.5 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	+	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Hydrogen peroxide (25 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	-	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Tannic acid (60 μg/mL)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	-	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Gallic acid (12 μg/mL)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	-	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.035 μmol/plate)	Areca nut (8 μg/m/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	-	0.035 μmol/plate	Stich & Dunn (1986)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.1-1 μmol/plate)	Hydrogen peroxide (100 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	#	0.1 μmol/plate	Cozzi <i>et al.</i> (1997)
C	CIC	β-Carotene (0.1-1 μmol/plate)	Bleomycin (1 μg/mL)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Chromosomal aberrations	-	1 μmol/plate	Cozzi <i>et al.</i> (1997)
C	CIT	β-Carotene (0.5 μmol/plate)	None	C127 mouse cells transformed by bovine papillomavirus DNA	Chromosome instability (chromatid bridges and fragments)	+	0.5 μmol/plate	Stich <i>et al.</i> (1990b)
C	CIT	Canthaxanthin (0.5 μmol/plate)	None	C127 mouse cells transformed by bovine papillomavirus DNA	Chromosome instability (chromatid bridges and fragments)	+	0.5 μmol/plate	Stich <i>et al.</i> (1990b)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.25-6.0 μmol/plate)	Methylmethane sulfonate (1 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei in binucleated cells	-	6.0 μmol/plate	Salvadori <i>et al.</i> (1994)
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.25-6.0 μmol/plate)	Mitomycin C (0.75-2.0 μmol/plate)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei in binucleated cells	-	6.0 μmol/plate	Salvadori <i>et al.</i> (1994)

Table 54 (contd)

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Genotoxic agent (tested doses) ^a	Cells	Investigated effect	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
M	MIA	β-Carotene (0.25–6.0 μmol/plate)	Bleomycin (10 μg/ml)	Chinese hamster ovary cells	Micronuclei in binucleated cells	#	4.0 μmol/plate	Salvadori <i>et al.</i> (1994)
T	TCM	β-Carotene (0.03–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	1 μmol/plate	Pung <i>et al.</i> (1988)
T	TCM	β-Carotene (0.1–3 μmol/plate)	Pre-irradiation with X-rays (600 rad)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	1 μmol/plate	Pung <i>et al.</i> (1988)
T	TCM	Canthaxanthin (0.3–3 μmol/plate)	Pre-irradiation with X-rays (600 rad)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	1 μmol/plate	Pung <i>et al.</i> (1988)
T	TCM	β-Carotene (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	1 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
T	TCM	α-Carotene (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	3 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
T	TCM	Canthaxanthin (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	1 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
T	TCM	Lycopene (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	10 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
T	TCM	Lutein (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	+	10 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
T	TCM	Renierapurpurin (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	–	10 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)
T	TCM	Bixin (0.3–10 μmol/plate)	Pretreatment with 3-methylcholanthrene (1 or 3 μg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Cell transformation	–	10 μmol/plate	Bertram <i>et al.</i> (1991)

Table 54 (contd)

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Genotoxic agent (tested doses) ^a	Cells	Investigated effect	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
T	???	β-Carotene (1 μmol/plate)	7,12-Dimethylbenz[a]anthracene (7.8 μmol/plate)	Cultured mammary glands from Balb/c female mice	Appearance of nodule-like alveolar lesions in mammary glands	+	1 μmol/plate	Som <i>et al.</i> (1984)
?	???	α-Carotene (37.2 μmol/plate)	None	B-16 mouse melanoma cells	Morphological differentiation	+	37.2 μmol/plate	Hazuka <i>et al.</i> (1990)
?	???	β-Carotene (18.6–37.2 μmol/plate)	None	B-16 mouse melanoma cells	Morphological differentiation	+	18.6 μmol/plate	Hazuka <i>et al.</i> (1990)
I		β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	None	Non-transformed C10 mouse lung epithelial cells	Intercellular communication	–	10 μmol/plate	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
I		β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	None	Transformed E9 and 82-132 mouse lung epithelial cells	Intercellular communication	–	10 μmol/plate	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
I		β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	None	Non-transformed C10 mouse lung epithelial cells	Expression of <i>connexin 43</i>	–	10 μmol/plate	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
I		β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	None	Transformed E9 and 82-132 mouse lung epithelial cells	Expression of <i>connexin 43</i>	–	10 μmol/plate	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
I		β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	1 μmol/plate	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
I		β-Carotene (1–10 μmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Expression of <i>connexin 43</i>	#	1 μmol/plate	Banoub <i>et al.</i> (1996)
I		β-Carotene (0.5–10 μmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	1 μmol/plate	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1991)
I		Canthaxanthin (0.5–10 μmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	1 μmol/plate	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1991)

Table 54 (contd)

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Genotoxic agent (tested doses) ^a	Cells	Investigated effect	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
I		Lutein (0.5–10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	5 µmol/plate	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1991)
I		Lycopene (0.5–10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	1 µmol/plate	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1991)
I		Methyl-bixin (0.5–10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Enhancement of intercellular communication	–	10 µmol/plate	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1991)
I		Methyl-bixin (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Enhanced expression of <i>connexin 43</i>	–	10 µmol/plate	Zhang <i>et al.</i> (1992)
I		β-Carotene (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	+	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		Echinenone (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		Canthaxanthin (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		4-Hydroxy-β-carotene (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		β-Cryptoxanthin (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		Retrodehydro-β-carotene (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	#	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		Capsorubicin (1 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	–	1 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		Dinorcanthaxanthin (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	(#)	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)

Table 54 (contd)

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses) ^a	Genotoxic agent (tested doses) ^a	Cells	Investigated Effect	Result ^a	LED/HID ^b	Reference
I		Violerythrin (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	(#)	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		C-20-Dialdehyde (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	-	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		C-30-Dialdehyde (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	-	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
I		C-40-Dialdehyde (10 µmol/plate)	None	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts	Intercellular communication	-	10 µmol/plate	Stahl <i>et al.</i> (1997)
D	BID	β-Carotene (100–500 µmol/plate)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (2 µmol/plate)	-	DNA adduct formation	+	100 µmol/plate	Bhattacharya <i>et al.</i> (1984)
D	BID	β-Carotene (10 µmol/plate)	Benzo[a]pyrene (10 µmol/plate)	Hamster tracheal epithelium	DNA adduct formation	+	10 µmol/plate	Wolterbeek <i>et al.</i> (1995b)
D	BID	Crocetin (10–100 µmol/plate)	³ H-Aflatoxin B ₁ (0.32 µg/ml)	C3H 10T _{1/2} mouse fibroblasts + S9 mix	Covalent binding to DNA	+	100 µmol/plate	Wang, C.-J <i>et al.</i> (1991a)
<i>Human cells</i>								
		Fucoanthin (5-10 µg/mL)	None	Human neuroblastoma GOTO cells	Delay of cell cycle progression	+	10 µg/ml	Okuzumi <i>et al.</i> (1990)
		Fucoanthin (5-10 µg/mL)	None	Human neuroblastoma GOTO cells	Decrease of <i>N-myc</i> expression	+	10 µg/ml	Okuzumi <i>et al.</i> (1990)
		β-Carotene (40 µmol/plate)	None	Human embryonic lung fibroblasts	Delay of cell cycle progression	+	40 µmol/plate	Stivala <i>et al.</i> (1996)
M	MIH	β-Carotene (0.25–6.0 µmol/plate)	Cyclophosphamide (400 µmol/plate)	Human hepatoma Hep G2 cells	Micronuclei	+	0.25 µmol/plate	Salvadori <i>et al.</i> (1993)
M	MIH	β-Carotene (0.25–6.0 µmol/plate)	Mitomycin C (1 µmol/plate)	Human hepatoma Hep G2 cells	Micronuclei	-	6.0 µmol/plate	Salvadori <i>et al.</i> (1993)

^a+, inhibition of the investigated end-point; (+), weak inhibition of the investigated end-point; -, no effect on the investigated end-point; #, enhancement of the investigated end-point; (#), weak enhancement of the investigated end-point

^bLED, lowest effective dose that inhibits or enhances the investigated effect; HID, highest ineffective dose

binding of metabolically activated aflatoxin B₁ *in vitro* to DNA extracted from the same cells (Wang, C.-J. *et al.*, 1991a). Binding of ³H-aflatoxin B₁ to calf thymus DNA, activated with liver microsomes from phenobarbital-induced Wistar rats, was significantly inhibited by β-carotene, 8'-apo-β-carotenal, 10'-apo-β-carotenal, cryptoxanthin and lutein, and the effect was ascribed to an action of these carotenoids on the microsomal activation of aflatoxin B₁. The other carotenoids tested, 12'-apo-β-carotenal, astaxanthin, canthaxanthin and torularhodin, had no protective effect in this acellular test system (Goswami *et al.*, 1989).

A limited number of studies have addressed the protective effects of carotenoids in cultured human cells (Table 54). Fucoxanthin arrested human neuroblastoma cells (GOTO) in the G₀ or G₁ phase of the cell cycle and decreased *N-myc* expression (Okuzumi *et al.*, 1990). β-Carotene incorporated into dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine liposomes delayed the cell cycle in the G₁ phase in human embryonic lung fibroblasts in primary culture. This effect was independent of conversion to known retinoids (Stivala *et al.*, 1996). In a metabolically active line of human hepatoma cells (Hep G2), β-carotene inhibited the frequency of micronuclei induced by the indirectly acting clastogen cyclophosphamide but failed to inhibit the clastogenicity of the directly acting mutagen mitomycin C (Salvadori *et al.*, 1993).

Studies have also been carried out *in vivo* to evaluate the ability of β-carotene and other carotenoids to inhibit a variety of end-points, including DNA damage, mutation, clastogenic damage and adduction to DNA in rodents, either untreated or treated with physical or chemical carcinogens (Table 55). In all these studies, the carotenoids were administered orally, in the diet, in drinking-water or by gavage, and in almost all studies the carotenoids had protective effects. In particular, ingestion of β-carotene inhibited the formation of single-strand breaks in the forestomach mucosa of mice receiving benzo[*a*]pyrene by gavage 4 h before sacrifice (Lahiri *et al.*, 1993). Canthaxanthin, astaxanthin and β-apo-8'-carotenal were reported to inhibit the induction of DNA single-strand breaks in the livers of mice treated

intraperitoneally with aflatoxin B₁, whereas β-carotene was ineffective (Gradelet *et al.*, 1997). [The Working Group noted that no quantitative data were provided.]

β-Carotene inhibited the induction of 6-thioguanine-resistant T lymphocytes in the spleens of rats receiving an intraperitoneal injection of *N*-ethyl-*N*-nitrosourea, although the inhibition was non-linear within the range of β-carotene doses used (Aidoo *et al.*, 1995).

The ability of β-carotene to inhibit the frequency of micronuclei in bone-marrow polychromatic erythrocytes or peripheral blood reticulocytes of mice was investigated in several studies. Administration of β-carotene by gavage or in a diet containing *Dunaliella* decreased the 'spontaneous' frequency of micronuclei in reticulocytes. Micronuclei induced by whole-body exposure of mice to X-radiation were inhibited weakly only by the administration of β-carotene by gavage and not by feeding mice with *Dunaliella* in the diet (Umegaki *et al.*, 1994a). β-Carotene inhibited micronucleus formation in bone-marrow polychromatic erythrocytes induced by whole-body exposure of mice to γ-radiation (Abraham *et al.*, 1993) or by treatment with cyclophosphamide (Mukherjee *et al.*, 1991), mitomycin C or benzo[*a*]pyrene (Raj & Katz, 1985). In another study, however, β-carotene failed to inhibit the clastogenicity of benzo[*a*]pyrene (Lahiri *et al.*, 1993).

β-Carotene can inhibit the induction of chromosomal aberrations by cyclophosphamide in mouse bone-marrow cells (Mukherjee *et al.*, 1991; Salvadori *et al.*, 1992a,b), but it did not affect the frequency of chromosomal aberrations in bone-marrow cells of Chinese hamsters treated with cyclophosphamide, although it was effective when thiotepa, methyl methanesulfonate and busulfan were used as the clastogenic agents (Renner, 1985).

Administration of crocetin weakly inhibited the formation of DNA adducts in the livers of rats given an intraperitoneal injection of ³H-aflatoxin B₁ (Wang, C.-J. *et al.*, 1991b). β-Carotene at 1–15 μmol/L, supplied either in tetrahydrofuran or liposomes, increased the extent of binding of aflatoxin B₁ to woodchuck hepatocyte DNA by up to twofold; however, no dose-response relationship was observed (Yu *et al.*, 1994).

Table 55. Inhibition by carotenoids of genetic and related effects in rodents *in vivo*

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses and administration route) ^a	Carcinogen (tested doses and administration route) ^a	Animal strain and species	Result ^b	LED/HID ^c	Reference
D	DVA	β-Carotene (2.5 mg/animal per day in drinking-water for 15 days)	Benzo[a]pyrene (240 mg/kg bw by gavage)	Swiss mice	+	2.5 mg/animal/day in drinking-water for 15 days (ID ₁₀₀)	Lahiri <i>et al.</i> (1993)
D	DVA	β-Carotene (300 ppm in the diet for 15 days)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (2 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Wistar rats	-	300 ppm in the diet for 15 days	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1997)
D	DVA	Canthaxanthin (300 ppm in the diet for 15 days)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (2 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Wistar rats	+	300 ppm in the diet for 15 days [no quantitative data provided]	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1997)
D	DVA	Astaxanthin (300 ppm in the diet for 15 days)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (2 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Wistar rats	+	300 ppm in the diet for 15 days [no quantitative data provided]	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1997)
D	DVA	β-Apo-8'-carotenal (300 ppm in the diet for 15 days)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (2 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Wistar rats	+	300 ppm in the diet for 15 days [no quantitative data provided]	Gradelet <i>et al.</i> (1997)
G	GVA	β-Carotene (0.05–0.25% in drinking-water for up to 9 weeks)	N-Ethyl-N-nitrosourea (100 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Fischer 344 rats	+	0.05% in drinking-water for 3 weeks (ID ₅₂)	Aidoo <i>et al.</i> (1995)
M	MVM	β-Carotene (2.5 mg/animal per day in drinking-water for 15 days)	Benzo[a]pyrene (240 mg/kg bw by gavage)	Swiss mice	-	2.5 mg/animal per day in drinking-water for 15 days	Lahiri <i>et al.</i> (1993)
M	MVM	β-Carotene (100 mg/kg food for 1 week)	Benzo[a]pyrene (150 mg/kg bw i.p.)	B6C3F1 mice	+	100 mg/kg food for 1 week (ID ₄₁₋₆₁)	Raj & Katz (1985)
M	MVM	β-Carotene (100 mg/kg food for 1 week)	Mitomycin C (1 mg/kg bw i.p.)	B6C3F1 mice	+	100 mg/kg food for 1 week (ID ₄₄₋₇₁)	Raj & Katz (1985)
M	MVM	β-Carotene (2.7–27 mg/kg bw orally for 7 days)	Cyclophosphamide (25 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Swiss albino mice	(+)	2.7 mg/kg bw orally for 7 days (ID ₂₉)	Mukherjee <i>et al.</i> (1991)
M	MVM	β-Carotene (0.1–2.5 mg/kg bw orally for 7 days)	γ-Radiation (1.15 Gy, whole-body exposure)	Swiss albino mice	+	0.1 mg/kg bw orally for 7 days (ID ₅₅)	Abraham <i>et al.</i> (1993)

Table 55 (contd)

End-point	Code	Carotenoid (tested doses and administration route) ^a	Carcinogen (tested doses and administration route) ^a	Animal strain and species	Result ^b	LED/HID ^c	Reference
M	MVM	<i>Dunaliella bardawil</i> (diet containing 0.03–0.2% β -carotene for 4 weeks)	None ('spontaneous' frequency of micronuclei)	ICR mice	+	Diet containing 0.2% β -carotene for 4 weeks (ID ₇₀)	Umegaki <i>et al.</i> (1994a)
M	MVM	<i>Dunaliella bardawil</i> (diet containing 0.03–0.2% β -carotene for 4 weeks)	X-Radiation (0.3 Gy, whole-body exposure)	ICR mice	–	Diet containing 0.2% β -carotene for 4 weeks	Umegaki <i>et al.</i> (1994a)
M	MVM	β -Carotene (300 mg/kg bw by gavage for 7 days)	None ('spontaneous' frequency of micronuclei)	ICR mice	(+)	300 mg/kg bw by gavage for 7 days (ID ₄₀)	Umegaki <i>et al.</i> (1994a)
M	MVM	β -Carotene (300 mg/kg bw by gavage for 7 days)	X-Radiation (0.3 Gy, whole-body exposure)	ICR mice	(+)	300 mg/kg bw by gavage for 7 days (ID ₂₅)	Umegaki <i>et al.</i> (1994a)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (2.7–27 mg/kg bw orally for 7 days)	Cyclophosphamide (25 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Swiss albino mice	+	2.7 mg/kg bw orally for 7 days (ID ₄₉)	Mukherjee <i>et al.</i> (1991)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (0.5–200 mg/kg bw by gavage for 5 days)	Cyclophosphamide (20 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Balb/C mice	+	25 mg/kg bw by gavage for 5 days (ID ₅₀)	Salvadori <i>et al.</i> (1992a,b)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (50–250 mg/kg bw by single gavage administration)	Thio-TEPA (13 mg/kg bw) by gavage	Chinese hamsters	+	50 mg/kg bw by gavage (ID ₅₄)	Renner <i>et al.</i> (1990)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (25–250 mg/kg bw single oral administration)	Thio-TEPA (10 mg/kg bw, single oral administration)	Chinese hamsters	+	50 mg/kg bw single oral administration (ID ₄₇)	Renner (1985)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (50–250 mg/kg bw single oral administration)	Methyl methanesulfonate (50 mg/kg bw i.p.)	Chinese hamsters	+	50 mg/kg bw single oral administration (ID ₅₄)	Renner (1985)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (20–250 mg/kg bw single oral administration)	Myleran (50 mg/kg bw, single oral administration)	Chinese hamsters	+	50 mg/kg bw single oral administration (ID ₆₄)	Renner (1985)
C	CBA	β -Carotene (100–250 mg/kg bw single oral administration)	Cyclophosphamide (20 mg/kg bw, single oral administration)	Chinese hamsters	–	250 mg/kg bw single oral administration	Renner (1985)
D	BVD	Crocetin (6–10 mg/kg bw by gavage for 3 days)	Aflatoxin B ₁ (6 μ g/kg bw i.p.)	Wistar rats	(+)	6 mg/kg bw by gavage for 3 days (ID ₁₈)	Wang, C.-J. <i>et al.</i> (1991b)

i.p., intraperitoneally

^aDoses of carotenoids and carcinogens, and routes of administration are as reported by the authors

^b+, inhibition of the investigated end-point; (+), weak inhibition of the investigated end-point; –, no effect on the investigated end-point

^cLED, lowest effective dose that inhibits or enhances the investigated effect; HID, highest ineffective dose; ID_x, dose inhibiting the investigated end-point by x%, as indicated by the authors or calculated from their data

4.3 Mechanisms of cancer prevention

Several mechanisms of action have been proposed or suspected to contribute to any cancer-preventive effects of carotenoids. It must be remembered that most of these mechanisms have been examined only *in vitro* and that more complex interactions among the many dietary components and more complex mechanistic pathways are likely to occur *in vivo*.

4.3.1 Antioxidant properties

The body is continuously exposed to reactive oxygen species, which can damage biologically relevant macromolecules such as DNA, proteins and lipids (Sies & Stahl, 1995). These reactions may well be involved in the pathobiology of several diseases, including cancer. Reactive oxygen species may also affect gene expression, e.g. by the NF- κ B and AP-1 pathways (Sen & Packer, 1996; Müller *et al.*, 1997). A number of naturally occurring compounds can scavenge reactive oxygen species.

The antioxidant properties of carotenoids are related to their extended system of conjugated double bonds. *In vitro*, carotenoids efficiently quench excited molecules such as singlet oxygen and can scavenge peroxy radicals; interactions with other radicals have also been reported. The efficiency with which carotenoids can quench singlet oxygen or triplet sensitizers that lead to singlet oxygen formation is very high (Section 1), but there is no evidence that carotenoids act in this way in carcinogenesis.

Carotenoids also interact with radicals, and efficient scavenging of peroxy radicals has been proposed (Burton & Ingold, 1984). It has been suggested that the radical adds to the carotenoid molecule to form a less reactive intermediate. Radical scavenging appears to be more efficient at low oxygen tension. Prooxidant effects of carotenoids have been reported at higher oxygen levels (Terao, 1989; Liebler, 1993; Palozza *et al.*, 1995).

Many studies have been reported of the interactions of carotenoids with peroxy radicals generated from a series of azo compounds as radical sources, e.g. 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile, 2,2'-azobis(2-amidinopropane) hydrochloride and 2,2'-azinobis(3-ethylbenzothiazoline)- β -

sulfonic acid, diammonium salt (Alabaster *et al.*, 1995; Tanaka *et al.*, 1995b; Komaki *et al.*, 1996; Tyurin *et al.*, 1997; Woodall *et al.*, 1997). In organic solvents and in phospholipid liposomes, the carotenoids are destroyed by reactions with radicals but also generally inhibit or decrease the peroxidation of unsaturated lipids. In most cases, lycopene was the most reactive carotenoid studied, followed by β -carotene, but much variation has been reported in the order of reactivity of carotenoids and their ability to inhibit peroxidation.

Several other radicals have been shown to react with β -carotene, and particularly nitrogen dioxide, which is relevant to the exposure of humans to tobacco smoke and air pollutants. The genotoxicity of nitrogen oxide and reactive oxygen species has been shown to be inhibited by carotenoids in short-term tests (see section 4.2.2.2). Supplementation with β -carotene resulted in a significant decrease in inducible nitric oxide synthase in patients with nonatrophic gastritis (Mannick *et al.*, 1996). Exposure to nitrogen dioxide may result in the interaction of radical cations on carotenoids with other cellular components. Glutathione enhances nitrogen dioxide-induced lipid peroxidation, possibly by the formation of thiyl radicals. Thus, β -carotene may give rise to a carotenoid adduct radical, which could lead to formation of a glutathione sulfoxide radical, a species that can have damaging effects *in vivo* (Everett *et al.*, 1996). This may be relevant to heavy exposure to nitrogen dioxide, as in tobacco smoke, and to the increased efficiency of glutathione in proliferating cells (Burdon, 1995).

Two measures have been used to investigate processes *in vivo*: circulating levels or excreted oxidation products and the response of blood constituents to oxidative stress *in vitro*. The use and interpretation of these measures is difficult, and in some studies it is not clear which has been used (Gutteridge, 1986; Halliwell & Chirico, 1993). The direct measurements include plasma phosphatidylcholine hydroperoxides and peroxide derivatives measured as serum thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances, urinary excretion of thioethers and 8-oxo-7,8-dihydro-2'-deoxyguanosine and excretion of pentane and ethane peroxidation products of ω -

3 and ω -6 fatty acids, respectively, in exhaled air. Higher levels of each purportedly indicate more oxidative stress and less antioxidant activity. Measures of oxidation *in vitro* include oxidation products induced by exposure to copper, 2,2'-azobis(2-amidinopropane) dihydrochloride, hydrogen peroxide, xanthine oxidase, hypoxanthine, horseradish peroxidase or activated phagocytes. Low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, total serum lipids and erythrocytes have been used as substrates. The measured outcomes in these studies include conjugated dienes (UV absorbance at 230–230 nm), lipid hydroperoxides (chemiluminescence), thiobarbituric acid-reactive substances and reduction in ferricytochrome C. The techniques involve assessment of the production of oxidized metabolites; like the direct measures, high levels indicate more marked oxidative stress. In contrast, the lag time for oxidation *in vitro* is a measure of resistance to oxidation, so that higher values are thought to indicate less oxidative stress or more effective antioxidant intervention.

The antioxidant actions of β -carotene have been investigated in animals and humans with a variety of measures of antioxidative efficacy (Krinsky, 1993a; Omaye *et al.*, 1997). Indicators of lipid peroxidation have been used in investigations of the antioxidant effects of carotenoids *in vivo*. In pigs, injection of β -carotene in mineral oil significantly blocked the increased expiration of ethane and pentane seen after the development of ascorbate deficiency. In rats, however, supplementation of the diet with β -carotene exacerbated the increased levels of malondialdehyde and 15-lipoxygenase activity seen in the testes after maintenance on a diet deficient in α -tocopherol. Other studies have provided no evidence of antioxidant effects.

It has been suggested that β -carotene has an antioxidative effect in humans. In a short-term trial conducted among elderly women, 90 mg/d of supplemental β -carotene was associated with a significant reduction in the production of phospholipid hydroperoxides after treatment of plasma with a free-radical initiator (Meydani *et al.*, 1994). Daily supplementation of smokers with 20 mg β -carotene resulted in a significant reduction in the excretion of pentane in the breath, although no similar effect was seen

among nonsmokers, in whom the breath concentrations of pentane were lower (Allard *et al.*, 1994). In an intervention study, healthy, non-smoking men were subjected to a two-week depletion period [undefined] and were then fed 40 mg of tomato juice containing lycopene daily for two weeks, followed by carrot juice containing 22.3 mg β -carotene and 15.7 mg α -carotene for two weeks and then spinach powder containing 11.3 mg lutein and other compounds for two weeks. All of the diets decreased the endogenous levels of strand breaks in lymphocyte DNA. Oxidative DNA base damage (assayed by single-cell microgel electrophoresis and endonuclease III incubation) was significantly reduced only during the intervention with carrot juice. When the men were maintained on a carotenoid-free diet for two weeks and were then given 15 or 120 mg/d supplemental β -carotene, the serum lipid peroxide concentrations were decreased (Pool-Zobel *et al.*, 1997). In a study with no controls, children with cystic fibrosis had decreased serum malondialdehyde concentrations after twice daily supplementation with 4.42 mg β -carotene (Lepage *et al.*, 1996). In contrast, volunteers who received 533 mg α -tocopherol, 1 g ascorbic acid, and 10 mg β -carotene for one month showed no change in the excretion of 8-hydroxydeoxyguanosine (Witt *et al.*, 1992). [The Working Group noted that these studies involved antioxidant assays of uncertain relevance to human carcinogenesis.]

The effects on these measures of supplementation with β -carotene have been studied in several randomized clinical trials. In the largest study conducted to date of the antioxidant effects of β -carotene, 163 healthy male smokers were randomized to 14 weeks of placebo or 14 weeks of β -carotene treatment (two weeks of 40 mg β -carotene daily followed by 12 weeks of 20 mg daily); 150 men completed the trial. Urinary excretion of thioethers and 8-oxo-7,8-dihydro-2'-deoxyguanosine was assessed in three overnight urine specimens taken before and after treatment, from 123 subjects and 122 subjects, respectively. β -Carotene had no effect on excretion of the deoxyguanosine (van Poppel *et al.*, 1995), but at the end of the trial the group receiving β -carotene had 15% less urinary

excretion of thioethers than those given the placebo ($p = 0.002$) (Bos *et al.*, 1992).

Exhaled oxidation products were assessed in two studies. In one, 15 subjects were given a carotenoid-free liquid diet for two weeks and were then randomized to receive 15 or 120 mg β -carotene in the diet daily for four weeks. The concentration of pentane in breath decreased in both groups after supplementation, but the decrease in those receiving the low dose was 26% (not statistically significant) and that in subjects given the higher dose was 40% ($p = 0.04$) (Gottlieb *et al.*, 1993). In another study, 42 nonsmokers and 28 smokers were randomized to four weeks of placebo or 20 mg of β -carotene daily. β -Carotene appeared to reduce the excretion of ethane, as both smokers and nonsmokers receiving β -carotene had nonsignificant decreases in ethane output, while those given placebo had a nonsignificant increase. The evidence with respect to pentane was mixed: the concentration of pentane in the breath was unchanged in nonsmokers and in smokers given the placebo but showed a nonsignificant decrease in smokers given β -carotene (Allard *et al.*, 1994). [The Working Group noted that in neither study was there a statistical comparison of the differences between groups given β -carotene and placebo.]

In studies of oxidation products induced *in vitro*, 46 smokers were randomized to 40 mg of β -carotene daily for two weeks, followed by 12 weeks of 20 mg β -carotene daily, or to 14 weeks of placebo. No substantial difference in copper-induced low-density lipoprotein oxidation was seen between the two groups (Princen *et al.*, 1992). In a further study, 30 hypercholesterolaemic, postmenopausal women were randomized to 30 mg β -carotene daily or placebo for 10 weeks. During the treatment period, women in the two groups showed similarly increased resistance to low-density lipoprotein oxidation *in vitro*: supplementation had no effect on the lag time of copper-induced oxidation or on the production of lipid peroxides (Nenseter *et al.*, 1995). In an uncontrolled study, 16 subjects showed no benefit with regard to copper-induced low-density lipoprotein oxidation after supplementation with 50–100 mg β -carotene daily for four weeks. In

fact, in comparison with baseline values, the duration of the lag phase of copper- and 2',2'-azobis(2-amidinopropane) dihydrochloride-induced lipid peroxidation was shortened (Gaziano *et al.*, 1995b). Another study without concurrent controls also showed that β -carotene did not improve measures of the susceptibility of low-density lipoproteins to oxidation *in vitro* (Reaven *et al.*, 1993). [The Working Group noted that the absence of concurrent controls limits the conclusions that can be drawn.]

Richards *et al.* (1990) assessed several oxidation end-points—activated phagocytes and a xanthine oxidase/hypoxanthine superoxide-generating system—in 40 asymptomatic cigarette smokers randomized to receive placebo or 40 mg β -carotene daily for six weeks. Statistically significant reductions in several of the measures were seen in the group receiving β -carotene but not among subjects randomized to placebo. Allard *et al.* (1994; see above) found no significant change in hydrogen peroxide-induced malondialdehyde release from the erythrocytes of smokers and nonsmokers randomized to β -carotene or placebo, and Mobarhan *et al.* (1990; see Gottlieb *et al.*, 1993, above) also found no difference in the capacity of stimulated neutrophils to reduce ferricytochrome C. [The Working Group noted that no statistical comparison was made of the differences between groups given β -carotene and placebo in these three studies.]

In another study, phosphatidylcholine hydroperoxide generated in plasma by 2',2'-azobis(2-amidinopropane)dihydrochloride was used to assess the antioxidant capacity of plasma. Twelve healthy postmenopausal women were randomized to 90 mg β -carotene daily or placebo for three weeks. The induction period and phosphatidylcholine hydroperoxide production were unchanged in women given the placebo but the induction period lengthened and phosphatidylcholine hydroperoxide production decreased in those receiving β -carotene (Meydani *et al.*, 1994). [The Working Group noted that no statistical comparison was made between the two treatment groups and that baseline differences in the maximal production of phosphatidylcholine hydroperoxide suggest that the two groups may have

differed in ways related to the end-points studied.]

Thus, although some studies have provided findings consistent with an antioxidant effect of β -carotene *in vivo*, others have reported no substantial benefit. Interpretation of the findings is complicated by the small size of many of the studies and the difficulties in interpreting the measurements used. Randomized, placebo-controlled trials of β -carotene administration *in vivo* are needed in order to investigate antioxidant capacity.

4.3.2 Modulation of carcinogen metabolism

Most studies *in vitro* in which an exogenous metabolic system or metabolically competent cells were used showed that carotenoids inhibit the genotoxic activity of promutagens and procarcinogens (see section 4.2.2.2). Certain carotenoids, such as astaxanthin and canthaxanthin, induce some phase-I enzymes, including CYP1A1 and CYP2A2, and phase-II enzymes like UDP glucuronyl transferase, UGT1A6 and DT-diaphorase, in rat liver and intestine (Gradelet *et al.*, 1996b). Other carotenoids, such as β -carotene, lutein and lycopene, do not have an effect. This difference may bear on the balance of metabolic activation and inactivation of chemical carcinogens. For instance, cytochrome P450 1A induction could increase the detoxification of aflatoxin B₁ through the formation of aflatoxin M₁, a less genotoxic metabolite, and decrease its carcinogenic effects in rats (Gradelet *et al.*, 1998).

4.3.3 Effects on cell transformation and differentiation

The results of clinical trials indicate that β -carotene supplements can reduce the rate of cell proliferation in rectal crypts (see section 4.1.2.3). In cell cultures, carotenoids can prevent carcinogen-induced transformation and induce cell differentiation, although the effects on transformation induced by X-rays were restricted to the promotional phases of carcinogenesis (Pung *et al.*, 1988).

The main ligands for retinoid-responsive nuclear receptors (RAR and RXR) are all-*trans*- and 9-*cis*-retinoic acid. β -Carotene and other provitamin A carotenoids may produce retinoic

acid from the retinal formed by central cleavage of the carotenoid or indirectly by excentric cleavage (Lin *et al.*, 1997). Thus, β -apo-14'-carotenoic acid, like retinoic acid (Lotan *et al.*, 1995), induces the nuclear receptor RAR β (Wang *et al.*, 1997), either directly or by its conversion to retinoic acid. Because carotenoids are generally less potent inducers of cell differentiation than retinoids, their actions on cell differentiation may require intracellular metabolism.

4.3.4 Effects on cell-to-cell communication

Enhanced gap-junctional communication between tumour cells and normal growth-inhibited cells is associated with decreased tumour-cell proliferation. Carotenoids stimulate gap-junction formation between cells *in vitro*, allowing more cell-to-cell communication, an effect correlated with their ability to inhibit cell transformation. This effect is mediated through increased formation of connexin 43, a transmembrane protein (Zhang *et al.*, 1991; see section 4.2.2).

4.3.5 Inhibition of cell proliferation and oncogene expression

Carotenoids delay cell cycle progression in cultured human cells. *N-myc* expression was also decreased in one study (see sections 4.1.2.5 and 4.2.2.2).

4.3.6 Effects on immune function

Enhancement of immune responses has been described in some experimental models. Beneficial effects of β -carotene have been demonstrated on T- and B-cell proliferation, numbers of T-helper cells and the cytotoxicity of natural killer cells (Bendich, 1991). The enhancement may be due to production of tumour-specific antigens (Tomita *et al.*, 1987; see also section 4.1.2.7).

4.3.7 Inhibition of endogenous formation of carcinogens

Highly carcinogenic *N*-nitrosamines are formed in the stomach by the reaction of secondary and tertiary amines with nitrosating agents. β -Carotene was shown in one study *in vitro* to inhibit the nitrosation of morpholine by nitrogen oxide and nitrogen dioxide (Arroyo *et al.*, 1992).